

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

AN
EPITOME
OF
ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY,
SACRED AND PROFANE;

BEING

An Abridgment of D'Anville and Wells,

WITH

ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS,

FROM VARIOUS OTHER AUTHORS:

*Accompanied with an Account of the Origin and Migration of
Ancient Nations,*

For the use of Seminaries



BY ROBERT MAYO, M. D.

*Author of "A Rhyming Spelling Book," and "A New System of
Mythology for the use of Seminaries."*

THIRD EDITION IMPROVED.

PHILADELPHIA:

PUBLISHED BY A. FINLEY,
N. E. corner of Chesnut and Fourth Streets.

1818.

17
M 48

DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA, TO WIT:

§ SEAL. § *Be it Remembered*, That on the twenty-sixth day of February, in the forty-second year of the independence of the United States of America, A. D. 1818, GEO. MAYO, and Co. of the said District, have deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following, to wit.

“ An Epitome of Ancient Geography, Sacred and Profane: being an Abridgment of D’Anville and Wells, with Additions and Improvements, from various other authors, accompanied with an account of the Origin and Migration of Ancient Nations, for the use of Seminaries.”

In conformity to the act of the Congress of the United States, intituled “ An act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned.” And also to the Act entitled, “ An Act supplementary to an Act, entitled “ An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints.”

D. CALDWELL,
Clerk of the District of Pennsylvania.

TO
THE PROFESSORS
OF
THE SEMINARIES OF LEARNING,
THROUGHOUT
THE UNITED STATES.

GENTLEMEN,

YOU who preside over the education of our youth, are the best judges of the efforts of authors and compilers whose object is to facilitate the scientific progress of the rising generation; therefore I dedicate this Epitome of Ancient Geography to you, though not without a mixed concern of hope and fear for its fate. In the mean time permit me to make my particular acknowledgments to those of you who have already expressed your approbation of the work, in person, and by letter; whilst I subscribe myself with due consideration,

Yours,

R. MAYO.

Philadelphia, January 25, 1814.

1875

PREFACE.

GEOGRAPHY and Chronology, "called by an analogous metaphor, the *EYES OF HISTORY*," point out the *sites* and determine the *dates* of events. "Without their illustration, the historic muse, that *mistress of life and messenger of antiquity*, would be degraded into a mere gossip; for the theme she might thus abstractedly report would be but as

"A woman's story at a winter's fire,
Authorised by her Grandame."—

I will save myself the awkward attempt to prove that *Ancient Geography* is essential to give light and interest to every species of *antiquity*. It would be equally superfluous to descant upon the advantages of a knowledge of the latter. Yet, however undeniable is the affirmative of these propositions; we daily witness with deep commiseration, the superfluous and comparatively ungainful labour of our youth in conning over the classics and other detached parts of ancient science, without the least conception of ancient geography; and consequently from this default of geographical knowledge, they too frequently abandon to despair or disgust, their historical studies, ere they have made any proficiency in the all-important lessons transmitted to us from the experience of the ages that are past.

Every one who possesses the least reflection, must be sensible that in offering this work to the public, we cannot pretend to give any thing original in regard to the subject-matter. Therefore, the only grounds upon which it hopes for the suffrage of public approbation, are, the *authenticity* and *comprehensiveness* of its materials, together with the *perspicuity* of its arrangement and expression. The reader may judge of the *authenticity* of our materials from the names of Pinkerton, D'Anville, Wells,

Rennel, the English universal history, whence we have derived them. Their *comprehensiveness* will also lay some claim to the reader's confidence, when we assure him that we have extracted from these authorities every thing that we judged to be important for the completion of our design; sometimes abridging, and frequently copying verbatim the original, (particularly D'Anville,) as well as occasionally transposing and amalgamating certain articles, according to the dictates of a zealous devotion to our object, of alleviating the labours of juvenile studies. In regard to *perspicuity*, we have adopted that arrangement which seemed most consonant with the natural order and succession of the subjects; while we have made but slight changes in the expression of our authors, except when a diffuse style required abridgment. The pupil will doubtless be more thankful to us for presenting to him, under one view, the respective results of learned lucubrations upon the subjects of this work, in such manner as comports most with despatch, without militating against perspicuity, than if we had milled the whole over into our own peculiar dialect, with the probable hazard of perspicuity, and the inevitable cost of delay.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

PROFANE GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTION.

Pages.

SECT. I—Progress and extent of Ancient Geography, 5

SECT. II—Errors relative to the Ancient Geography
of the North of Europe and Asia, 8

SECT. III—Origin and Migration of Parental Na-
tions, viz. 12

1st, *The Chinese*, 15

2d, *The East Indians*, 16

3d, *The Scythæ, Getae or Goths*, *ibid*

4th, *The Assyrians*, 24

5th, *The Sarmatians*, 29

6th, *The Celts*, 30

7th, *The Fins or Laplanders*, 32

SECT. IV—The Feudal System, 33

SECT. V—Epochs of the First Gothic Progress over
Europe, 37

SECT. VI—Epochs of the Second Gothic Progress
over Europe, 38

CHAPTER I.

EUROPE.

SECT. I—Hibernia vel Ierne, 48

SECT. II—Albion vel Britannia, 49

Britannia Romana, 50

Britannia Barbara vel Caledonia, 51

SECT. III—Orcades vel Ebudes Insulæ, 52

SECT. IV—Scandinavia, Scanza, vel Baltia,	53
SECT. V—Sarmatia, Europæa et Asiatica,	55
SECT. VI—Germania,	60
SECT. VII—Gallia,	67
<i>Narbonensis Gallia—Narbonois,</i>	70
<i>Lugdunensis Gallia—Lionois,</i>	71
<i>Aquitania Gallia—Aquitaine,</i>	72
<i>Belgica Gallia—Belgium,</i>	73
SECT. VIII—Hispania, Iberia, vel Hesperia,	75
<i>Tarraconensis,</i>	76
<i>Bætica,</i>	78
<i>Lusitania,</i>	79
<i>Balcares Insulae,</i>	81
SECT. IX—Italia vel Hesperia,	<i>ibid</i>
<i>Gallia Cisalpina, vel Togata—Cispadane and</i>	
<i>Transpadane,</i>	82
<i>Italia Propria,</i>	86
<i>Magna Græcia,</i>	91
SECT. X—Sicilia, Sardinia, Corsica, et Æolæ In-	
<i>sulæ,</i>	95
SECT. XI—Rhætia, Noricum, Pannonia, Illyricum,	
<i>Dacia, Mæsia, et Thracia,</i>	98
<i>Rhætia et Vindelicia,</i>	99
<i>Noricum,</i>	100
<i>Pannonia,</i>	101
<i>Illyricum,</i>	102
<i>Dacia, (Trajana,)</i>	104
<i>Mæsia,</i>	107
<i>Thracia,</i>	110
SECT. XII—Græcia,	114
<i>Macedania,</i>	115
<i>Græcia Propria,</i>	118
<i>Peloponnesus,</i>	127
<i>Creta et Cyclade Insulae,</i>	133

CHAPTER II.

ASIA.

SECT. I—Asia Propria,	137
<i>Mysia, Bithynia, Paphlagonia, Pontus,</i>	138
<i>Lydia, Phrygia, Galatia, Cappadocia,</i>	149
<i>Caria, Lycia, Pamphylia, Cilicia,</i>	163

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

SECT. II—Colchis, Iberia, Albania, et Armenia,	173
SECT. III—Syria,	185
SECT. IV—Mesopotamia,	196
SECT. V—Arabia,	203
SECT. VI—Assyria,	215
SECT. VII—Babylonia,	220
SECT. VIII—Persia,	227
SECT. IX—Cathmania, et Gedrosia,	233
SECT. X—Media,	236
SECT. XI—Aria, Bactriana, et Sogdiana,	241
SECT. XII—Scythia Asiatica, et Serica,	252
SECT. XIII—India, et Smæ,	258

CHAPTER III.

AFRICA.

SECT. I—Ægyptus,	288
SECT. II—Æthiopia,	302
SECT. III—Libya,	312
SECT. IV—Africa Propria, Numidia, et Mauretania,	315
SECT. V—Libya, vel Africa Interior,	336

PART II.

SACRED GEOGRAPHY.

SECT. I—The first age of the World,	349
SECT. II—The second age of the World,	352
SECT. III—The third age of the World,	356
SECT. IV—A scheme of the Jewish camp in the Wilderness,	363
SECT. V—Antediluvian. Countries,	366
SECT. VI—From the Deluge to the Confusion of Tongues,	368
SECT. VII—Of the Plantation of the Earth,	372
SECT. VIII—The East Countries, from the time of Nimrod till the call of Abraham,	392

SECT. IX—Canaan and the neighbouring Country till the call of Abraham,	403
SECT. X—The sojournings of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,	408
SECT. XI—The Land of Egypt till the Exodus,	420
SECT. XII—The Exodus,	426
SECT. XIII—Palestine, from the conquest of Joshua,	431

INTRODUCTION.

SECTION FIRST.

Progress and extent of Ancient Geography.

ON casting an eye over the **TERRA VETERIBUS NOTA**, as delineated on a single map, we perceive that the ancient geographers had some acquaintance with a considerable part of the three continents of **ASIA**, **AFRICA** and **EUROPE**.

It will also be observable that their acquaintance was much more extensive *coastwise*, than *inland*; their navigators having carried their commerce to *Thynæ*, the capital of *Sinæ*, on the river *Senus* now *Camboja*, in the ulterior peninsula of India, where their *Eoan Ocean* respects the east; circumnavigated Africa; and penetrated to the *Thule*, now *Shetland isles*: here they acquired some idea of the *Mare Pigrum* or Northern Ocean, which they would fain connect with the *Eoan* or Eastern Ocean by an extension of the Baltic under the name of *Scythic*, *Amalchium*, or *Frozen Ocean*, over a great part of the north of Europe* and Asia.

* It will be seen in the detail that the knowledge of the ancients did not extend to the North Cape, erroneously called *Rubeas Promontorium*. See the maps *Terra Veteribus Notâ*, and *State of Nations at the Christian Æra*; the latter corrects the former as to the northern geography.

 PROGRESS AND EXTENT OF

But this error apart, their minute acquaintance was rather confined to a somewhat CENTRAL POSITION between the three continents; which, by its *seas* communicating with the ocean to the east and the west; and by its *navigable rivers* flowing on every hand from the interior of either continent to these *seas*,† is peculiarly appointed by nature for the nursery of civilization.

The reason that they knew more of this region, is not that it was more populous, but that it was, from advantages of situation, the theatre of sociability—*mother of science and refinement*: the reason that they knew less of the more interior regions, is not that they were less populous, but that their inhabitants, from want of more abundant channels of communication, were immersed in solitude—*asylum of ignorance and barbarism*. For, though the civilized world of the ancients was populous almost to a miracle, yet the remoter regions of either continent were in no very inferior degree supplied with their barbarous inhabitants; who, comparatively speaking, confined themselves for the most part within the precincts of their own villages, &c. till the wanton encroachments of the Roman empire roused their implacable ferocity to destroy it. But to be a little more particular on the *progress* and *extent* of our proper subject.

By ancient geography, (Scripture apart) we understand, whatever the GREEK and ROMAN writers have left us on that subject. And it is observable of it, that time has prescribed to its progress, distinct and successive *periods* or *ages*.

† Consult the map *Terra Veteribus Nota*.

ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.

1st, The information contained in the poems of Homer makes the *first age* (if we may so speak) of ancient geography. GREECE, the neighbouring shores of ITALY, part of ASIA, and a small portion of AFRICA towards EGYPT, composed the whole of its object.

2d, Those contracted limits of geography received no considerable aggrandizement till the conquests of Alexander the Great; which may form its *second age* or *period*; for the Greeks, before that period, had no knowledge of INDIA but its name, and that of the Indus.

3d, They would have remained equally ignorant of the WEST, if some of their historians had not mentioned the navigation of the Phœnicians, about the southern shores of IBERIA or SPAIN; which constitutes an epoch in our subject that may be entitled its *third age*.

4th, The Roman domination, when it extended itself in the WEST, and towards the north of EUROPE, made us acquainted with the different countries of that quarter. The parts of ASIA and AFRICA subjected to the same power, became also much better known than they had been hitherto. Thus what, according to some ancient writers, we may call the ROMAN WORLD, makes the *fourth* and *principal age* of ancient geography; which, being detailed with most minuteness and precision; of course predominates in these pages.

Nothing more contributed to retard the improvement of the ancients in geography, than the opinion, *That the earth was habitable only in temperate regions*; for, according to this system, the torrid zone was a barrier that permitted no communication between the northern temperate zone which they inhabited, and the southern. Their intelligence being thus confined to a band or zone, they

 ERRORS RELATIVE TO THE

might with propriety call extension from west to east, *length* or *longitude*; and the more contracted space from north to south, *width* or *latitude*. Strabo, the most illustrious geographer of antiquity, was not undeceived in this opinion, which circumscribed the object of his science; he, nevertheless, extended it to some regions beyond the Tropic. Ptolemy extended its limits, and even advanced it beyond the Equinoctial line. And the Ganges, which bounded the investigations of Strabo, on the east, was not the line that terminated the geography of Ptolemy. Navigation had opened the way through the ulterior countries as far as that of *SINÆ*; which we shall make known in the sequel of this volume. ■

Thus much we conceived it indispensable to say on the progress and extent of ancient geography. But as our plan will be to commence with the higher northern latitudes where geographical errors peculiarly abound, therefore, we will also premise this **FIRST PART** with Mr. Pinkerton's remarks on Pliny's geography of the north of Europe and Asia; hoping that *these*, as well as many errors of the *historic* kind, to be noticed in like manner in this Introduction, will stand hereafter, in consequence of his researches, singularly corrected.

 SECTION SECOND.

Errors relative to the ancient geography of the north of Europe and Asia.

We have extracted from Pinkerton's Dissertation on the Goths, the following information upon this subject; his words are—"Pliny's geography of the north is

 ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY OF THE NORTH.

here given, as the most full and curious of all antiquity. The bounds of ancient knowledge on the west and south are fixed and clear. On the east, D'Anville has fully settled them. But the northern, the most important of all, to the history of Europe, D'Anville leaves as Cluverius ignorantly put them.

“ The *Riphaean mountains* of Pliny, as of Ptolemy, palpably run from east to west; as he passes them to go to the *Scythic Ocean*. It is clear from Ptolemy, that they ran along the head of the *Tanais* and are often named with the *Tanais* by the ancients; for by all ancient accounts the *Tanais* rose in them. But this is nothing to the matter. The question is what the ancients thought. And it is clear that they often confounded a *forest* with a chain of *mountains*, as Pliny here does the *Hercynian forest*. No wonder then that in civilized times no such *mountains* otherwise *forests*, are to be found. The *Riphaean forest*, I am convinced; was that now called Volkonski, still 150 miles long from the west, to Moscow on the east. It is also a range of small hills.

“ Timæus, as we learn from other passages of Pliny, called the isle opposite Raunonia by the name of *Baltia*. It is therefore a slip of Pliny when he puts this among the nameless isles. What river the ancients called *Paropamisus*, is doubtful. There was a *mountain* and *region Paropamisus* at the head of the *Indus*. The *Amalchian* was evidently the eastern part of the *Scythic Ocean*. Present Sarasu, or some other river running north on the east of the Caspian, may be *Paropamisus*.

“ The Promontory *Rubeas* seems to me that on the west of the mouth of the river *Rubo* or *Dwina*, being

 ERRORS RELATIVE TO THE

the north point of the present Courland. Cluverius, who puts it in the north of Lapland shews strange ignorance. The ancients knew no more of Lapland than of America: and were never further north than Shetland,* and the south part of Scandinavia. The *Cronian* seems here the north-east part of the Baltic sea. As Pliny tells us repeatedly, in other places, that *Baltia* or *Basilia*, was the isle where, only, amber was found, it is clearly *Glessaria* of Prussia, not *Scandinavia*. The isles *Oone*, &c., all grant to be those of Oesel, &c., at the mouth of the Finnish Gulf.

“ Cluverius is so utterly *foolish*† as to put the *Sevo Mons* of Pliny, in Norway; in which childish blunder he is blindly followed, as usual, by Cellarius and D’Anville, which last has not examined one tittle of the ancient geography of Germany, though the most important of all, to the history of Europe. Pliny’s *Sevo Mons*, is actually that chain between Prussia and Silesia, called *As-siburgius Mons*, by Ptolemy, and now Zottenburg. In the map of modern Germany by Cluverius, this chain is fully marked, from the east of Bohemia and Silesia up to the Resehout. Tacitus mentions this *Sevo Mons* (though he gives not the name) as dividing the *Suevi* from the north to south. Most ancients regarded the

* The real Thule or Thyle of the ancients, as D’Anville shews.

† Though we quote it, we do not sanction the *abrupt phrase* of our profound antiquary; who seems, from the tenour of his book, to pique himself upon that very exceptionable and uncourteous quality of *moroseness*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

Moscow. The opinion of a *Scythic* Ocean* seems to have prevailed in the eleventh century; for Adam of Bremen says people could sail from the Baltic down to Greece. It seems also the *Ocean of Darkness* in Eastern writings. I know not if its existence was not believed in Europe till the sixteenth century.”

We will be excusable for alleging, in favour of so profound an interpreter of ancient authorities, a presumptive evidence of ancient ignorance respecting the northern regions; such as the well known opinion among the ancients, *That the earth was habitable only in temperate regions*: this alone, might have sufficiently restrained their zeal for discovery, to have precluded them from an accurate acquaintance higher north than the judgment of our author is inclined to admit they possessed.

 SECTION THIRD.

Origin and Migrations of Parent Nations.

Previously to entering on the detail of our proper subject, it is conceived that infinite advantage will result to the student, from a concise view of the distinct races of mankind known to the ancients, with their migrations, so far as Mr. Pinkerton's "Dissertation on the Goths"

* Perhaps this was only an *error loci* of the Frozen Ocean that occupies a higher northern latitude, of which some imperfect account in all probability had been given by *Finnish* and *Sarmatic* emigrants from that quarter. It was very easy at least to confound it with the Baltic sea.

OF PARENT NATIONS.

enables us to speak on so extensive and difficult a subject. For without some idea of these dawnings of civil history, out of which the first denominations of civil geography originate; *this* would necessarily be obscure from beginning to end, as *that* would equally be, under a like circumstance. Such is the reciprocity of light and illustration between the different branches of science in general, and between history and geography in particular.

As Mr. Pinkerton but slightly hints at the scriptural account of the origin of nations; and, speaking of the accounts of the *Scythæ* given by some of the fathers of the church, says, "Perhaps it may be thought that these ecclesiastical authorities prove too much, as they mark the whole immediate descendants of Noah as Scythians; and of course might prove all the nations of the earth to be Scythians, as by Scripture account they all sprung from Noah," therefore the student must regard the following sketch as derived by Mr. P. from the most approved writers of profane history—sacred history being consigned *apart* as inadequate here. But as this summary of ancient geography is intended to be a key to general history, both the sacred account of the plantation of the earth, and sacred geography, &c. form **PART** the **SECOND** of this work; where it will appear that the sacred and profane accounts corroborate each other, much more than seems to justify our author's neglect of the former.

In the course of the following sketch, the reader will observe that the *Scythians*, *Getæ*, or *Goths* occupy by much the greater portion of our attention; but not unjustly, as they were not only the progenitors of almost all

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

modern Europe, but of ancient Greece and Rome, as well as the greater part of Asia Minor; thereby rendering themselves almost as highly distinguished above the rest of mankind in ancient, as in modern history. But to the point—

Not to mention the host of authorities and numberless quotations given by Mr. P. which he has most laboriously, and no doubt judiciously examined, in order to restore these “*historic truths*” to light, we shall content ourselves with giving a plain narrative of what we find to our purpose; as it would militate exceedingly against the continuity as well as brevity wished to be maintained here. Therefore, drawing to a focus the brilliant lights irradiating from every page of his invaluable work, we gather an idea of seven distinct aboriginal races of men, viz. 1st, *The Chinese*, 2d, *The East Indians*, 3d, *The Scythians*, 4th, *The Assyrians*, 5th, *The Sarmatians*; 6th, *The Celts*, 7th, *The Fins or Laplanders*; of which the five first were *Asiatic*, and the latter two *European*.

1st, *The Chinese*.

Our author informs us that the CHINESE and JAPANESE are infallibly, as their language and history declare, a grand aboriginal nation. He also says that the—

TARTARS or MOGULS* were a colony from them, and that their wars with the *Chinese* can be traced back to 200 years before Christ; in which, about 87 years before Christ, the *Chinese* obtained a prodigious victory over

* “Mogul seems to be the rightful appellation for this people down to the twelfth century, when the name of Tartar began to be applied by us to almost half of Asia.” *Pinkerton on the Goths*.

OF PARENT NATIONS.

them. After this, their vast nations fell into civil wars. In process of time, the numerous hordes that were vanquished, moved west in *two* divisions. *One* division settled in the confines of present Persia; while the *other*, under the name of—

HUNS, passed north west over the vast river Walga, and poured into Europe about 375 years after Christ, in such amazing numbers as no valour could withstand. They first encountered the *Alani* a Gothic people, whom they overpowered, but admitted as allies. The *Alani* and the other Gothic nations—who, even to the Caledonian woods of the *Picts*, were of large limbs, elegant and blooming features, and light hair—were astonished at the very forms of these new invaders, distinguished by squat limbs, flat noses, broad faces, small black eyes, dark hair, with little or no beard; as indeed are the present Tartars. The *Ostrogöths* also yielded to the HUNNIC swarms, and were admitted as allies, on condition of fighting in their armies. The HUNS now commanded by Balamir, as they were afterwards by three others before the famous Attila, entered the *Vesigothic* territory, and expelled the inhabitants, who found it in vain to resist such myriads of warlike invaders. But as the HUNS came not in upon the *Scythic* settlements till the fourth century of our æra, there is every reason to conclude that the inhabitants, then far advanced in civilization, remained in their possessions; for though the *Goths* who came into the Roman Empire are counted only by thousands, those whom the HUNS found, may be reckoned by millions; and Busbæquius, with others, shews that the peasants of Crim Tartary still speak the *Gothic*. In the year 453, Ardaric, king of the *Ostrogöths*, assisted by the *Gefidæ*, defeated

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

the HUNS, &c. The remainder of the European HUNS much reduced, were afterwards nearly extinguished by the *Igours* of Siberia; so that in Hungary, whose name arose from that people, there is not one HUN.

2d, *The East Indians.*

The EAST INDIANS are not *Tartars*, but a race and language of men to themselves. M. D'Anville says that "sciences and polity were found among the INDIANS from the earliest times in which their country was known. The enterprises of Cyrus, and of Darius son of Hystaspes, on India, preceded by an expedition of Semiramis, and by that attributed to Dionysius or Bacchus, have afforded to the west no particular knowledge of this country. Nor did Europe acquire any geographical acquaintance with India till the invasion of it by Alexander."—As the ancient EAST INDIANS are noted for migrations to, and colonising other countries, they claim no further notice here.

3d, *The Scythæ, Geta, or Goths.*

The ancient SCYTHIANS were aborigines of present Persia. Under their king Tanaus, they attacked and subdued Vexores king of Egypt on the one hand, and conquered India on the other, about 1500 years before Ninus, or 3660 before Christ; extending their empire east and west from Egypt to the Ganges, and north and south from the Indian ocean to the Caspian sea. About 1500 years after, or 2160 years before Christ, Ninus subverted the Scythian empire and established the Assyrian on its ruins; when, by consequence, the SCYTHÆ NOMADES, a pastoral people of the north of Persia, crossed the *Araxes* and *Caucasus* to settle around the *Euxine* or Black sea; leaving behind them the southern *Scythæ* or Persians, who

OF PARENT NATIONS.

are the progenitors of the Persians of the present day. This asylum of the SCYTHIANS north of the *Euxine*, corresponding with Little Tartary, Mr. P. in compliance with custom, calls *ancient Scythia*, as being the *Parent* country of the European or *western*, as well as of the *eastern* SCYTHIANS, who gradually extended from this nursery of valorous men, in either direction. We shall speak of these two principal divisions of the SCYTHIANS or GOTHS, and their colonies, in succession.

1, EASTERN SCYTHIANS. But in regard to the eastern migration and somewhat retrograde motion of these *Scythæ*, in what proportion those to the east of the Caspian sea, known as *Scythæ intra Imaum* et *Scythæ extra Imaum*, were derived from the *Euxine*, or directly from the ancient *Scythic* empire, seems to rest in a degree of uncertainty. In his statement of these eastern settlements, Mr. P. explicitly says that the *Massagetae* and *Sacæ*, who were the *Scythæ intra Imaum*, and the *Chatae* or *Getes* and fabulous *Arimaspi*, who were the *Scythæ extra Imaum*, on the authority of Diodorus Siculus, came respectively from the *Palus Mæotis*. He also expressly states that the *Bactriani* were *Sacæ* or old *Scythæ*, who extended thus far during the *Sythic* empire in Persia; for Ninus made war on them. But he speaks doubtfully of the *Sogdiani* and *Margiani*, rather inclining to derive the former from the source of the *Bactriani*, and the latter from that of the *Massagetae*.

Our author also informs us, on the authority of Dionysius the Geographer, that the positions between the *Euxine* and the *Caspian* seas, as *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and south of these, *Armenia*, were *Scythic* settlements:

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

but that those of *Colchis* were dispersed by a colony of Egyptians about 1480 years before Christ; (afterwards the famous *Colchians*) attracted thither, as were the *Argonauts*, by the gold mines of the country. Here also a small doubt abides. In Mr. P.'s laudable zeal to prove that the *GETÆ*, *GOTHS*, and *SCYTHÆ* were one people, he omits to inform us whether these settlements were made as the *SCYTHIANS* passed over this tract to the neighbourhood of the *Palus Mæotis*, or afterwards, by retrogression. The judgment of every one, however, will most probably affirm the first alternative, as migrations generally leave their traces, though seldom retrograde.

Let us consider this account of the *EASTERN* settlements of the *SCYTHIANS* sufficient for the relative weight of the subject, and return to *Parent Scythia*, formerly called *Ancient* or *Little Scythia*, now *Little Tartary*, and trace their western progress.

2. *WESTERN SCYTHIANS.* The *SCYTHÆ NOMADES* of the north of Persia, who retired from the power of Ninus, having attained this fruitful situation about 2000 years before Christ, had here their first encounter with the native *Celts* known by the appellation of *Cimmerii*, whom they did not finally expel from their fastness in the *Tauric Chersonese*, till 640 years before Christ; and after making early settlements in the east, as just seen, they tarried here till about 1800 years before Christ, when they began to colonize—

a. *THRACE*; and thence, *Asia Minor*, *Illyricum*, and *Greece*; which they completed in 300 years. In the neighbourhood of *Thrace*, respecting the north, we must not confound the nations of *Iazyges* and *Roxolani* with



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS.

c. **ILLYRICUM***. The history of those **SCYTHIANS** who from *Thrace* settled the country between the **Danube** and the **Adriatic** sea, is not a little obscure. Some centuries after coming hither, they successively submitted to their more thrifty brethren of *Macedon* and *Rome*. Excepting some *Illyrian* settlements on the neighbouring shores of *Italy*, the **SCYTHIC** migration on this route extended no further west; in which direction the *Celts* still retained their *Gallic* possessions till about 500 years before Christ, when the *Germans*, or northern *Scythia*, poured in upon them; having passed into Germany by a north-west direction from *Parent Scythia*, as is hereinafter explained.

d. **GREECE**. Those **SCYTHIANS** who went into *Greece* as above mentioned, were called *Pelasgi*; and afterwards *Hellenes*; as was all Greece known principally by the names first of *Pelasgia* and afterwards of *Hellas* among its own inhabitants. The *Pelasgi* were the first possessors of Greece of whom we have any historic account: for the *aborigines* of Europe penetrated into neither extremity of *Italy* nor *Greece*. To what eminence the Greeks arose in arts and science, only rivalled by their Scythian brethren in other ages and countries, is variously descanted on by Greek antiquaries: and to what extent two small *Egyptian* colonies of *Athens* and *Argos* led by *Cecrops* and *Danaus*, and one *Phœnician* colony of *Thebes* led by *Cadmus*, contributed to this eminence, will probably ever rest undecided even by the most indefatigable of these enquirers. We have already seen

* *Illyricum*, in the enlarged sense of Mr. P. extends all along the north side of the **Adriatic** to **Gaul**; having the **Danube** north; **Thrace** and **Macedon** east.

OF PARENT NATIONS.

that this *Scythic* branch colonized *Lycia*, *Pamphilia*, and other parts of Asia Minor. Nor should we omit to mention the *Greek* colony of *Massilia*, now *Marseilles*, in France, who came from *Phocia*, a city of *Ionia*, 600 years before Christ; not to confound the same with the *Phœnician* colony of *Marseilles*, of 60 years posterior date, as is yet to be noticed. Besides passing eastwardly to Asia Minor, and thence to *Marseilles*, the *Greeks* or *Pelasgi* colonized—

e. ITALY. Mr. Pinkerton derives the *Scythic* settlers of Italy from four sources, and makes as many partitions of the country, corresponding with the settlements thus made; which, in regard to the three first, were about 1000 years before Christ; and 500 years before Christ, in regard to the last. Excepting the aboriginal *Celts*, whom they found in the *Gallic* part, the *SCYTHIANS* were the first possessors of Italy.—We shall speak of these four partitions in succession; and then proceed to notice the *GOTHIC* settlements in *Germany* and the rest of Europe.

1st, The first of the divisions just alluded to, comprehends *Græcia-Magna*, *Campania*, and *Latium*; which was settled by *Pelasgi* from *Arcadia*. Some time after, a few other *Pelasgi* from *Epirus* coming hither, were repulsed by these first colonists, who were erroneously thought to be *aborigines*. With many other proofs of the *Greek* origin of this portion of *Italy*, Mr. P. says, “The Latin language is a clear proof of the origin of the people, being merely the *Æolic* dialect of the *Greek*, as *Quintilian* remarks, and as the learned well know.”

2d, That part of Italy which lies opposite to *Illyricum* on the *Adriatic* sea, a part of which was called *Peuketia*,

ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

was settled by the *Peuketi* from *Illyricum*, a branch of the great *Basternic* nation of *Parent Scythia*; who, by the by, forming themselves into several other divisions, and proceeding in different directions, overran the rest of Europe; of which presently.

3d, The *Etrurians*, as we learn from Herodotus, whom Pliny, Paterculus, and others of the best ancient writers follow, were a *Lydian* colony; and we have just been told that the *Lydians* were SCYTHIANS from Thrace direct. The *Lydians* were early polished by their neighbourhood with the *Assyrians* of *Cappadocia*; hence the *Etrurians* seem to have been skilled in the fine arts long before the *Latins*, as the many ancient pieces preserved, shew."

4th, That part of Italy called *Cisalpine Gallia*, was settled by the German Gauls of the *Basternic* or *Scythic* race, about 500 years before Christ. They expelled the aboriginal *Celts*, who occupied no other part of Italy. But this is, in some measure, anticipating the movements of the *Basternic* nation, whom we must now attend to, in pursuing of the order of the first *Scythic* progress over Europe, by returning once more to the grand store-house of European nations; whence we shall proceed with our last, and probably largest colonies, to supply—

f. GERMANY, SCANDINAVIA, and the rest of Europe. Mr. Pinkerton enters on this article in the following emphatic, and, we may say, very exulting manner. "We are now arrived at the last and most important part of this dissertation: and a subject upon which the whole modern history of Europe depends. If we cannot shew the *Germans* to have been originally SCYTHÆ, this dissertation is inept. If we can, a field of wide curiosity and

OF PARENT NATIONS.

enquiry opens to the learned of Europe. For, the origin of government, manners, laws, in short, all of the antiquities of Europe, will assume a new appearance; and instead of being only traced to the woods of Germany, as Montesquieu and the greatest writers have done, may be followed through the long descriptions of the manners, &c., of the *Scythians* and *Thracians* given by Herodotus; nay, even up to the *aboriginal Scythian empire of Persia*. And beyond this there is no memorial of human affairs, save in Egypt alone, the history of which begins with **MENES**, the first king, about 4000 years before our æra; while the earliest appearance of the **SCYTHIANS** in history is about 400 years after, when Vexores was king of Egypt, and Tanaus of the **SCYTHÆ**—not to mention the collateral light derived from the whole history of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who were **SCYTHÆ**, as just shewn.”

On this route we shall find the **SCYTHIANS**, **GETÆ**, or **GOTHS** not only peopling all *Scandinavia* and *Germany*, but extending hence and actually possessing *Gaul* and *Spain* 500 years before Christ, as well as *Britain* and *Ireland* 300 years before Christ, dispossessing the aboriginal *Celts* almost at pleasure.

Setting out then from the shores of the Euxine with the Scythic migration towards Germany and Scandinavia, the *Great Basternic* nation engrosses attention. This nation sprung from *Peuké*, an island in the mouth of the Danube, and heart of *Parental Scythia*. In their gradual migration towards the Baltic, after sending a branch to Illyricum and Italy, afore-mentioned, the *Basternæ* became so numerous as to extend over one-fifth of ancient Germany; in length 500 miles from the Euxine to the Baltic, and in breadth 150 miles between the

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS.

Vistula on the west, and the *Niemen* and *Dneiper* on the east. It was this Scythian nation with whom the *Sarmatae*, their Asiatic neighbours, were so much confounded by superficial writers; the latter having come by detachments into Europe at a posterior date, and settled in amity among, the former, under the names of *Venedi*, *Fenni*, *Roxolani*, *Iazyges*, &c., of whom hereafter.

Progressing from this extensive tract to the west and the north, the name of *Basternæ* seems to be merged in those of *Atmoni*, *Sitones*, and *Peukini*. "Of these three divisions of *Basternæ*," says Mr. P. "The *Atmoni*, if I mistake not, spreading west along the Danube, became the *Southern Basternæ*, or those properly and absolutely so called by the ancients; while the *Sitones* and *Peukini* proceeded northward till they arrived at the Baltic sea and Scandinavia." In this manner did the SCYTHIC population diffuse itself over Scandinavia and Germany, and penetrate into Gaul, the Gallic part of Italy, and Spain, as early as 500 years before Christ. Having now pervaded the whole of the European continent—besides making the famous expedition into Asia minor, under Lomnorijs and Lotarius, to found the kingdom *Galatia*, which consisted of a detachment of those, *Gauls* who had invaded Italy under Brennus—they yet find the isolated spots of *Britain* and *Ireland* to the west, where they make settlements 300 years before Christ. Of these settlers, the *Piks* and *Belgæ* are particularly distinguished. The *Piks* passed from *Scandinavia* to the north of *Britain*; and if they were not the immediate descendants of the *Peukini*, whom we have traced from the island of *Peuké* in the mouth of the Danube, it is very

OF PARENT NATIONS.

evident that with so plausible a pretext, "*etymological mania*" would find very little difficulty in deriving *Piks* from *Peuké*. The *Belgæ* went from *Gaul* to the south of *Britain*, driving before them the scanty remains of the *Celts*, and in like manner settled in *Ireland* about the period above noted. The Scythic or Gothic language and manners have also been much preserved in the wilds of *Iceland*; which was colonized from *Norway* in the ninth century, and might also be called *Scythic*, if this settlement be not of too modern a date.

This account of the settlements of the *GETÆ*, *SCYTHÆ*, or *Goths* in Europe, forms Mr. Pinkerton's "*Epochs of the first-Gothic progress over Europe.*" His "*Epochs of the second Gothic progress from Getia and from Germany over Europe.*" relate to the inundation of these nations, who had remained in a semibarbarous state, upon their more refined brethren of the south; involving the Roman empire in ruin. The substance of these epochs shall be joined hereto; and for a clear elucidation of them; nothing can be more appropriate than the two maps dedicated to these subjects, which we have designed and engraved for our *Ancient Geographical and Historical Atlas*.

4th, *The Assyrians.*

All that we see relating to this head in the dissertation of our author, is the following; which I presume is sufficient at least for the object of this abstract.

BELUS, the *Nimrod* of scripture, is reputed the founder of the *Tower of Babel* at *Babylon*, which was followed by the dispersion of mankind: his son *Ninus* was certainly the founder of the *Assyrian empire*, whose capital was

ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

Babylon, and the dispersion of the *Scythians* followed. But *Nimrod* was of the race of *Ham* by Scripture account. To this race also, belonged the fathers of the nations along the east end of the Mediterranean, the Arabic gulf or Red sea, and through all Arabia. And certain it is that the *Arabic* is a dialect of the *Grand Assyrian language*, as are the *Syrian*, *Phœnician*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, *Coptic*, *Abyssinian*, &c., all sister dialects: and the *Assyrians* who overturned the *Scythian* empire, formed one great language or race of men, extending along the east end of the Mediterranean and Arabian seas, to the *Erythræan* sea, gulf of *Persia*, and river *Euphrates*. From them the *Egyptians* and *White Ethiopians* must also have sprung, as their language and situation declare. From this we are authorised to consider as branches of the **ASSYRIAN RACE**, the Egyptian colonies of *Colchis*, of *Athens*, and of *Argos*; also the Phœnician colonies of *Thebes*, in Greece; of *Hippo*, *Utica*, and *Carthage*, in Africa; of *Massilia*, in Gaul; and of *Gades*, in Spain (who extended their commerce into Britain and Gaul long ere Scandinavia and Germany were at all known to the Greeks or Romans): and the *Aquitani*, in Gaul, who are traced back as far as Arabia, whence they passed through Africa under the name of *Mauri*, through Spain under the name of *Iberi*, into Gaul under that of *Aquitani*; where they were found by *Julius Cæsar*, making counter strokes with the *Belgæ*, upon the ill fated *Celts*: and that the great progenitor of this extensive family of mankind, according to scripture, was *Ham*.* But to be more particular of the *Egyptian* and *Phœnician* colonies—

* It need not be objected to this induction, that *Ashur*,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

from Tyre, about 800 years before Christ. They settled the island of *Gades*, in Spain, 1200 years before Christ; and *Massilia*, in Gaul, 539 before Christ.

The reader now perceives how extensively the SCYTHIAN and ASSYRIAN races intermixed in Asia Minor, and in Greece in particular. And observing that the latter had the advantage of the former in civilization and arts, wherever they united, he will be inclined to demur on the title of preference given the Scythic, by Mr. P., over all other races of mankind. But granting the higher distinction of the Phœnicians and Egyptians about the "*Epochs of the first Scythic progress over Europe*," and passing by the renown that the Scythic race attained in Greece and Rome, which is plausibly attributed to their neighbors of the ASSYRIAN RACE, the present refinement of Europe and America, which Mr. P., calls "*a Scythic empire of the present day though not under one sovereign*," far surpasses the social effort of any previous empire—waving the mortifying anticipation of the *savage fate* that seems once more universally impending. With their unjust aversion to Assyrian rivalship, how much more then should the feelings of our Scythian monopolisers of human excellence revolt at the opinion of Major Rennell, that the ancient Egyptians had *black skin and crisped hair* as the *degraded slaves* of America; of which he cites the far-famed Sesostris as a special instance.* Such a position scarcely deserves the epithet of *hypothetical*, much less to gain credence in defiance of the Egyptian *Mummies* as proofs of the contrary.

* See Rennell's Herodotus.

OF PARENT NATIONS.

5th, The Sarmatæ.

“The SARMATÆ were in all appearance, originally, possessors of south-west Tartary, but expelled by the Tartars. For their speech, the *Sarmatic* or *Sclavonic*, is remote from the *Tartaric*; and their persons, full of grace and majesty, are different from those of the Tartars: so that they are not of Tartaric origin. Besides proving that they are not of Tartaric origin, many reasons are adduced by Mr. P. to shew that they are an original-race.

They entered Europe about 1000 years before Christ; for they were far behind the *Scythæ* in their progress, and it is clear that upon their entry, they found the greater part of Europe occupied by the *Scythæ*, who bounded them on the south-west and north-west. Hence, in process of time, several of the *Sarmatic* and *Scythic* tribes of their frontier, settled among each other, and generally waged war in alliance. Those of the SARMATÆ who are found entirely within the Scythic territory, are three nations of *Iazyges*, viz. the *Iazyges Eneocadlæ*, on the east of the mouth of the *Tyras*; the *Iazyges Mæota*, on the north of the *Mæotis*; and chiefly, the *Iazyges Metanastæ*, between the Danube and *Teiss*, above *Pannonia*. Besides these, we find several other SARMATIC nations within the territory above assigned to the *Basternic* nation of *Scythæ* as we proceed northward upon the Baltic, such as the *Venedi*, the *Hirri*, and the *Fenni*. This country, commonly known as *Germano-Sarmatia*, was the ultimate tract of Europe on the north-east in those remote periods, though in more modern times, that boundary runs much further to the north-east.

A great SARMATIC nation, the *Roxolani*, gave name to Russia: and that part of Poland, far from Russia, call.

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS

ed *Red* or *Black Russia*, took its name from a part of the *Roxolani* who had penetrated to that corner and settled. Their posterity, as may be said of the *SARMATÆ* in general, still subsist in the inhabitants of Russia and Poland.

6th, *The Celts.*

We are informed that the *CELTS* were the most ancient inhabitants of Europe that can be traced; and were, to the after settlers, what the aboriginal savages of America are to the European settlers there. These people form themselves under two grand divisions. 1st, *The Celts* properly and peculiarly so called; and 2d, *The Cimbri, Cimmerii, or Cumri.*

1. *THE CELTS proper*, occupied that part of Europe which lies west and south of the Rhine, even beyond the Pyrenees; but extended not beyond the Gallic part of Italy. They were finally pent up in the extremity of Gaul, by the *Scythians*, under the name *Belgæ*, on the north; and the *Aquitani*, a *Mauric* people, on the south; whence a portion of them were pursued by a portion of the *Belgæ* into the south of Britain, about 300 years before Christ; and again driven thence about the same time to Ireland, by their brethren the *Cimbri* or *Cumri*, who were the first inhabitants, and presumed by Mr. P. to have come to the north of Britain from the opposite shores of Germany, at a very remote period.

2. *THE CIMMERII, CIMBRI, or CUMRI*, are by much the larger division of the original *Celtic* inhabitants of Europe, and are supposed to spring from a northern progress of the proper *Celts*. They possessed all ancient Germany, according to the enlarged boundary of Mr. P., when they were disturbed in their peaceful pos-

OF PARENT NATIONS.

sessions by the obtruding *Scythians*, at intervals, from 2000 to 500 years before Christ.

At the first Scythic pressure from the east, if not at an earlier period, a part of the *Cimbri* or *Cumri*, of the north-west corner of Germany, are supposed by our author to have passed into the north of Britain; being the oldest inhabitants that can be traced, and leaving *Cumraic* names to rivers and mountains even in the furthest *Ebrides*, (Hebrides or Western Isles). Of these we are told that the present Celto-Welch and Highlanders of Scotland are remains; as are the Celt-Irish the remains of the *Gael* or proper *Celts*, who passed from Gaul to Britain, and were promoted thence to Ireland, by the *Cumri*, about 300 years before Christ, as just mentioned. These Celt-Irish, Celto-Welch, and the Highlanders of Scotland are the only **CELTIC** remains that Mr. P. will allow of in all Europe.

The few remaining *Cimbri* of this corner of Germany were every where surrounded by the *Scythæ* about 100 years before Christ, when the Scandinavian *Scythæ* poured down upon them, and drove them and the *Teutones* (of Scythic origin) before them. The southern Germans permitted them to pass through their territories in search of new habitations. They ruled Gaul and ravaged Spain awhile, till turning upon Italy, they were almost extinguished by the sword of Marius 102 years before Christ.

We have already seen, incidentally, (as indeed have we seen nearly the whole of this article on the **CELT'S**) that a part of the *Cimbri* or *Cimmerii* for a long while defended themselves against the *Scythæ* in the Tauric Chersonese, or were neglected by them till 646 years before

 ORIGIN AND MIGRATIONS OF PARENT NATIONS.

Christ; when passing the Cimmerian Bosphorus, they made their way into Asia Minor over the mountains of Caucasus. The Scythians pursued them, vanquished, and perhaps extinguished them.

7th, *The Fins or Laplanders.*

MR. P. endeavours to distinguish between the FINS and the FENNI; as he would shew that the former were *aboriginals* of Finland, Lapland, &c.; and the latter a nation of *Sarmatic* origin. But with due deference, I think his words are inconclusive, or rather inclining to a contrary opinion, *that they are one and the same people, of the Sarmatic race.* For, notwithstanding he says, severally, that “the northern *Fins* including *Laplanders*, seem to have been infallibly aborigines of their country; for they are so weak, so peaceable, and their soil so wretched, that they could have vanquished no nation, and no nation could envy them their possessions *in climes beyond the solar road;*” and speaking of the western progress of the *Scythæ*, that “here every European is personally interested, save the *Sarmatians* of Russia and Poland; save the *Celto-Welch* of England, the *Celt-Irish* of Ireland, and the *Highlanders* of Scotland; and save the *Fins* of Hungary, Finland, and Lapland;” yet he also states elsewhere, speaking of the *Huns*, &c., that “the remainder of the European Huns was but very small, and afterwards nearly extinguished by the *Igours* of Siberia—and the Hungarians proper, are *Igours*, a *Finnish* people, who settled there in the ninth century.” It needs only to be demanded, if these *Finnish Igours* from Siberia, the quartet “whence the *Sarmatians* were expelled by the Tartars,” were the “*Fins* of Hungary, Lapland, and Finland,” why should Mr. P. consider

 THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

these as aboriginals of Finland and Lapland, whilst he distinguishes the *Finnish Igours*, or *Fenni* as of *Sarmatic* origin? Perhaps our author did not consider this point to be of much moment in a dissertation on the Goths, or he had been less ambiguous.

—♦—

 THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

WE cannot forbear subjoining here, what Mr. Pinkerton says on the origin and corruption of the Feudal System; though, without disparagement to its military convenience and utility in the periods of simplicity out of which it arose, we should unanimously accord its *extinguished state*, as at least affording an opportunity of a more popular policy (however partial to the United States in its adoption as yet), notwithstanding Mr. P.'s *specious regret* of its fate.

He says—“The Feudal System has been treated of by many writers, but so uncommon a quality is penetration, that all of them to this day have confounded two grand divisions in its history which are totally dissimilar. These divisions are, 1st, *The Feudal System*; 2d, *The corrupted Feudal System*. The former extends from the earliest account of time, through the early history of Greece and Rome till the progress of society changed the manners of these nations; and through the early history of the Goths and Germans who overturned the Roman empire, down to the eleventh century. At this period commenced the *corrupted feudal system*, which lasted till the fifteenth century, when the *feudal system*, began, after its corruption, to dissolve quite away. The corruption of the feudal system took place soon after the petty king-

 THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

doms of the former ages were united into great monarchies, as the heptarchies in England became subject to our monarch; and so in other countries. This corruption is no more the feudal system than any other corruption is the substance preceding corruption, that is quite the reverse: and yet, such is modern superficiality, that it has been termed the *feudal system*; and all writers estimate the feudal system by its corruption only, just as if we should judge of a republic by its condition when changed into an aristocracy. . About the eleventh century, by the change of small kingdoms into one great monarchy, and by a concatenation of other causes, which it would require a volume to detail, the *feudal system* corrupted (and *corruptio optimi pessima*) into a state of aristocratic tyranny and oppression. Before that period no such matter can be found. The greatest cause was, that nobility and estates annexed, were not hereditary till that time, so that the great were kept in perpetual awe; and that check was removed, before the cities had attained such privileges and powers as to balance the nobility. In ancient Greece and Italy, confined spots, cities were from the first the grand receptacles of society. To the want of cities, the subjection of the people to their lords and all the *corrupted feudal system* is owing. To cities the ruin of that *corrupted feudal system* (generally called *the feudal system*) is solely to be ascribed. Of the *corrupted feudal system* nothing shall be added here, as it commenced at a late period, and is foreign to my work; save one or two remarks on chivalry, an institution quite misunderstood. It was so heterogeneous to the *feudal system*, that, had the *latter* lasted pure, the *former* would never have appeared. But as it is often



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

 THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

lord and superior with gold, silver, and other precious gifts. Indeed the *feudal system*, about which so much noise is made, is the natural fruit of conquest, and is as old in the world as conquest. A territory is acquired, and the state or the general bestows it on the leaders and soldiers, on condition of military service, and of tokens acknowledging gratitude to donors. It was known to Lycurgus; for all the lands of Sparta were held in military tenure. It was known to Romulus, when he regulated Rome. It was known to Augustus, when he gave lands to his veterans, on condition that their sons should, at fifteen years of age, do military service. The reason it did not preponderate and corrupt in Greece and Rome was, that it was stifled by the necessary effects of cities as abovementioned. In Persia, where there were no cities of any power or privilege, it preponderated and corrupted at an early period.

“The *feudal system*, whether in its original *democracy*, or *corrupted* into *aristocracy*, must limit the power of kings; for men who hold their possessions on military service must, of course, have arms in their hands: and even in absolute governments the soldiers are free; witness the pretorian bands of imperial Rome, and the Turkish janisaries. By the *feudal system* every man held arms and freedom in his hands. Montesquieu has begun his account of the *feudal system* with that of the ancient Germans, given by Tacitus; and prides himself with leaving off where others began. A writer more profound would leave off where Montesquieu begins, &c.”—So much for our author’s remarks on a system whose principles have communicated a tincture to almost every constitution of modern Europe. I shall now transcribe,

EPOCHS.

first, The Epochs at which those Scythic hordes, who brought this system from Persia, made their first inroads upon Europe; and *secondly*, The Epochs at which their posterity, with whom it corrupted, effected, during a period of about two hundred years, such wonderful changes in the civilized world, as involve the Roman empire in ruin, together with most of the stupendous monuments of arts and sciences, among which letters were the greatest sufferers—thereby causing the business of civilization, in a measure, to be commenced anew.

I. EPOCHS OF THE FIRST GOTHIC PROGRESS
OVER EUROPE.*

THE Scythians, whom the dawn of history dis- B.C.
covers in present Persia under their king Tanaus,
attack Vexores king of Egypt, conquer Asia,
and establish the Scythian empire 1500 years be-
fore Ninus, or - - - - - 3660

Ninus, first monarch of the Assyrian empire, es-
tablished the same by subverting the Scythian;
when by consequence, the Scythæ Nomades of the
north of Persia cross the river Araxes and Mount
Caucasus and settle around the Euxine sea, - 2160

* The reader will bear in mind (as the terms "*first* and *second* Gothic progress" suggest) that the Goths of this *first* section, were the Scythæ Nomades of Persia, who overran Europe as spoken of in this and the preceding pages; and that the Goths of the following *second* section, were the associations of their savage progeny, (with the addition of Huns and Sarmatians), who again overran Europe in the manner there detailed.

EPOCHS OF GOTHIC

The Scythians begin settlements in Thrace, Illy- B.C.
rium, Greece, and Asia Minor, 1800

The Scythians have completely peopled Thrace,
Illyrium, Greece, and Asia Minor, 1500

The Scythians have peopled Italy, 1000

The Scythians have peopled Germany and Scan-
dinavia, as well as a great part of Gaul and Spain, 500

The Belgæ, of Scythic origin, pass into the south
of Britain and Ireland, 300

The Piks, likewise of Scythic origin, pass into
the north of Britain, 300

II. EPOCHS OF THE SECOND GOTHIC PROGRESS OVER
EUROPE.

A.D. THE Vesigoths* or Western-Getæ were the
250, Goths who poured into Dacia, ravaged it, and
marched on, south, over the Danube into Thrace.

251, Decius is defeated and slain in Mæsia by the
Vesigoths or Western-Getæ.

252, Gallus purchases peace of the Goths by an an-
nual tribute. They return to their own country.

260, The Frangi, or free-men, a confederation of the
Chauci Cherusci, Catti (who were great nations of
Germany), Bructeri, Usipii, Tencteri, Salii, Ansi-
varri, &c. (who were smaller nations) burst through

* The Getæ or Parental Goths were the very people whom Darius found 500 years before Christ, as Herodotus shews, in the identical country whence they now issue. Soon after this expedition of Darius, we find the Gethæ or Goths divided into Vesigoths or western Goths, on the west of the Boristhenes; and Ostrogoths or Alani (a Scythic nation), on the east of the Boristhenes.

 PROGRESS OVER EUROPE.

A.D. Gaul, and ravage Spain: a part passing over into Africa.

The Alamanni, (*all-men*, men of all tribes, or 260, *whole-men*, &c.) a confederation of several tribes, of the vast German nations of the Suevi, invade Italy, and return laden with spoil.

260, The Ostrogoths seize on the small kingdom of the Bosphorus Cimmerus which had long subsisted under Roman protection: afterwards in one naval expedition they take Trebisond, and ravage the Euxine shores; in a second, moving westward, they plunder Bithynia; and in a third they ravage Greece.

269, With another naval armament the Ostrogoths land in Macedonia. Claudius the emperor advancing against them, fought a great battle at Naissus in Dardania, and conquering them, obtained the surname of Gothicus.

272, The Visigoths, who extended over the north and west of Dacia, forced Aurelian to surrender that province.

272, The Almanni again invade Italy, but are repulsed by Aurelian.

276, The Alani invading Pontus, are defeated by Tacitus.

278, Probus builds a wall from the Rhine to the Danube about 200 miles long, to protect the empire from the German nations.

322, The Visigoths no longer content with Dacia, pour into Illyricum, but are expelled by Constantine I.

381, The Vandals, also an association of Suevian

EPOCHS OF GOTHIC

- A.D. tribes, having found Germany open by the frequent transitions of the Franks and Alamanni south-west, had gradually spread south-east, till they bordered on the Vesigoths, and had many conflicts with them.
- 331, Constantine I. again repels the Goths and conquers a few Sarmatians.
- 355, The Franks and Alamanni pass the Rhine and ravage Gaul; but are conquered and repelled by Julian.
- 366, The Alamanni again invade Gaul, and are again defeated.
- 367, Ulphilas, bishop of those Goths who had been allowed by Constantine II. to settle in Mæsia, translates the Scriptures into Gothic; a part of which translation now remains, and before the year 400 most of the Gothic nations in the Roman empire and on its frontiers, became Christians.
- 370, The Burgundians, a Vandalic race, who appeared under this name on the south-west of Germany, about present Alsace, invade Gaul.
- 370, The Saxones, a Vandalic race also, and whom Ptolemy first mentions at the mouth of the Elbe, ravage the coasts of Gaul and Britain.
- 370, The Piks, a German Gothic people from Scandinavia, ravage the north of Britain, and with their confederates the Scots, advance even to London where they are repelled by Theodosius, general of Valentinian, to their ancient possessions beyond the Clyde and Forth.
- 370, Hermanric, king of the Ostrogoths or eastern Getæ, conquering the Vesigoths, the Heruli and

 PROGRESS OVER EUROPE.

- A. D. Venedi of Poland, and the Æstii of Prussia, with many other nations, is compared to Alexander the Great.
- 375, The Huns burst at once from Tartary upon the dominions of the Alani and Ostrogoths, whom they conquer, and admit as allies to fight in their armies.
- 376, The Huns enter the Vesigothic territory; on which the inhabitants, conscious of inferiority, seek the protection of the emperor Valens, and gain admittance into the Roman territory of Mæsia, when, being refused provisions, they revolt.
- 377, The Goths penetrate into Thrace.
- 378, On the 9th of August was fought the famous battle of Adrianople, in which Valens was defeated and slain by the Goths. But the Goths falling into intestine divisions, were in the course of a dozen years repelled into Pannonia; an army of 40,000 Goths being retained for the defence of the empire.
- 395, The Goths unanimously rise under the command of the great Alaric.
- 396, Alaric ravages Greece.
- 400—403, Alaric invades Italy—is defeated by Stilicho, who was himself a Vandalic Goth.
- 406, Radagaisus, at the head of a large army of German nations, viz, Vandals, Suevi, Burgundians, &c, invades Italy. He is likewise defeated by Stilicho, but the remains of his army ravage Gaul.
- 408, Alaric again invades Italy;—besieges Rome thrice, and at length takes it in 410, in which year he died. The moderation of the Goths is highly

EPOCHS OF GOTHIC

A.D. praised by several cotemporary writers. The monuments of art suffered not so much from them, as from time and barbarous pontiffs.

412, Ataulphus, brother-in-law to Alaric, and his elected successor, makes peace with the Romans, and marches the Vesigoths into the south of Gaul, which they possess for a long time.

415, The Suevi, Vandals, and Alani, having in 409 penetrated from the south-west of Germany into Gaul, which they ravaged, were afterwards forced by Constantine, brother-in-law of Honorius, to abandon Gaul, and pass into Spain. Ataulphus, king of the Vesigoths, now leads his forces against them; conquers them, and restores Spain to the Romans, with the exception of Gallicia, which the Suevi and Vandals still retained.

420, The Franks, Burgundians, and Vesigoths obtain a permanent seat and dominion in Gaul. The first in Belgic Gaul, on the north, the second in Lugdunensis and present Burgundy, in the middle; the last in Narbonensis and Aquitain, on the south.

429, The Vandals of Spain pass into Africa under Genseric, their king, and establish the Vandalic kingdom there, which endured 96 years, when it was terminated by the conquest of the celebrated Roman general Belisarius.

430, The great Attila, king of the Huns, begins to reign about this time. His fame chiefly sprung from the terror he spread into the Roman empire; his conquests have been ridiculously magnified. On the east the Ostrogoths, the Gepidæ, and Heruli, obeyed him; as did the Rugii, and Thuringi on the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



EPOCHS OF GOTHIC

A.D. the polygamy &c., of the Huns, inimical to the Christian faith, it is likely, (Divine causes apart) we had all been Mahometans—so much may depend on one hour.

452, Attila again comes upon Italy, but spares Rome. He is again defeated by Torismond, king of the Vesigoths; and dies the next year. His vast empire, being now divided among his discordant sons, falls at once like a meteor that passes over one half the globe and then in an instant vanishes forever.

453, Ardaric, king of the Ostrogoths, assisted by the Gepidæ, defeats the Huns, whom he had abandoned in Pannonia; seizes the palace of Attila, with all Dacia and Illyricum. The remainder of the European Huns was but small, and afterwards nearly extinguished by the Igours of Siberia. In Hungary there is not one Hun, though the name arose from the Huns. The Hungarians proper are Igours, a Finnish people, who settled there in the ninth century.

455, Genseric, king of the African Vandals, takes Rome.

456, Theodoric, king of the Vesigoths, defeats the Suevi in Spain.

462—472, Euric, successor of Theodoric, makes conquests in the north-west of Gaul. Save only Galicia, which the Suevi held, and which was afterwards united to the Gothic empire about 550, by Leovigild—Euric subdues all Spain, and thus begins the Gothic empire there; which lasted till 713, when the Moors conquered the Goths and maintained part of their Spanish domains till the

 PROGRESS OVER EUROPE.

A.D. end of the fifteenth century. The present Spaniards are descendants of the Visigoths, Romans, and Iberians.

475, Odoacer at the head of the Turcilingi, Scyrri, Heruli, and other mixed Sarmatic and Gothic tribes, terminates the Roman empire in the west; and reigns at Rome fourteen years.

490, Theodoric the Great, king of the Ostrogoths in Pannonia, vanquishes Odoacer, and rules Italy, which is now overwhelmed with Ostrogoths.

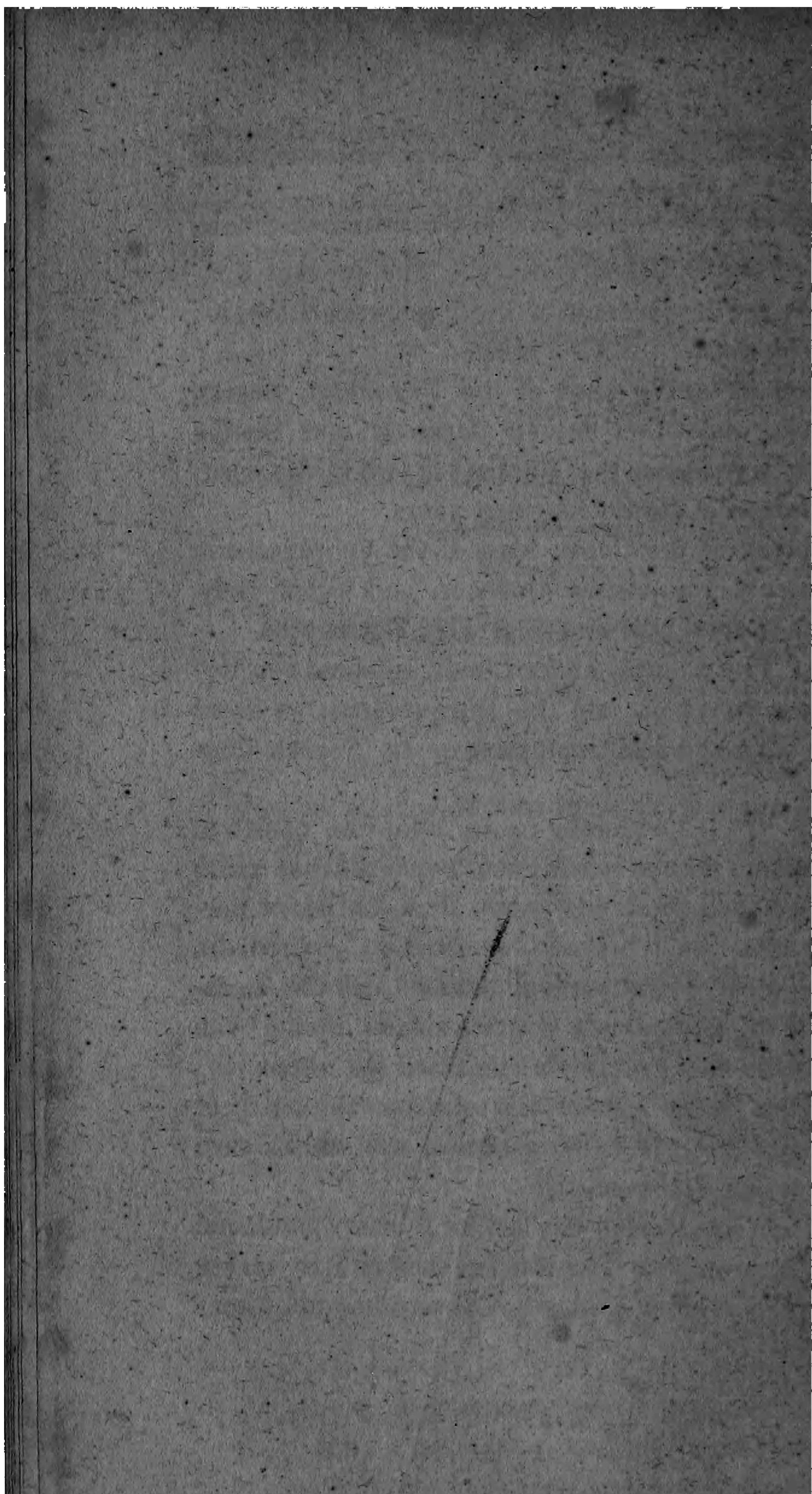
490—508, The Franks, under Clovis, subdued the Visigoths in Gaul, and the Burgundians; an event with which properly commences the French kingdom.

400—453, The Lombards came from the centre of Germany, thence moving south-east till they settle in Pannonia about 400 years after Christ, or perhaps after Attila's death, or about 453, when the Gepidæ of whom ancient authors call the Lombards or Langobardi a part, seized Dacia. In Pannonia the Lombards remained till about

570, When under Alboin they seized on the north of Italy; afterwards holding almost the whole, save Rome and Ravenna, till

773, When Desiderius the last king was vanquished by Charlemagne. The present race of Italy spring

bards.



EPITOME
OF
ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.

PART I.
PROFANE GEOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.
EUROPE.

TO avoid repetition at the commencement of each of the Chapters which compose this PART of our subject, we must here refer to an account of the "*progress and extent of Ancient Geography,*" given in the foregoing Introduction; from which, the pupil will derive as clear a conception as we can impart, relative to the bounds of ancient knowledge in regard to either of these grand divisions of the Earth. Any farther particulars that can be given in regard to these limits, will occur in the details of the series of Sections proper to these Chapters.

We would recommend also, to the pupil, to keep up a continual comparison between the accounts given, in the Chapters and Sections, of the inhabitants of countries of which they treat, and that given of the origin and migration of ancient nations in the Introduction; for in order to avoid repetition, when that abstract from Pinkerton's dissertation is sufficiently full, we shall rely upon

its being attended to without further notice. In making this comparison, if the student should occasionally observe, not only a want of correspondence, but also a material contrariety between the Introduction and the sequel; the explanation is this,—That on many of these topics, particularly in regard to the inhabitants of remote regions, and those of high antiquity who occupied any country, the ancient authors differed exceedingly from each other; wherefore we should not expect their interpreters either to reconcile them or consent with each other. Hence it will be admitted that consistency is ^{not} so desirable here, as it is that we give the opinion of the best authors; so that the tyro, when he becomes profound, may see that we have not deluded him with ideas of certainty, on subjects which he must ultimately regard as measurably hypothetical. But withal, we should do justice to the early writers who differ in their notices, at least of the original settlements of any country,—by remarking, that at some period there may have existed equally solid data for the allusions of each, as it is a palpable impossibility precisely to designate, for a succession of periods, the locality of an ever wandering people, such as the original settlers or Nomadés of every country.

SECTION FIRST.

HIBERNIA VEL IERNE,
IRELAND.

The name of this great island is variously read. That of IERNE, in some authors of antiquity, has a great affinity to the name of Erin, which it bears among the people

SECT. II.

ALBION.

who inhabit it, compounded of *Iar*, west, and *In*, an island, and from which is formed its present denomination of Ireland. Cæsar is the first author who mentions Ireland under the name of HIBERNIA: and therein he might either have latinized the *H' Yverdhon* of the *southern Britons*; or, what is more probable, given it a name that suited his own ideas of its air and climate. In times just preceding the fall of the western empire, we find this island mentioned under the name of *Scotia*; whence its inhabitants, under the name of *Scoti*, issued to invade the north of Britain.

The Romans never having carried their arms into Ireland, had no other knowledge of it, than what commerce furnished between two lands in sight of each other. It would be difficult, not to say inept, to recount the detail which the geography of Ptolemy furnishes of HIBERNIA. To what we have said of the origin of the Irish people, in the Introduction, we will only add here that some writers imputed much of her early population to *Iberia* or *Spain*.

SECTION SECOND.

ALBION VEL BRITANNIA,

GREAT BRITAIN.

The Phœnician colony of *Gades*, now *Cadiz*, had a very early commercial acquaintance with BRITAIN, as well as with Gaul, which their policy kept secret. It was unknown to the Romans till it was invaded by Julius Cæsar during his Gallic wars before Christ 55. It was

ascertained to be an island by Agricola, who sailed around it.

BRITANNIA ROMANA.

England, Wales, and part of Scotland.

When Cæsar passed into BRITAIN, he advanced only to the banks of the Thames, which merely served, as it were, to show him the country. Augustus, little attached to extending the limits of the empire, neglected the conquest of it: and it was not seriously invaded till the reign of Claudius, when the part nearest to Gaul, between the east and south; was subjected. Under the reign of Domitian, the Roman arms commanded by Agricola penetrated even to *Caledonia*; that is to say, into the centre of Scotland. The difficulty of maintaining this distant frontier against the assaults of the unconquered people, determined Adrian to contract the limits of the Roman province in Britain, and separate it from the barbarous country by a *rampart* of eighty miles in length, from the bottom of the gulf now called Solway Frith, to Tinmouth, which is the entrance of a river on the east side of the island. Severus carried these limits farther, in constructing another *rampart*, of thirty-two miles, in the narrowest part of the island between *Glota*, or the river Clyde, and the bottom of *Bobotria*, or the gulf near which the city of Edinburgh stands.

The multiplication of provinces, which prevailed throughout the Roman empire, furnished in this island, a *Britannia Prima*, and *Secunda*; a *Flavia Cæsariensis*, a *Maxima Cæsariensis*, and a *Válentia*. After holding this part of the British isle for more than 400 years, being no longer able to defend so distant a province, the Romans relinquished it to the old inhabitants; who, calling



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

is indisputable that numerous tribes, crossing over from Gaul, established themselves in the southern parts of it. A great analogy in the language, identity of religion, and a conformity of manners, though less civilized in Britain than in Gaul; are an unequivocal testimony of affinity between the people. But the reddish hair and stature of the *Caledonians* persuaded Tacitus that these were originally from Germany; while the swarthy tint and curled locks of the *Silures*, caused them to be deemed of *Iberian* origin.—We have already been somewhat minute upon the ancient inhabitants of Britain in the preceding pages.

SECTION THIRD.

ORCADES VEL EBUDES INSULÆ,
THE ORKNEYS OR WESTERN ISLES.

At the extremity of *Caledonia* are the **ORCADES**. As there is mention of these islands before a Roman fleet circumnavigated Britain, when *Agricola* commanded there, what Tacitus reports, of their being then discovered and conquered, must only be understood with respect to the last of these terms. The ancients were not entirely ignorant of the islands of the western shores of Scotland, which they called **EBUDES**, and which are now named, by reason of their situation, the **Western Isles**. But they are mentioned in a manner too desultory and indistinct to authorise a particular detail of them here.

SECTION FOURTH.

SCANDINAVIA, SCANZA, VEL BALTIA,
PARTS OF, NORWAY, SWEDEN, DENMARK, &c.

SCANDINAVIA is also named by abbreviation SCANDIA, and in the writers of a succeeding age we read SCANZIA. Antiquity had yet another name for it, which is BALTIA, remarkable for its affinity with the Baltic Sea, which borders SCANDINAVIA.

The ancients had a very imperfect knowledge of SCANDINAVIA; believing it to be totally encompassed by the sea, and even composed of many islands. The manner in which these islands of the name of *Scandy* are represented in the chart prepared by Ptolemy has no relation to any real state of the country. The southern extremity however, and of which the Danish isles of Zealand, Funen, &c. make the appendages, recall in the name of *Skany*, or *Scane*, the memory of its ancient denomination. Tacitus, without naming SCANDINAVIA, speaking of this country as being environed by the ocean, which forms spacious gulfs, embracing islands of great extent, ascribes it to *Suevia*, and places two nations therein. What he reports of the *Suiones*, in having a marine, appears remarkable, when we recollect that the ancient laws concerning navigation had their origin in Wisby in the isle of Gothland. The country to which Tacitus conducts us retains the name of *Sueonia*, in the writers of the middle age, speaking precisely of Sweden. The other nation, the *Sitones*, whose sovereignty was in the hands of a woman, may have been Norway.

SCANDINAVIA.

SECT. IV.

According to Pliny, the only part of SCANDINAVIA which was known, was occupied by the *Hilleviones*, a numerous nation. Among the divers names of countries and people reported by Jornandes we find *Hallin*; and that which is contiguous to the particular province of Skane is still called Halland. Although the proper name of a principal country of ancient SCANDINAVIA be Gothland, and, according to the historians of the Goths, *Scanzia insula* was the cradle of that illustrious nation, we must say that the account is not justified by the authority of any of the Roman writers. But we may conjecture that a people named *Gutæ* by Ptolemy, have some relation to them; remarking withal in Jornandes, that a nation distinguished as very brave and addicted to war were called *Gauti-Goth*.

According to the ancient error which divided the continent of SCANDINAVIA into many islands, there are found in Pliny the names of *Bergos* and *Nerigos*, as proper to two of these islands; the former being the place of embarkation for *Thule*, the present Shetland Isles. It is evident, that the first under consideration is Bergen, one of the principal towns in Norway, having a port much frequented, and the name which succeeded being attributed to the largest island, is applicable to the country itself, of which the proper and local denomination is Norge instead of Norway.

But there is recognised, in this country, another *Thule* described by Procopius, the name of which is preserved in the canton Telemark; for it is certain that this author leads us to SCANDINAVIA when he comprises the people called *Scrito-Finni* in *Thule*. These Fins were so called according to Paulus Diaconus, from the lightness and

vivacity of their course over the snows and ice, which they pursued on wooden skates. The promontory between the gulfs of Bothnia and Finland, offering the appearance of a great island, was called FINNINGIA. Tacitus describes the *Finni* or *Fenni*, as very miserable; and that of the *Finns* of *Thule* is little better in Procopius.—We have already enlarged upon many errors respecting the knowledge the ancients possessed of these northern regions, in the introduction, which need not be repeated here.

SECTION FIFTH.

SARMATIA EUROPÆA ET ASIATICA,*

EUROPEAN AND ASIATIC RUSSIA, &c.

THE *Vistula* is regarded as the separation between SARMATIA and ancient Germany; and the *Tanais* makes the division between the *European* and *Asiatic Sarmatia*, towards the lower part of its course, tending to the *Palus Mæotis*. Thence, and from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, the *Asiatic part*, bounded on the south by the *Euxine* and mount *Caucasus*, extends as far as the *Caspian sea*, the northern shores of which it covers; to say nothing of the unknown extent of it, to the north-east.

At an earlier period, than that of the above division, when this track was first settled by the SCYTHIANS and SARMATIANS, that part of it here called *Asiatic Sarmatia* would

* To preserve SARMATIA entire we have trespassed upon the boundaries of Asia.

attach itself to *Eastern Scythia*, according to Mr. Pinkerton; as was that part of *European Sarmatia* now called Little Tartary, the true *Parential* or *Ancient Scythia*. About the same time also, that part here distinguished as *Germano-Sarmatia* would fall in the limits of *Germania*; circumscribing the real SARMATIA within a much smaller north-eastern limit, till her numerous tribes penetrated farther into Europe, and, intermixing with the *Scythians* who had preceded them, with what degree of justice we say not, changed the name of the country.

To give a general idea of this great nation, and to distinguish what is *Germanic* on one side, from what is *Sarmatic* on the other, it must be observed, that wherever a Slavonian dialect is spoken, the natives are *Sarmatians*. And if we find a language fundamentally the same established in countries distant from ancient SARMATIA, the reason is, that swarms from the same hive settled in divers parts of Germany, as far as the Elbe; and south of the Danube, as far as the Adriatic sea.

We now proceed to an indication of some of the principal among the numerous nations which were found scattered over the immense expanse of SARMATIA. The *Venedi* extended along the shores of the Baltic, to a considerable distance in the interior country; and if their name be remarked as subsisting in that of *Wenden*, in a district of Livonia, it is only in a partial manner, and holding out but a small proportion to the extent which the *Venedi* occupied. Passing the Vistula, the *Venedi* took possession of the lands between that river and the Elbe, that had been evacuated about the close of the fourth century by the *Vandali*, whose name

is seen sometimes erroneously confounded with that of the *Venedi*. The country that the *Venedi* occupied in the tenth century was that of the *Pruzzi*, whose name present use has changed into *Borussi*.—It is on this shore that the sea casts up amber, called by the natives of the country *Glass* or *Gles*, by the Romans *Succinum*, by the Greeks *Électron*: and the islands called *Electrides* can only be the long and narrow sands that separate the sea from the gulfs named *Frisch-haf* and *Curisch-haf*. According to Tacitus, amber was gathered by the *Æstiai*; and notwithstanding that Ptolemy takes no notice of them, the name is preserved beyond the limits of Prussia, in Estonia, which makes a part of Livonia; and there is no doubt that the name of *East-land*, in the writers of the middle ages, comes from its position respecting the Baltic sea.—According to Ptolemy, the great nations of SARMATIA besides the *Venedi*, with whom he begins his description, are the *Peucini* and *Bastarnæ*, who inhabited above Dacia, and the *Iazyges* and *Roxolani*, established on the *Palus Mæotis*. He adds, in the interior country, the *Hamaxo-bii*, or dwellers in wagons; and Tacitus distinguishes the *Venedi*, *Peucini*, and *Bastarnæ*, from those, as having fixed abodes. He also speaks of the *Peucini* and *Bastarnæ* as the same nation; so that the name of *Peucini* could only distinguish the part of this nation which was settled in the vicinity of the isle of *Peuce*, between the arms which form the mouths of the Danube, and whose modern name *Piczina* preserves an evident analogy to that of the *Peucini*.—The *Iazyges* appear to have been a nation widely extended; a part of them being named with the *Tyri-getæ*,

established on the *Tyras* or Dniester. Their position on the *Palus* is given to the Scythians by Herodotus; and the *Roxolani* are thought to have existed a little beyond these, as we see their name associated with those of the *Bastarnæ* and *Daci* in the treaty which the emperor Hadrian made with the king of the latter. There is moreover reason to believe that the name *Roxolani* is that of the Russians; who having occupied, in the middle of Poland, the lands which appear to have been the residence of the *Bastarnæ*, have left their name to one of the principal provinces of this kingdom.—There must be added to these people the *Budini* and *Geloni*, whom Herodotus mentions in reciting the expedition of Darius son of Hystaspes against the Scythians. These two nations appear to have maintained a firm alliance, though of different races: the former being purely Sarmatic, and addicted to a pastoral life; while the latter were sprung from establishments which the Greeks had formed on the Euxine, and who had communicated to their neighbours the theology, and part of the language, of Greece. A city of the *Budini*, built of wood, and named *Geloñus*, which Darius destroyed by fire, must have been a work of the *Geloni*. By a detail which Herodotus furnishes of the canton of the *Budini*, but which the nature of our plan does not permit us to enter upon, we think we distinguish this canton on the right of the Borysthenes, below Kiow. But it appears, by other districts of this country, that this people had ascended higher; and that the *Geloni*, having been scattered from their primitive dwellings, had become more *Sarmatic* than they were in the time that Herodotus speaks of: for they are represented as having colours stained upon



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SECTION SIXTH.

GERMANIA,

PARTS OF—DENMARK, UNITED PROVINCES, POLAND,
PRUSSIA, AND GERMANY.

WE shall merely mention here FOUR of the FIVE grand divisions of GERMANIA, according to Pliny, such as *Ingævones*, *Vindili*, *Hermiones*, and *Istævones*; the *fifth*, which he terms *Peukini-Bastarnæ*, forming the *Germano-Sarmatia* of later geographers, has been seen in the last section to which it properly belongs.

Separated from Gaul by the *Rhine*, GERMANIA extended eastward to the *Vistula*, which may serve it for a limit on the side of Sarmatia; while the shore of the *sea* towards the north, and the course of the *Danube*, on the south, are elsewhere its boundaries. That which we now see comprised in Germany between the Danube and the Alps, did not belong to it.—The name of *Germani* did not belong to this nation from immemorial antiquity. There was a time when the *Celts* prevailed beyond the Rhine, as establishments formed in Germany by *Celtic* nations sufficiently evince. But when detachments of *Germanic* people invaded this country, Tacitus informs us that these strangers, superior in arms, were called *Germani*; and we find that, in the *Tuetonic*, or *Germanic* language, *Ger-man* signifies a warrior. The name of *Alemagne*, which the French extended to Germany, comes from a particular people, of whom the first mention is made at the beginning of the third century, under the reign of Caracalla.—This name of *Ale-man*, or *All-man*, signifies properly a multitude of

men; and the *Alemanni* appear to have been established in the country now called Swabia, in descending the Rhine to the confluence of the Maine. This nation, having detached itself from the *Francic league*, formed in the same age by the nations of the Lower Rhine, had arrived to the highest degree of power.

Roman ships had navigated the Baltic sea, and her arms had penetrated to the nearest circuit of the Elbe, near Magdeburg, in which quarter the trophies of Drusus were erected; all of which served to restrain the savage inhabitants, but she never conquered them. The interior of this country remained unexplored till the age of Charlemagne; and the northern parts, for some centuries after that period.

In describing the different people, it will be found, agreeably to geographic order, to begin in the vicinity of the Rhine, and, ascending that river to the Danube, to penetrate thence through the bosom of the continent to the shores of the Baltic sea. Hence the *Frisii*, or Frisians, separated from Gaul and the territory of the Batavi by that arm of the Rhine which preserves its name, appear the first.—The next were the *Chauci*, divided, as we may say of the Frisians, into *Majores* and *Minores*; these inhabiting the hither side of the Weser, those occupying the country between that river and the Elbe. This was one of the most illustrious nations of Germany, according to Tacitus, and distinguished by the love of justice. But Pliny represents as very miserable the life of those who inhabited a shore exposed to inundations of the sea.—Between the Rhine and the Ems, above the Frisians, were the *Bructeri*; and although Tacitus speaks of them as a nation destroyed by the ha-

GERMANIA.

SECT. VI.

tred of their neighbours, we find them distinguishing themselves among the first of the *Francic league*. We read that a part of the country of the *Bructeri* was occupied by the *Chamavi* and the *Angrivarii*. The first, having previously inhabited the banks of the Rhine, had been successively replaced by the *Tubantes* and the *Usipii*; and it is believed that the second, established on the Weser in the vicinity of the *Cherusci*, have given the name to *Angaria* or *Angria*, to the dominion of the famous Saxon Witikind, who cost Charlemagne so much trouble to reduce to obedience. And by the mention made of the *Marsi*, it is known that they also belonged to this canton.—The *Cherusci* were extended on both sides of the Weser above the *Cauci*; where, under the conduct of Arminius, they acquired an immortal name by the utter annihilation of three Roman legions, commanded by Varus. The *Cherusci* are afterwards described as a degenerate people, appearing subjected to a neighbouring power, who it is thought were the *Cauci*, as the dependencies of these, in the time of Tacitus, extended to the territory of the *Catti*. The victories of Germanicus had caused the ruin of the *Cherusci*, and involved a contiguous nation, named the *Fosi*, in their calamity.—The *Chasuarii* merit notice, if they be the same people with the *Attuarii*, in the league of the Franks.—We must again approach the Rhine, and remark the *Sicambri*; who inhabit the south side of the course of the Lippe. Pressed by the *Catti*, powerful neighbours, whom Cæsar calls *Suevi*, they were, together with the *Ubi*, received into Gaul, on the left bank of the Rhine, under Augustus; and there is reason to believe that the people who occupied this position under the name of *Gugerni*,

were part of the *Sicambri*. It was in favour of the *Ubi* that Cæsar crossed the Rhine, at the extremity of the territory of Treves, ravaged that of the *Sicambri*, and caused the *Catti* to decamp.—The *Tencteri* inhabited the country contiguous to that which the *Sicambri* had possessed, and also above it.—A nation superior in power to any of these were the *Catti*, whom Cæsar, as just observed, calls *Suevi*. They occupied Hesse to the Sala in Thuringia, and Weteravia to the Maine. Among other circumstances which enhanced the merit of this people, was that of their skill in the military-art; which, according to Tacitus, the *Catti* superadded to the quality of bravery common to the Germanic nations. The *Mattiaci* made part of the great CATTIAN nation, from whom were detached the *Batavi*, established in the extremity of Gaul. A firm alliance united the *Mattiaci* to the Roman empire. It is remarked even, that a part of their territory contiguous to the Rhine and the Maine, was covered and separated from the exterior country by a *vallum*, or retrenchment, whereof evident vestiges are still subsisting: and the mount named *Taunus*, whose ridge prevails from the bank of the Rhine to above Frankfort, had a post fortified by Drusus.—Many have thought that the *Alemanni* issued from the Decumatic people. But if we admit that the *Alemanni* were composed of divers people, as may be fairly inferred from the name that distinguishes them, yet it is extremely probable that they were more Germans and Suevians than Gauls. For whence should come the present name of Suabia peculiar to this circle of Germany, although far distant from the ancient and primitive *Suevi*; whose name, in its severer and more appropriate sense, was

applicable to the Cattian nations beyond the Maine? However this be, we must remark, that the Roman dominion extended over the country which has taken the name of Suabia; which extent was even defined in its limits, and defended by a retrenchment, under the reign of Probus, embracing about sixty leagues of the course of the Danube from its sources. And this line is thought to have been garrisoned till about the reigns of Dioclesian and Maximian.—The *Hermunduri*, a potent nation, and attached to the Roman name, stretched from the shore of the same river far into the interior country, disputing with the *Catti* the possession of the Sala, and the salt which the waters of this river furnish to the town of Halle. They were only separated by the Elbe from another great nation, of whom we shall speak hereafter.—Lower down on the same bank of the Danube the *Narisci* succeed to the *Hermunduri*, and seem to have been covered by *Boiohemum* or Bohemia.—In the name of this country, that of the more ancient people who occupied it is followed by a term in the German language, which signifies habitation or dwelling; and this name has continued to the same country in that of Bohemia, although the *Boii* had given place to the *Marcmani*, and these to a *Sclavonic* or *Sarmatian* people, who have long possessed it. It appears by Cæsar, that the *Boii* were associated with the *Helvetic* nation; and the *Helvetians*, according to Tacitus, had advanced as far as the Maine. The *Marcmani*, or *Marcmanni*, and their king Maroboduus, desirous of escaping from the Roman yoke, withdrew from the Rhine and Maine under Augustus, and wrested from the *Boii* the country which had borne their name; which name the same people,

abandoning these their native seats, have carried with them into that now called Boiaria, Bayaria, or Bavaria.

—The *Quadi*, the most remote of the Germanic nations on the Danube, between the *Marcomani* and the Sarmatian people called *Jazyges*, and who make a figure in many passages of history, but particularly under the reign of Marcus Aurelius, occupied what is now called Moravia. Under Tiberius, bands of Germans, who had followed princes driven from their states, were settled on the Danube, between the rivers *Marus* and *Causus*, or the Morava and the Vag; of which the former is the boundary between the modern kingdom of Hungary and the marquisate of Moravia. The establishment then made by a king of the *Quadi*, named Vannius, extended the limits of this nation to the river *Granua*, or Gran.

The internal part of this continent may be considered under the general name of *Suevia*; whence many Germanic nations have borrowed the denomination under which they appear. *Suevia* was divided among a number of distinct people. The *Semnones*, who were reputed the noblest and most ancient of the Suevian nations, extended from the Elbe beyond the Oder.—Behind the *Marcomani* and *Quadi*, as Tacitus expresses himself, were the *Marsigni*, *Gothoni*, *Osi*, and *Burii*; an arrangement which places these people towards the Oder, above the *Semnones*.—The *Lygii* are mentioned as a powerful nation, uniting under this name several people, whose dwellings, bordering on the Sarmatians, appear to have been on the *Warta* and the *Vistula*.—Tacitus, naming the *Langobardi* after the *Semnones*, authorizes the opinion that they were established on the

Sprhé, which communicates with the Elbe. It is glorious to this people, says that historian, to maintain their independence amidst more powerful and hostile neighbours. Seeing the *Langobardi* or Lombards comprised in Suevia, can it be supposed that they who entered Italy under that name before the end of the sixth century were originally from a country separated from Germany by the Baltic Sea, according to the report of Paulus Diaconus, who nevertheless was a Lombard by nation? Their name (which, according to this historian, signifies *longbeard*) might have been employed in different regions.—Beyond the *Lygii* were the *Gothones*, whose residence is thought to have been near the sea.—The name of the *Rugii* subsists in that of Rugenwald, which belongs to a maritime city of the farther Pomerania, as an island adjacent to the hither part of the same country is called Rugen.—The *Varini* are supposed to have been in Mecklenburg; and all those approaching that shore appear to be comprised under the name of *Vindili*, the same that the Vandals have made famous.—To these may be added the *Burgundiones*, whose name is retained in that of Bourgogne, a province of France which fell to their share.—The entrance of the Cimbric Chersonese, or that which corresponds with modern Holstein; contained two nations highly illustrious in their progress; on one side the *Angli*, on the other the *Saxones*. These last were bounded in their primitive state by the issue of the Elbe; although now the name of Saxony, under which Westphalia is comprised, extends from the Rhine to the Oder. The great emigration of the *Cimbri* had reduced the remains of this nation, who continued in their ancient seats many ages



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

to GAUL in general, being that given by the natives to themselves. It is from the Romans that we learn to call them *Galli*, and their country *Gallia*.

The Roman policy of having allies beyond the limits of their provinces, and the pretext of succouring the city of Marseilles, and the *Æduan* people, caused the Roman armies to enter GAUL an hundred and twenty years before the Christian æra. This first attempt put Rome in possession of a province, which bordering the left bank of the *Rhone* to the sea, extended itself on the other side of the mountain of *Cevennes*, and thence along the sea to the *Pyrenees*. It was at first distinguished by the generic name of *Provincia*, being only surnamed *Braccata*, from a garment worn by the natives, which covered their thighs: at the same time the name of *Comata* was given to *Celtic Gaul*, because the people inhabiting it wore long hair. What remained of GAUL, and which was by much the greatest part, was a conquest reserved for Cæsar, more than sixty years after the precedent. The limits of the THREE NATIONS were then such as we have reported.—It would be as useless as tiresome to the reader to recount all the tribes and clans, into which these semi-barbarous nations distributed themselves. Many of them were the same that we have mentioned in the last SECTION.

Augustus holding GAUL in the 27th year before the Christian æra, made a new division of it, in which he showed more attention to equality in the extent of provinces, than to any distinction of the several people that inhabited them. Thus the nation of *Aquitani*, who were before limited to the *Garonne*, were made to communicate their name to a province which encroached upon the *Celta*, as far as the mouth of the *Loire*; and

that which the *Celtæ* had, contiguous to the *Rhine*, was taken into the limits of a province called *Belgica*. *Lugdunum*, a colony founded after the death of Julius, and before the Triumvirate, gave the name of *Lugdunensis*, or the *Lionois*, to what remained of *Celtic Gaul*; whilst the *Roman province* took that of *Narbonensis*, or *Narbo-nois*. But each of these provinces in the succession of time formed many others, insomuch that in about 400 years their number augmented to SEVENTEEN.

The government of the church in Gaul having conformed itself to that of the state, the *ecclesiastical* provinces, if we except those formed by the elevation of a few cities to the dignity of metropolitan sees, correspond with this division of *civil* provinces under the Lower Empire. This conformity extends even to the particular cantons of which each province was composed, the ancient *civitates*, or communities, corresponding for the most part with the present dioceses. Places which are given under the name of *Fines*, terminations, contribute to show a correspondence of limits.—The reader must moreover be apprised, that the term communities, *civitates*, as used here, does not include the idea originally signified by that of *civitas*; but is specially employed to denote the districts or territories of the several distinct people, who were very numerous in the extent of Gaul.—From this connexion between its ancient and modern state, we may infer that this great province has suffered less alteration in its constitution by the revolutions which have followed the fall of the Roman empire, than other parts of the same.

NARBONENSIS GALLIA—NARBONNOIS,

Rousillon, Languedoc, Dauphiné; part of Burgundy;
Provence, and Savoy.

It seems reasonable to begin with that province which was first formed in Gaul, and which being fashioned more particularly to the manners of the reigning people, still preserves, in the vulgar dialect, a greater resemblance to the Roman language than the provinces detached towards the north, where this language might have been less familiar, or less pure in its use. In the multiplication of the number of provinces, we distinguish five under this article, entitled *Narbonensis*.—We see, at the commencement of the fourth century, the province, under the name of *Viennensis*, separated from the *Narbonnois*, and this again divided into two provinces, distinguished into *first* and *second*, by the name of the primitive.—The people cantoned in the Alps, the greatest part of whom were not subjected to the yoke till after the first establishment of the Roman dominion in Gaul, composed two provinces; one under the name of *Alpes Maritimæ*; because they touched the sea; the other more remote upon the declivity of the Greek and Penine Alps, and hence it was called *Alpes Graiæ et Peninæ*.—The province distinguished by the name of *Narbonensis Prima*, and of which the extent accords, generally speaking, with that now named Languedoc, was for the most part occupied by two considerable people; the *Volcæ Arecomaci*, towards the Rhone; and the *Volcæ Tectosages*, towards the Garonne. Northward of the *Arecomaci* were the *Helvii*, covered by the mountainous bank of the Rhone, in the territory which now composes the diocese of Viviers.—There is no mention of the

Narbonensis before the fourth century was considerably advanced. *Aqua Sextia* or Aix, its metropolis, owed its foundation to Sextius Calvinus; who, in the first expeditions of the Romans in Gaul, reduced the *Salyes*, or *Saluvii*, a powerful nation, who extended from the Rhone along the southern bank of the Durance, almost to the Alps; and with whom the Massilians had long to contend.—The province of *Alpes Maritimæ*, inclosed between the precedent and a chain of the Alps, reached to the sea, at the entrance of the Var, and at the foot of the Alps called *Maritima*; which beyond this river bore a trophy erected to Augustus, for having subjected the people of the Alps between the two seas which embrace Italy: for, although the Var may be cited as separating Gaul from Italy, the summit of the mountains whence the waters flow on each side properly constitutes their natural limits.

LUGDUNENSIS GALLIA—LEONOIS,

Normandy, Part of the Isle of France, with Orleannois, Lyonnois, part of Burgundy, Nivernois, part of Champagne, Bretagne, Touraine, Anjou, and Maine.

The name of *Lugdunensis*, was applied to a long band of country making the middle of Gaul, from *Lugdunum*, or Lions, upon the Rhône, to the Western Ocean, and limited on one side by Aquitaine, and on the other by *Belgica*. In the division which the four primitive provinces experienced, the Lionois was at first parted into two, first and second, or *Lugdunensis Prima* and *Lugdunensis Secunda*; and this division did not suffer another until the fourth century had elapsed; when, in place of two Lionoisés, we find four, by a subsequent dismemberment of each of the former two.—

GALLIA.

SECT. VII.

It must be observed, that a people called *Lingones*, now Langres, occupied *Belgica* before it made a part of the first Lionois, or *Lugdunensis Prima*; which without this accession would have been too much diminished by the dismemberment of a new province, which the name, of fourth Lionois, or *Lugdunensis Quarta*, indicates to have been last formed. And because it was immediately contiguous to that from which it had been detached, to separate entirely the *first* Lionois from the *second* and *third*, we have mentioned it in connexion with the *first*.—The second Lionois, or *Lugdunensis Secunda*, after the third had been detached from it, was nearly comprised in the present limits of Normandy.—The third Lionois, or *Lugdunensis Tertia*, corresponded with Bretagne, Touraine, Anjou, and Maine.

AQUITANIA GALLIA—AQUITAINE,

Berry, Auvergne, Limousin, Poitou, Saintonge, Guienne, Gasconé, Navarre, and Bearn.

AQUITANIA, which in the division of Gaul by Augustus was but one region, afterwards formed THREE provinces; the two Aquitaines, and Novempopulane.—The capital of the *Bituriges*, which, after having borne the name *Avaricum*, took that of the people, from which the present name of Bourges is derived, was the metropolis of the first Aquitaine, or *Aquitania Prima*. This nation was the most considerable of Gaul, and appears to have been governed by a king when the multitude of Gauls passed the Rhine and the Alps, to establish themselves in Germany and Italy, about six hundred years before the Christian æra. We have two *Biturigian* people; the principal, which was that of Berry, distinguished by the surname of *Cubi*; the other surnamed *Vibisci*, in the

second Aquitaine.—*Aquitania Secunda* had for its metropolis *Burdigala* or Bordeaux, among the *Biturgies Vibisci*, who were not of Aquitanian origin.—What remains to us of Aquitaine between the Garonne and the Pyrenees, corresponds in a general manner to the country occupied by the *Aquitani*, in the first national division of Gaul, called *Aquitaine Proper*. The name of *Novempopulana*, which this province of Aquitaine assumed, when it was elevated to the rank of a distinct province, seems to indicate that it was composed of nine people. It was this Aquitaine Proper, in the national division, that the Vascons from beyond the mountains over-ran, communicating to it the name of Gasconne; while that of Aquitaine is perpetuated, with some alteration, in Guienne.

BELGICA GALLIA—BÉLGÏUM.

Limburg, Liege, Brabant, Utrecht, Holland, Zealand, Alsace, and part of Upper Rhine, Franche-Compté, Switzerland, Lorraine, Luxemburg, Namur, part of Champagné, part of the Isle of France, Picardy, Artois, Hainault, and Flanders.

From the southern extremity of Aquitaine, we must return northward to terminate our account of Gaul in the most distant part of it. In the multiplication of provinces we distinguish two Belgic provinces, two Germanic provinces, and a fifth province called the Great Sequanois.—The capital of the *Trevēri*, after having borne the name of *Augusta*, took that of the people, and became the metropolis of *Belgica Prima*. It also became a Roman colony, and served as the residence of several emperors, whom the care of superintending the defence of this frontier retained in Gaul. It was an object of

GALLIA.

SECT. VII.

vanity with this people to be esteemed of Germanic origin. The second province under this name, that is, *Belgica Secunda*, furnishes a great number of communities. Among others, the *Remi* were distinguished by their inclination to the Romans, under the government of Cæsar; and *Durocortorum*, their capital; which taking the name of the people, subsisting in that of Rheims, was elevated to the rank of métropolis in *Belgica Secunda*.—The two Germanic provinces, in the distribution of Belgic Gaul, are of more ancient date than any subdivision that Gaul experienced after the capital division of it into FOUR provinces under Augustus. We may even, without hesitation, refer them to the reign of Tiberius. This frontier, exposed to the enterprises of warlike nations beyond the Rhine, demanded for its protection particular precautions on the part of the Roman government; and under the command of Drusus, more than fifty fortresses were constructed along the river. For the reason of relative situation, the Germanic provinces were distinguished into higher and lower, and also into first and second, that is, *Germania Superior*, and *Germania Inferior*, of which the latter was also *Germania Prima* and the former *Germania Secunda*. In Lower Germany, the bank of the Rhine was occupied by the *Ubi* and the *Gugerni*, two Germanic people, who had transported themselves, under the reign of Augustus, to the hither, or Belgic side of the river. *Colonia Agrippina*, Cologne, founded among the *Ubi* in the reign of Claudius, was the métropolis of this province. The second Germany did not confine itself to the country between the rivers. The community of the *Tungri* gave it a considerable extension on this side of the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Carthaginians the dominion of SPAIN, and reduced by long wars the Spanish nations who refused obedience, divided the whole country into two provinces, distinguished by the appellations of CITERIOR and ULTERIOR. Under Augustus, the ULTERIOR province was again parted into two, *Bætica* and *Lusitania*; at the same time that the CITERIOR assumed the name of *Tarraconensis*, from *Tarraco*, its metropolis. This division of Spain must be regarded as properly belonging to the principal and dominant state of ancient geography.

Independently of these distinctions of provinces, Spain under the Roman government was divided into jurisdictions, called *Conventus*, of which there are counted, FOURTEEN; each one formed of the union of several cities, and held their assizes in the principal city of the district.

TARRACONENSIS,

Catalonia, Arraçon, Navarre, New Castile, Valentia, Mercia, Biscay, Old Castile, Asturia, part of Leon, Gallacia; Eminho-Duro and Tralos-montes in Portugal.

The TARRACONENSIS occupied all the northern part of Spain, from the foot of the *Pyrenees* to the mouth of the *Durius* where it confined on *Lusitania*, and the eastern, almost entire to the confines of *Bætica*, (which derived this name from the river *Bætis* that traversed it during its whole course,) extending from the north to the west along the bank of the river *Anas*, by which it was separated from *Lusitania*; whilst this last-mentioned province was continued to the ocean, between the mouths of the *Anas* and *Durius*.

It was not till about the age of Dioclesian and Con-

stantine when the number of provinces was multiplied by subdivision, that the TARRACONNOIS was dismembered into two new provinces; one towards the limits of Bætica, and adjacent to the Mediterranean, to which the city of *Carthago Nova*, communicated the name of *Carthaginensis*; the other on the ocean to the north of Lusitania, and to which the nation of *Callaici* or *Callæci*, in the angle of Spain, which advances towards the north-east, has given the name of *Callæcia*, still subsisting in that of Galicia, whilst the tract towards the Pyrenees retained that of *Tarraconensis Proper*.

Towards the sources of the Ebro, and reaching to the ocean, dwelt the *Cantabri*, a warlike people; who long defended their liberties. Divided into many cantons, they extended over Biscay and part of Asturias. We may judge of their ancient ferocity, by what is reported of a people who made part of this nation under the name of *Concani*, that they esteemed the blood of horses a most delicious beverage.—To the *Cantabri*, towards the west, were contiguous the *Astures*, who had also signalized themselves by a glorious resistance to the Roman yoke. Descending from the mountains to the plain country, we find their city under the name of *Asturica Augusta*, which is still preserved in that of Astorga.—One of the most powerful nations of Spain, and who sustained long wars against the Romans, were the *Celtiberi*; who joining the generic name of their race to the specific one of the nation where they settled, extended themselves from the right or southern shore of the *Ebro*, far into the Tarraconois. We may here speak of *Numantia* which distinguished itself in renown above

HISPANIA.

SECT. VIII.

all other cities, for a resistance for fourteen years to the numerous armies of Rome, as a historian, a Spaniard by nation, and who is called *Hispaniæ decus*, the ornament of Spain, attributes the defence of it to the *Celtiberi*. It is upon the river *Darius*, not far from its origin, and above the city of Soria, that we find the site that *Numantia* occupied. We must believe that it was replaced by another city of the same name; since there is mention made of its existence many ages after it was destroyed to its foundations by Scipio *Æmilianus*.—The *Contestani* occupied the country which now forms the kingdom of Mercia and the southern part of Valencia. By far the most considerable city in this canton was *Carthago Nova*, or Carthagenæ, which for the advantage of having always an open entrance into Spain, was constructed by the Carthaginians, and from them taken by the most illustrious of the Scipios.

BAETICA,

Andalusia and Granada.

This province, which, as we have already said, was traversed by the river *Bætis*, to which it owed its name, was distinguished from the other provinces of Spain by its richness and fertility. The number of cities which it contained in limits comparatively contracted, and four districts of jurisdictions or conventus, are sufficient testimonies of its abundance and population. It was also the first known by the advantages that the Phœnicians there found for their commerce. Its extent corresponds precisely with that part of Spain which, advanced towards the south, has taken the name of Andalusia, derived from *Vandalitia*, which the *Vandals*, before they were constrained by the *Goths* to pass into Africa, left

SECT. VIII.

HISPANIA.

to this country. Among the people which it comprehended, the *Turdetani* occupied the greatest space in ascending the banks of the Bætis from the sea.—On the right bank of the Bætis, *Corduba*, the head of *Conventus*, owed its foundation to the Romans, and did not yield in grandeur to any other in *Bætica*. We know that Cordova since served as a residence for the great Emirs of the Maures, who conquered Spain from the Goths: and this city was otherwise famous for producing the two Senecas and Lucian.—We must not omit to mention, however, *Sisapo*, noted for its mines of *minium*, or vermilion. The position of this place is sufficiently obvious in the modern name of Almaden, which it received from the Maures; *Maaden* in the Arabic language being the appellative term for mines.—*Cadir*, or Gades, owed its foundation to the Tyrians, on an island of small extent, but attached to another of greater size by a causey; while this is separated from the continent by a channel like that of a river, at the opening of which towards the sea, a holme or insulated hill, bore a temple dedicated to Hercules, the tutelary divinity of the founders of Cadiz. Its position, beyond the strait, and the circumstance of its having one of the finest ports in the known world, were advantages which rendered it a city of high estimation. Receiving new augmentation under the Roman power, it became the capital of a *Conventus*.

LUSITANIA,

Beira, part of Leon, the Estremaduras, Alentajo, Entre-tajo, and Algava.

We have seen that this province which remains to be spoken of, extended itself from the river *Anas* to the

Durius, in passing along the shores of the Ocean. We know that it is a common practice to confound the limits of LUSITANIA with those of modern Portugal; and, in truth, the greatest part of this kingdom coincides with them. But it may be remarked, that Portugal, passing on one side beyond the confines of LUSITANIA, by the two provinces which are north of the Douro, does not comprehend on the other, the extension of LUSITANIA among the *Vettones*; inasmuch as *Merida*, which was heretofore the capital of the Roman province, is not now a Portuguese city. The *Tagus* or Tajo, bisecting this extent of country in its course, separated two great nations, the *Lusitani* and *Callaici*. The *Lusitani* whose name makes that of the entire province, occupied the division north of the river; but in their primitive state being only bounded by the *Durius*, they encroached on the territory which, in the extent given to the *Tarraconois*, had belonged to the *Callaici*. The Roman yoke was an advantage to this Lusitanian nation, who are reported to have lived by depredation on their neighbours before they were obliged to apply themselves to the culture of their lands. *Olisipo* is well known to have been the position of Lisbon; but we may banish to regions of fable the application of this name to that of Ulysses.—The southern part of Lusitania, bordering on the Ocean between the *Tagus* and the *Anas*, was occupied by the *Celtici*, who appear to have had some possessions even beyond the *Anas*. We may add, that a detached part of this nation was cantoned far distant in the neighbourhood of Finisterre, which, besides the name of *Artabrum*, was also called *Celticum*. The principal city in this region of Lusitania, to judge by the

dignity or head of a *Conventus*, was *Pax Julia*; the name of which having been altered in the time of the Maures into that of *Bakilia*, is now hardly to be recognized in Beja.

BALEARES INSULAE,

Majorca, and Minorca, &c.

The isles adjacent to the *Tarraconois* called *Baleares*, &c, now *Majorca* and *Minorca*, &c, in the augmentation of the number of provinces, assumed the rank of a particular one.—The principal city in the first, preserves its ancient name of *Palma*; the name of *Portus Magonis* given to that of *Minorca* by a Carthaginian commander, is *Port Mahone*.—These islands were occupied by the Phœnicians before the Romans seized them; and their inhabitants, it is well known, were eminently distinguished for their dexterity at the sling.

SECTION NINTH.

ITALIA, VEL HESPERIA,

ITALY.

THERE is no idea of Italy more familiar than that of the renown which it acquired from having ruled over a great part of the ancient world, after the very inconsiderable beginning of her imperial city by Romulus, its founder on the Palatine Mount; whose policy was to increase its inhabitants,—as well by affording an asylum, in the construction of a sacred Grove, for the outcasts and male-

ITALIA.

SECT. IX.

factors of other communities, who fled thither to avoid punishment and shame,—as by a fraudulent seduction of the neighbouring women: We find it called HESPERIA by the Greeks, as being westward in regard to them. The other names of *Ænòtria*, and *Ausònia*, are borrowed from nations whose remote antiquity deprives us of all particular knowledge of them; and the name of ITALIA comes according to some authors, from a chief named *Italus*, of whom we have no other account. This name appertained properly to the part the most contracted between the two seas, and is known by *Italia Propria*, in distinction from the country under the Alps which is comprised in a more general manner in the name of ITALIA.

GALLIA CISALPINA, VEL TOGATA—CISPADANE AND
TRANSPADANE.

Part of Savoy; Piedmont, Montserat, Alessandrine, Milan, Venice, part of Mantua; Ferrarese, Bolognese, Parma, and Genoa.

GALLIA CISALPINA extends from the declivity of the Alps, which looks towards the east, to the strand of the Adriatic, or *Superior* sea. The *Rhætian* nations, established in the Alps, confined the *Cisalpine* nations on the north, and the *Sinus Ligusticus*, called the gulf of Genoa, bounded them on the south. A current celebrated under the name of *Rubico*, which formed of three brooks, is called at its mouth *Fieumesino*, separated this country from *Italia Propria*, on the side of the *Superior* sea; and a little river named *Macra*, on the *Inferior* sea. *Cisalpine Gaul* was also called *Gallia Togata*, because the people inhabiting it were gratified with the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

ITALIA.

SECT. IX.

no, beneath the Apennine.—What remains of the Cisalpine was Gallic, and not Ligurian. The *Boii* and *Lingones*, on their arrival in this country, finding other Gauls already established in the region called *Transpadane*, passed the river, and conquered from the *Tuscans* the lands situated between that and the *Apennine*. These nations were both Celtic: the latter coming directly from the territory of Langres; while we find the former diffusing their name in Germany, Noricum, Pannonia, and Illyricum. The *Boii* settled themselves in the mountains; and the *Lingones* down the river, in the vicinity of the sea.—We also find mention of another people under the name of *Ananes*, or *Anamani*.—The *Senones*, or those of Sens, arriving last, and entering upon *Umbria*, passed the boundaries that distinguished the Cisalpine Gaul from Italy Proper. In after-times these countries were called *Flaminia* and *Æmilia*, from the military roads so denominated, which intersected each other in their territories.

The most celebrated city in this part of Cisalpine Gaul, is *Ravenna*, at the bottom of the Adriatic Gulf; for after having been the residence of the emperors of the west, while Rome was possessed by the barbarians, it became that of a governor established under the title of Exarch, by the eastern emperors; who, at the time of the Lombards in Italy, were in possession of what is now called Romagna. Augustus had caused a port to be excavated at Ravenna, for the purpose of a rendezvous and arsenal for a fleet in the Superior Sea; as that of Misena, in the neighbourhood of Naples, was in the Inferior. The sea, retiring from its shores, has left the place where this port existed at a considerable distance

in the land, but which nevertheless preserves the name of *Classé*.—There was a Canton of the Cisalpine country, under the name of *Venetia*. Common fame would bring the *Veneti* from Asia, under the conduct of Antenor, after the destruction of Troy. Be this as it may, they were in possession of the country which envelopes in part the head of the Adriatic Gulf, in a time anterior to the foundation of Rome, and while the *Tuscans* were extended in the *Transpadane*. There is no mention of Venice, as a city in antiquity, but only as a port called *Venetus*. It is well known that the entrance of Attila into Italy, and the ruin of cities spreading terror through the country, caused a multitude of people to seek refuge among the lakes or lagunes which the sea forms upon that fenny shore. This was the beginning of a city which has since been so much distinguished by successful commerce, and consequent aggrandisement of power.—We must also speak of the *Euganei*, who are said to have inhabited the maritime country before the arrival of the *Veneti*; who drove them, as it would appear, into the mountains which make part of *Rhætia*, where we find them afterwards established.—Another people, named *Karni*, occupied the northern side of *Venetia*, to the foot of those mountains which from them were named the *Carnian-Alps*; and the same name subsists in that which is now called *Carniola*, though more contracted in limits than the territories of the *Carni*.—The city *Aquileia* was a colony founded to serve as a barrier to Cisalpine Gaul, while the more remote provinces were not yet subjected; but it has never recovered from the devastation that it suffered from Attila.

ITALIA.

SECT. IX.

ITALIA PROPRIA.

Lucca, Tuscany, Patrimony of St. Peter, Orvieto, Umbria, Perugia, Romagna, Ancona, Fermo, Abruzzo Ultra, Campania di Roma, Sabinna, Abruzzo Citra, Molise Capitanata, Ultra principality, and Terra di Lavoro.

ITALIA PROPRIA comprehended in its extent, the cantons of *Etruria, Umbria, Picenum, Sabina, Latium, Campania, and Samnium.*

1st, ETRURIA. The country which the *Tusci* retained after having lost what they occupied beyond the limits of Italy Proper, is the first that presents itself in these limits. And this nation, which was there known under the name of *Etrusci*, gave the name of *Etruria* to all that which borders the western bank of the *Tiber* from its source in the *Apennine* to the sea. According to the prevalent opinion, the *Etruscans* named *Tyrrhæni* by the *Greeks*, were originally *Mæonians* of *Lydia*, in what is commonly called *Asia Minor*. They distinguished themselves in the arts, at a time when they were little known to their neighbours. The frivolous science of augury also was esteemed peculiar to them.—This country extending along the sea, from *Macra* to the mouth of the *Tiber*, is bounded on the north by the *Apennine*, as by the *Tiber* towards the east.—The nation or body politic of the *Etruscans* comprised twelve people, to which as many cities gave the name; and it is remarked that these cities were scattered at a distance from the *Arno*; if we except *Aretium*, *Arezzo*, which approaches it, *Aretium*, *Arezzo*; *Cortona*, which retains its name; *Perusia*, *Perugia*; and *Clusium*, *Chiusi*, towards the east, as well as *Volaterræ*, *Volterra*, more

interior and inclining towards Sienna, were among these Etruscan cities. Again approaching the sea, a city which had enjoyed a distinguished rank among those of Etruria, from which Rome, in the dawn of the republic, borrowed the exterior ornaments of the magistrature, was *Vetuloni*, whose site cannot be ascertained by any vestiges. We recognise more precisely those of *Populonium*, on a point projected towards an island, whose name of *Ilva* is pronounced Elba, celebrated heretofore for its mines of iron, but more celebrated lately for a momentary retirement of BONAPARTE. *Rusella*, another of the Etruscan cities, is found in the name of Rosella, which its ruins bear. *Volsinium*, another chief place of an Etruscan people, is Bolsena. The extremity of ancient Etruria, towards the lower part of the Tiber, comprised three more cities. The place which *Falerii*, the city of the *Falisci*, occupied, is named Palari, although abandoned. *Veii*, capital of the *Veientes*, distinguished by so obstinate a resistance to the Romans, existed on an eminence adjacent to a place named Isola. And *Cære* is now called Cer-Veteri. On the sea, the port which was a work of Trajan, under the name of *Centum Cellæ*, is Civita-Vecchia: and the *Portus Augusti*, excavated by Claudius, and to which Trajan added an interior basin, still preserves the name of Porto, although entirely covered with earth and sand accumulated by the Tiber.

2d, UMBRIA. The *Tiber* directing its course from north to south, borders successively *Umbria*, *Sabina*, and *Latium*. The *Umbri* are spoken of as a nation the most ancient in Italy. Not being at first bounded by the *Rubicon*, they extended to the *Po*, in the vicinity of *Ra-*

venna, to which country the name of *Umbria* was appropriated.

3d, PICENUM. This division was an appendage to ancient *Umbria*, by continuity on the *Superior* sea. Its limits are sometimes extended to the river *Aternus*.

4th, SABINA. The *Sabini*, of which *Sabinna* now preserves the name, succeeded the *Umbrians* on the same bank of the *Tiber*, as far as the river *Anio*, which is *Teverone*. It may be said in general of this people that it was reputed one of the most ancient in Italy, without entering into a discussion of the diversity of traditions on the subject. They are said to have migrated from a place near the city of *Amiternum*, to settle at *Reate*, which is *Rieti*, extending themselves to the *Tiber*. They founded a city named *Cures*, from which was derived the name of *Quirites*, given by the orators to the Roman people in public addresses. This city was nevertheless, reduced to an inconsiderable place in the time of the Roman greatness; and the site of it is thought to be found under the name of *Correse*. Among the many cities which made some figure in history during the first ages of Rome, but now for the most part obliterated, must be distinguished *Tibur*, on the *Teverone*, the allurements of whose situation have caused it to be celebrated; and its name has been corrupted to *Tivoli*.

5th, LATIUM. We have now arrived at *Latium*, from which issued that power which extended itself in the three parts of the ancient world.—The *Latini*, the principal people of this territory, occupied the space between the *Tiber*, the *Teverone*, and the *Sea*; a space that made but a small part of *Latium*; whose limits by the acces-

sion of many other people, correspond with the modern Campagna di Roma. Of these people the most powerful and most difficult to reduce were the *Volsci*.—Ancient Rome, for whose site at first Mount Palatine was sufficient, covered, at the time of the abolition of the regal government, seven hills; from which circumstance it acquired the name of *Urbs Septicollis*. These eminences, besides the *Palatinus*, were the *Capitolinus*, *Quirinalis*, *Viminalis*, *Esquilinus*, *Cælius*, and *Aventinus*. The *Janiculum*, beyond the Tiber, was not numbered among hills. The wall that enclosed them, and extended to the Janiculum, was finished by Servius Tullius towards the end of the second age of Rome; and a rampart called *Agger*, covering the Quirinal, the Viminal, and the Esquiline was a work of his successor Tarquin, the Proud. Tho' *Campus Martius*, now the most populous part of the city, was then beyond the wall, and without habitations. This enclosure, religiously respected as the cradle of the infant empire, subsisted not only to the last times of the republic, but for many ages under the emperors; and of the fourteen regions or wards into which Augustus divided this city, many were without this line. But by a new division made under Aurelian, elevated to the empire in the two-hundred and seventieth year of the christian æra, its walls were advanced far beyond the Capitoline Mount, towards the north; and there is reason to believe that the present barrier of Rome, if we except the part of *Tras-Tevere*, which surrounds the Vatican, represents that of Aurelian. Not to transgress the narrow limits of an abridgement, we shall only add, that at the foot of the Capitol, on one side of the

Forum Romanum; now the Campo Vaccino, was erected the *Milliarium Aureum*, or gilded military column, whence issued, as from a common centre, the great roads which conducted to different parts of Italy.—It is thought *Lavinium*, a city whose foundation tradition ascribes to Æneas, to whom the Romans affected to owe their establishment in Italy, existed in a place now called Pratica, at some distance from the sea. Another place, in a similar situation, bore the name of *Ardea*, and was the capital of the *Rutuli*, who fought with the Trojans, companions to Æneas.—It is thought that *Alba-longa*, the rival of Rome, and of more ancient foundation, existed in a place whose name is now Palazzo. The position of *Suesta Pometia*, which held the first rank among the cities of the *Volsci*, cannot be ascertained. That of *Corioli*, from which an illustrious Roman acquired the title of *Coriolanus*, is equally unknown.

6th, CAMPANIA succeeds to *Latium*. This is the country of Italy which nature appears to have most favoured; the beauty and fertility of which being much celebrated in antiquity. It made the principal of what is now named Terra di Lavoro. Its extent along the sea is carried to the limits of *Lucania*; and it is bounded on its interior side by *Samnium*.—*Capua*, the magnificent and delightful city, has not preserved its position; but has taken another on the *Volturno*, about three miles distant, opposite to that which a city named *Casilinum* occupied, but where its pristine splendour and greatness have not followed it.—*Neapolis*, Naples, a Greek city, as were many others on the same shore, bore primitively the name of *Parthenope*, said to be that of a Syren, and has profited by the decline of *Capua*.—*Puteoli*, *Puozzola*, *Baiæ*, or *Baya*,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SECT. IX.

ITALIA.

under the form of Puglia. The side of Apulia, making the spur of the boot to which the figure of Italy is compared, peculiarly bore the name of *Daunia*, as having been the domain of Daunus, father-in-law of Diomedes, who, on his return from the war of Troy, establishing himself in this country, founded the city of *Arpi*, whose site preserves its name.—This canton is at the same time the country of the ancient *Calabri*, distant from that which in a posterior age took the name of Calabria. The *Salentini* appear likewise to have been a people of ancient *Calabria*. *Tarentum*, or *Taras* according to the Greeks, is Tarento, which the Lacedæmonians occupied, and which was the occasion of the coming of Pyrrhus into Italy. This city has communicated its name to the gulf that advances into this extremity of the continent. *Brundusium*, Brindisi, on the Adriatic Sea, was the port most frequented for passing between Italy and Greece.

2d, LUCANIA. The country which bore the name of *Lucania* brings us back to the bottom of the Gulf of Tarentum, and extends thence across the isthmus to the Inferior Sea.—We must here mention *Helea*, or *Velea*, a Phocæan colony, which derives celebrity from the stoic school of Zeno, and is now replaced by the city of Castello-a-mare della Brucca.—On the shore of this gulf, *Metapontum*, where Pythagoras taught his doctrine, and *Sybaris* have left few or no traces: the *Sybarites* were a people much condemned for the licentiousness of their manners: and their city having been destroyed by the Crotonians, other Greeks (among whom was Herodotus the historian) re-established it under the name of *Thurii*, which it maintained till it ceased to exist.

ed, BRUTIUM. The country which is now called Calabria, south of ancient Lucania, was occupied by the *Brutii*.—The city *Pētilia*, built by Philoctetes after his return from the Trojan war, has taken the name of *Pongoli*. Croton which was a great city, is now called *Cotona*. The neighbouring promontory, where the Gulf of Tarento terminates, and named *Lacinium*, is called Cabo della Colonna, from the remains of a temple to Juno.—We shall mention some rocks that lie off the cape, because among other names under which they appear in antiquity, we find that of the *Isle of Calypso*.

We will now mention, in a few words, the divisions of ITALY in general, by Augustus, into ELEVEN REGIONS; though more curious than useful to be known. The FIRST consisted of *Latium* and *Campania*, to the river *Silarus*. The SECOND encroaches on that which we have seen belonging to *Samnium*, including the *Herfyni*; extending thence into *Apulia*, and the more ancient country of the *Calabrians* to the *Iapygian* promontory. *Lucania*, and the country of the *Brutians*, composed the THIRD. The FOURTH, reputed to include the most marvellous people of Italy, comprised *Sabina*, and the rest of *Umbria*. *Picenum*, one of the most populous countries of Italy appears to have constituted the FIFTH REGION; *Adria* made the SIXTH; and *Etruria*, to the river *Metaurus*, the SEVENTH: which completed ancient Italy properly so called. The EIGHTH REGION of Italy then extended, between the Apennine, and the river *Pò*, to *Placentia* inclusively. *Liguria*, in as ending the same bank of the river to the summit of the Alps, made the NINTH.

In the TENTH, *Venetia* and the country of the *Carni*, were comprehended. The ELEVENTH comprised the space between the limits of *Venetia*, and the *Pennine*, or higher Alps. So that besides the seven that fall in Italy Proper, the remaining four were in *Cisalpine Gaul*, i. e. two in *Cispadane*, and two in *Transpadane*.

Before concluding this SECTION, we shall take a transient survey of the great Roman ways, which occur not less frequently in history than in geographical treatises. They are distinguished for the most part by the names of their constructors. It is well known that they were measured from mile to mile; and that columns called *milliary*, at each mile were inscribed with an indication of the distance; and this was practised in every province subject to the empire.

VIA APPIA. The *Via Appia*, or Appian Way, approaching the sea at *Terracina*, conducts to *Capua*, then to *Benevento*; whence it leads to *Brindisi* by two routes. the right by *Venosa*, the left by *Taranto*, passing along the coast of the Adriatic from *Bari*. From *Capua* there issued another road, which traversing *Lucania* and *Bruttium*, extended to *Regio* on the Sicilian Strait.

VIA FLAMINIA. The *Via Flaminia*, or Flaminian Way, directed its course northward, towards the shore of the Adriatic or Superior Sea, to *Rimini*, where it terminated.

VIA ÆMILIA. The *Æmia Via*, or Emilian Way, succeeding the latter, penetrated into *Cisalpine Gaul*: not to mention a branch of this way, which passing along the margin of the Adriatic Gulf at its bottom, conducted to *Aquileia*.

VALERIA AND SALARIA VIA. In the interval of the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

SICILIA, SARDINIA, &c.

SECT. X.

which determine the figure of Sicily caused it to be called *TRINACRIA*. Having received Greek colonies before the Carthaginians became powerful there, it afforded three different languages; the Roman, the Greek, and the Punic.—*Messana*, Messina, very near to Pelorum, had the name of *Zancle*, before the Messenians, driven from the Peloponnesus by the Lacedæmonians, established themselves there.—The most famous of volcanoes is *Ætna*, whose modern name of *Gibello* is formed from the appellative term for a mountain in the language of the Arabs, to whose domination Sicily was subjected by conquest from the Greek emperors of Constantinople.—In the planes which succeeded were the dwellings of the *Lastrigones*, ancient and savage inhabitants of the country, as well as the *Cyclopes*.—*Syracusæ*, the most considerable of the cities of Sicily, and much celebrated in Greek and Roman history, retains indeed the name of Syragusa, but only on a little insulated point heretofore named *Ortygia*, which made one of the regions of a vast city.—*Enna*, reputed the centre of the island, and famous for having been the supposed dwelling of Ceres and Proserpine, is named *Castro Joanni* or *Giovanni*.—The honey of *Hybla* was proverbially celebrated: and we find several cities of this name in Sicily. But that under present consideration is distinguished by the surname of *Major*, in the dependence of Catania, and which has ceased to exist.

SARDINIA VEL ICHNUSIA. The Greeks assimilating the island of *SARDINIA* to the print of a foot, called it *ICHNUSIA*; and they speak as well of the fertility of the soil, as of the insalubrity of the atmosphere. A part of the country is covered with mountains; and

SECT. X.

SICILIA, SARDINIA, &c.

those of the northern end are so rugged and inaccessible, that they were called *Insani Montes*. According to tradition a colony of Africans first established themselves in SARDINIA, under a chief whose name, *Sardus*, they communicated to the island. There were also known colonies of *Iberians*, or Spaniards; from whom were long distinguished the *Trojans*, under the name of *Ilians*, from *Ilium*, their ancient country. The *Carthaginians*, too, had founded the cities of *Calaris* and *Sulci*; the former of which, preserving its name in that of Cagliari, has become the capital of the island.— The position of *Turris Libisonis* is indicated by Porto-di-Torro, on the northern shore. This city was Roman; and its environs retained the name of *Romangia*, till the time when the *Arabs* of Barbary invaded the island. They superseded it with the name of *Barbaria*; which was afterwards given to all this canton of Sardinia.— *Olbia*, a Greek city, and one of the most ancient, having a port which looks towards Italy, and the nearest to it of any other, ought to be about the place where now exists Terra-Nova.

CORSICA VEL CYRNOS. CORSICA is nearer to the continent of Italy than *Sardinia*. The Greeks named it *CYRNOS*; and they pretended that the *Phocæans* were the first who made any settlement on it. But the insular nation was of *Ligurian* race; and they were described of a savage character, such as is natural to the inhabitants of a country rugged and difficult of access. The *Corsicans* had experienced the tyranny of the Carthaginians before the Romans undertook to subject them. This isle received two Roman colonies; *Mariana*, from Marius, and *Aleria*, from Sylla.

ÆOLIAE, MELITE, ET GAULOS. THE little isles not far distant north of Sicily, called *Æoliae*, may properly be included in this article. They were so named from being the supposed residence of *Æolus*; who according to the fable, there retained, the wings imprisoned in their caverns, and released them at his pleasure. They were also called *Vulcania*, because they had volcanos; and are now named *Lipari*, from *Lipara*, the principal of them.—This is also the place to mention *Melite*, or Malta; and *Gaulos*, or Gozo, which accompanies it. The towns placed now so advantageously on the ports of Malta, are neither of them, the ancient city of the island; whose position was in a place interior, and named *Rebatta*, from a term which the domination of the *Arabs* of Barbary brought into use, in this island.

SECTION ELEVENTH.

**RHÆTIA, NORICUM, PANNONIA, ILLIRICUM, DACIA,
MÆSIA, ET THRACIA,**

**PARTS OF SWITZERLAND AND GERMANY; HUNGARY
AND PART OF EUROPEAN TURKEY.**

IN assembling these several countries in the same SECTION, we fill the space between the unsubdued barbarians on the north; and the states of Greece, and part of Italy, on the south; which extends from the Alps to the Black Sea, on the southern bank of the Danube in the commencement, and on either bank of the same, in the latter part of its course. But as the distinction to be made between these provinces of imperial Rome will



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



of the *first* and *second*; a circumstance that caused RHÆTIA proper (as to the first) and VINDILETIA (as to the second) to resume their primitive distinctions.

VINDELICIA. We must now speak more particularly of the country of the *Vindelici*, which from the city of *Brigantia*, or Bregentz, on a lake which took the name of *Brigantinus*, before it was called the lake of Constance, extended to the Danube; while the lower part of the *Œnus*, or Inn, separated it from *Noricum*.

A powerful colony was established in the angle formed by the two rivers, *Vindo* and *Licus*; whence it would seem that the nation derived its name; and that of *Augusta*; given to this colony, is preserved, as it is well known, in Augsburg, between the rivers Lech and Wertach; the former of which separates Suabia from Bavaria.

NORICUM,

Parts of—Bavaria and Austria.

NORICUM extends along the southern shore of the *Danube*, from the mouth of the *Inn* to Mount *Cetius*, which causes the river to form a flexure a little above the position of Vienna. Embracing the beginning of the course of the *Dravus*, or *Drave*, and comprehending that which composes the duchies of Carinthia and Styria, it is bounded by the summit of the Alps on the south.

This country, which is first spoken of as having a king, followed the fate of *Pannonia*; for, when that was reduced, NORICUM also became a province, under the reign of Augustus. Afterwards, and by the multiplication of provinces, there is distinguished a *Noricum Ripense*, adjacent to the Danube, from a *Noricum Mediterraneum*, distant from that river in the bosom of the Alps.

Lauriacum appears with superiority among the places of Noricum; and a Roman fleet had there a rendezvous, or station, upon the Danube.—The position of *Noreia* is remarkable, inasmuch as it is said to have been occupied by a body of *Boians*, who are to be distinguished from those established in Bohemia, and from a time anterior to the invasion of the *Marcomans*, who drove this nation into NORICUM.

PANNONIA,

Parts of—Austria, Hungary, Croatia, and Slavonia.

PANNONIA stretched along the right bank of the Danube, from the frontier of *Noricum* to the mouth of the *Save*: the country beyond the river being occupied, from the limits of the Germanic nation of the *Quadians*, by Sarmatians, called *Jazyges Metanastæ*. On the southern side, PANNONIA was bounded by *Dalmatia* comprised in *Illyricum*. It received the *Drave* from its issue out of *Noricum*, and enclosed the greatest part of the course of the *Save*.

In the war which Augustus, bearing yet but the name of Octavius, waged with the *Japydes*, and the *Dalmatians* of *Illyricum*, the Roman arms had penetrated to the PANNONIANS. But it was reserved for Tiberius, who commanded in these countries, to reduce PANNONIA into a province. It was divided in the time of the Antonines into *Superior* and *Inferior*, and the mouth of the river *Arrabo*, or *Raab*, in the Danube, made the separation of it, according to Ptolemy. Afterwards we find employed the terms *first* and *second*, as in the other provinces of the empire: and in a later age we see a *third*, under the name of *Valeria*, between

the former two. The *second*, occupying the banks of the Drave and Save, obtained also the name of *Savia*, which now gives to a canton of this country the name of *Po-Savia*; expressing in the Sclavonic language a situation adjacent to the Save.

Among the several people which are named in the extent of PANNONIA, the *Scordisci* and the *Taurisci* are particularly noted. Gauls by origin, and far removed from their ancient dwelling as the *Boii*, they were separated by *Mons Claudius*, which appears to extend between the Drave and the Save. We know, moreover, that the *Scordisci* had penetrated far into *Masia*, which succeeds to PANNONIA, on the same shore of the Danube.—The first among the cities of the upper Pannonia, in following the course of the Danube a little below Mount *Cetius*, called now Kalenberg, is *Vindibona*, well known to be Vienna.—The union of a little river named *Bacuntius*, now *Bozzeut*, with the Save, determines the spot occupied by the city of *Sirmium*, which, under the reigns posterior to the Augustan age, shone among the most illustrious of the empire: and this district of PANNONIA included between the Danube and the Save is still called *Sirmia*.

ILLYRICUM,

Morlachia, Dalmatia, with parts of Croatia, Bosnia, and Sclavonia.

The name of *Illyricum* varies in its final syllable, being sometimes employed under the form of *Illyris*. The national name is *Illyrii*. And it is common in French to say *l'Illyrie*, though the name of *Illyria* is scarcely if at all used in the Latin. The extent of this country



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

med *Metuc Vetus*, in the country of Licka, among the mountains which the *Iapydes* inhabited.—Under the Greek emperors a particular province called *Prævalitana*, was comprised in the extent of a department formed under the title of *Illyricum Orientis*, that was only limited by the Euxine Sea, and has thus no relation to the primitive and national state which contributes to form the object of ancient geography.

DACIA (Trajana)*

Transylvania, Walachia, Moldavia, Bessarabia, and part of Hungary.

Two nations associated, and to whom the same language was common, the *Daci* and the *Getae*, occupied a great space of country, which, from the shore of the *Danube* towards the north, extended to the frontiers of European *Sarmatia*. The *Jazyges Metanastæ* above mentioned, a Sarmatic nation, established between *Pannonia* and *Dacia*, are comprised by their situation in the object under consideration.—Transylvania is commonly considered as denoted by *Dacia*. But numerous remains of Roman retrenchments, constructed to cover the conquered country, manifest that part of Hungary was comprised in it; and, by the positions which appertain to *Dacia*, the modern provinces of *Walachia* and *Moldavia* were also comprehended in this vast province, which the arms of Trajan annexed to the empire.

There is every reason to believe that the *Getae* were of Scythian origin; and when we pass over into Asia, and treat of *Scythia*, the hive of this nation will be shown under the

* The surname of *Trajana* was added to distinguish this *Dacia* from *Dacia Aureliana*, a province of *Mæsia*.

name of *Gete*, which it still preserves. There were *Getae* or *Getes* established in Thrace, on the route which Darius, son of Hystaspes, took towards the Ister. But in the expedition of Alexander against the *Triballi*, near two ages posterior to that of Darius, there is mention of the *Getes* only in their position beyond the river. Impatient, however, of their limits, *Mæsia* and *Illyricum* suffered from their incursions; and the *Celtic* nations there established were destroyed by them. Augustus, for whom the *Danube*, as the *Rhine*, was a boundary which nature seemed to give to the empire, contented himself with repelling the *Dacians*, and fortifying the bank of the river. But Trajan had conceived an appetite for conquest, and annexed it to the empire under one vast province.

Although the *Dacians* and *Getes* appear to have formed a combined politic body, and the whole country was equally reduced by Trajan, yet we observe a local distinction between them; inasmuch as the *Dacians* inhabited the upper, and the *Getes* the lower part of the course of the river, and along the Euxine. The name of *Getes* was more familiar to the Greeks, and that of the *Dacians* to the Romans; hence this name constituted that of the country. The *Goths*, a Teutonic or German nation of the same Scythian race with the *Daci* or *Getae*, who migrated from Asia in an anterior age, invaded *Dacia* in the middle of the third century.—

A Roman way entering into Transylvania, conducts at its issue, to the capital city of all the country, which, under the name of *Sarmizegethusa* having served for the residence of Decebalus, vanquished by Trajan, received

from this prince that of *Ulpia Trajana*; with which its primitive name was also associated. Ruins preserve the memory of its ancient magnificence to the place, which is inhabited only by a few herdsmen, and called Warhel; which signifies the site or position of a city; or otherwise Gradisca, denoting the same thing.—A way which issues from it, leading into the north of Transylvania, passes through a noted city named *Apulum*, which has declined into a small place called Albe-Julie, or more properly Albe-Gyula.—The *Cokajon mons* is singularly remarkable for having been the residence of a pontiff in whose person the *Getes* believed the Deity was incarnate; with a similar faith to that of eastern Tartars, who maintain the transfusion of the same soul in their Lamas, from him who is celebrated under the name of Zamolxis. A river of the same name with the mountain flows at its foot; and is recognised under that of Kason, on the confines of Moldavia and Transylvania. There is still known in this country a people of Roman origin, speaking a language manifestly derived from the Latin; and who, under the name of *Vlak* or *Valak*, having occupied a canton of Tartary beyond the Caspian Sea, where they had been transported, returned with the *Patzinaces* and *Bulgarians* to their primitive dwellings.

To include all that this article embraces, it remains that we speak of the space between the limits of Roman Dacia and the province of Pannonia. In this country there inhabited, as has been already premised, the *Iazyges*, a Sarmatic nation, who were surnamed *Metanastæ*, which denotes them to have been removed or driven from their native seats: and we find indeed other *Isazyges* established on the *Palus Mæotis*.—The country is



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



encountered the *Celts*, or *Gauls*, these are the people alluded to. And although the *Scordisci* were almost annihilated at the time when the Roman power extended in this country, it is remarked that many names of places on the *Ister* are purely *Celtic*. Darius, son of Hystaspes, marching against the Scythians, encountered the *Gètes*, who were reputed Thracians, on his passage, before arriving at the *Ister*; and we have seen that this extremity of the country on the *Euxine* bore the name of *Scythia*.

Mæsia appears to have been subjected to the empire under Augustus and Tiberius. Its extent along the river, which separated it from *Dacia* on the north, was divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*; and a little river named *Cia-brus*, or *Cebus*, now *Zibriz*, between the *Timacus* and the *Æscus*, makes, according to Ptolemy, the separation of these two *Mæsias*. But *Mæsia* suffered encroachment upon its centre in the admission of a new province, under the name of *Dacia*. Aurelian, fearing that he could not maintain the conquest of Trajan beyond the *Ister*, called *Dacia*, abandoned it, and retired with the troops and people, which he placed on the hither side of the river, affecting to call his new province the *Dacia of Aurelian*. That which *Mæsia* preserved of the superior division, was called the *First Mæsia*; and there is reason to believe that the name of *Masua*, which remains to a canton south of the *Save*, near its confluence with the *Ister*, comes from this *Mæsia*. The inferior was the *Second Mæsia*. There was afterwards distinguished in *Dacia* the part bordering on the river under the name of *Ripensis*; and that which was sequestered in the interior country under the name of *Mediterranea*, occupi-

ed probably a country contiguous to *Macedonia*, and known more anciently by the name of *Dardania*.—The land, insulated by the division of the *Ister* into many arms at its entrance into the *Euxine*, was called *Peuce*, a name preserved in that of *Piczina*, and from which was derived that of the *Peucini*, whom it is remarkable to find re-appear in the Lower Empire under the names of *Picziniges* and *Patzinacites*.—*Sardica*, which was the metropolis of *Mediterranean Dacia*, acquired from the Bulgarians the name of *Triaditza*. The vestiges of it are contiguous to *Sophia*, which now holds an eminent rank, being the residence of a *Begler-beg*, to whom the government of all the country comprehended under the name of *Roumelia* is confided.—*Tauresium*, where the emperor *Justinian* was born, was an obscure place before his reign; but becoming then the predominant city in this country, was called *Justiniana Prima*; and is still a place of consideration, under the name of *Giustendil*, which is an evident depravation of its primitive. The prerogatives of a great metropolis, invested in *Justiniana* by its founder, having been translated by the Bulgarian kings to *Achrida*, which they had chosen for their residence in the *New Epirus*, has induced the error of confounding this with the other. There was moreover a second *Justiniana*; for the city of *Ulpianum*, the native place of *Justinian*, received this name on its embellishment; and that of *Giustendil* is also its modern denomination.—All this interior of *Mæsia* was more anciently called *Dardania*, from the name of a people known to be savage in an early age. And although the *Mediterranean Dacia* extended over *Dardania*, we distinguish a particular province of *Dardania* under the lower em-

pire, and whose metropolis was *Scupi*, which preserves this name, or otherwise *Uskup*, towards the sources of the *Axius*, beneath *Mount Scardus*, which is now called *Monte Agentaro*.

There remains a division of *Mæsia* adjacent to the *Euxine*; in which the part nearest to the mouths of the *Ister* was formed, under Constantine, into a particular province named *Scythia*.—The city of *Tomi*, which the banishment of Ovid has illustrated, assumed in this province the rank of metropolis; and is still known in the name of *Tomeswar*, although otherwise called *Baba*.

THRACIA,

Romania, or part of Roumelia.

THRACIA extends from the frontiers of *Macedonia*, along the *Ægean Sea*, and the *Propontis*, to the *Euxine*; while *Mount Hæmus* separates it from *Mæsia*. *Mount Rhodope* envelops it on the western side, as does *Hæmus* on the northern. It is improperly that the name of *Romania* appears exclusively appropriated to *Thracia* in modern maps; and *Roumelia* or *Roum-Vilayet*, in the modern state of things, is not a peculiar denomination for the country called heretofore *Thraci*; for it is equally applicable to *Greece*.

THRACE is described in antiquity as a wild country; only fertile in places near the sea; inhabited by nations addicted to rapine, and of a character corresponding with the local circumstances. We find *Thrace* divided among many kings before it fell under the Roman domination, which did not happen till the reign of *Claudius*.

In the subdivisions which the age of *Dioclesian* and *Constantine* produced in the empire, *Thrace* was formed into many provinces. That part which borders the *Pro-*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

the other, subsists in that of Erekli, applied to the position of this city now in ruins. *Byzantium*, become Constantinople, caused the decay of Heraclea, whose see, notwithstanding, enjoyed the pre-eminence of metropolitan in the province distinguished in Thrace by the title of *Europa*. *Byzantium* occupied a point of land contracted between the Propontis and a long cove, which forms one of the best ports in the world, and was heretofore named *Chryso-ceras* or the *Horn of Gold*. At this point begins a channel called *Bosphorus*, which signifies properly the passage of the ox; opening a communication between the Propontis and the Euxine: and this Bosphorus was surnamed *Thracicus*, to distinguish it from another Bosphorus called the Cimmerian. The choice made by Constantine of a situation so advantageous as that of *Byzantium*; to construct in the empire a new Rome, which took the name of *Constantinopolis*, every *tyro* in literature knows. It was in occupying the ground along the Propontis and the port, affecting, in imitation of Rome, to cover seven hills, that Constantinople extended far beyond the ancient *Byzantium*. The enclosure of this was nevertheless preserved, and it still separates the seraglio of the Sultan from the city. The shore of the Bosphorus, or channel of Constantinople, on the side of Europe, terminates near some insulated rocks, which are called the isles, with the name of *Cyanea* in antiquity. This extremity of Thrace and of Europe, contracted between two seas, was enclosed by a long wall called *Macron-tichos*, commencing a little beyond Heraclea, and terminating on the shore of the Euxine, near a place named *Dercon*, or *Derkous*. This barrier, of which there are only some vestiges remain-

ing, was constructed by the emperor Anastasius, at the beginning of the sixth century, to resist the incursions of many foreign nations who had penetrated even to the environs of the city.—In the place where the Hebrus first changes its course, from the eastward to descend south, *Hadrianopolis*; had primitively borne the name of *Orestias*, which the Byzantine authors frequently employ in speaking of this city. The three rivers in which it is pretended that *Orestes*, polluted by the murder of his mother, purified himself, had their confluence here: This city, which enjoyed the dignity of a metropolis in the province of *Hæmimontus*, served as a residence for the Ottoman sultans before the taking of Constantinople, and is known to the Turks by the name of Hedrine. The nation of *Ōdryssæ*, one of the most considerable of Thrace, occupied its environs.—Ascending towards the fountains of the Hebrus, not far from the foot of mount Hæmus, we find that *Philippopolis*, so named from Philip, father of Alexander, acquired also, from its situation among hills, the denomination of *Trimontium*, but still preserves its name of Philippopoli, or Philiba, as the Turks abbreviate it. This was the metropolis of the province especially distinguished by the name of *Thracia*: it was in the canton of the *Bessi*, whose ferocity was said to surpass the rigour of their climate.

SECTION TWELFTH.

GRÆCIA.

GREECE OR ROUMELIA.

TO JUDGE of the extent of GREECE by the power which enabled its states, individually, to arm against each other, or unitedly, to sustain the attacks of formidable foreign enemies, would be to form an idea of a great country. A more intimate acquaintance with it, however, will undeceive us in this point. For we shall see that *Greece*, properly so called, scarcely contains more space than the kingdom of Naples occupies in the continent of Italy. And the island of Sicily alone is deemed equal to the *Peloponnesus*, considered exclusively of *Greece Proper*; although in it there are enumerated *six* distinct provinces.—The circumstance that contributes among others to the glory of GRÆCÆ, is well known to be, that, though reduced by the Roman arms, she triumphed in *Rome*, by establishing the arts which in this mistress of the world were unknown.—But having remarked a relative distinction in the extent of the name of Greece, it becomes us to signify here, that it is in its most comprehensive space that we propose to treat it. Returning to the frontier of *Illyricum*, thence to take our departure, we shall include *Macedonia* in its extension over *Epirus Nova* on the one side, to the confines of *Thrace* on the other, as it respects the north, with the projection of land to the south, which is embraced by the *Ionian Sea* on the west, and the *Ægean Sea* on the east.

The GREEKS gave themselves the name of *Hellenes*;



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



The principal city on the coast, and a place of the greatest resort, was a colony from the neighbouring island of Corcyra, under the name of *Epi-damnus*; but which, having changed its name to *Dyrrachium*, for the evil omen that its signification indicated, is now called *Durazzo*.— A principal city of the interior country, and attributed to the *Dassaretii* was *Lychnidus*, near a lake from which the *Drino* derives its course. The Bulgarians, who composed a great state, more than an age after the reign of Justinian, or in the eighth of the Christian æra, took *Lychnidus* for their capital, changing its name to *Achrida*, which still subsists.

MACEDON. In its more ancient state, *Macedon* was bounded on the west by the country whereof we have just spoken, and confined on the side of the east by *Thrace*; by which it was more contracted, before the borders of the river *Strymon* were comprised in it. It had *Dardania* on the north, and was bounded on the south by *Thessaly*. But in the interior of a country so renowned, there is still wanting much of the actual intelligence from which ancient geography derives its most important illustration.

The northern part of *Macedon* bore the name of *Pæonia*; and divers nations comprised under this name extended to the frontiers of *Thrace*. The name of *Pelagonia* sometimes supplied the place of it, and penetrating into the interior of *Macedon*, had *Stobi* for the principal city. And when *Macedon* was formed into two provinces, this was the metropolis of one of them; while the capital of the other division was called *Salutaris*.— The situation of a particular canton towards the beginning of the *Erigon*, named *Deuriopus*, is more certainly

determined than many others by this circumstance.—The position of a city of the name of *Heraclea* is given its situation on a Roman way leading from *Lychnidus* to *Thessalonica*; and this city indicates the canton of *Lyncestis*, since we know it to have been included therein.—That of *Eorda* appears to have been contiguous, towards the Illyrian country.—The most distinguished country of Macedon, and most adorned with cities, was *Emathia*. *Edessa*, otherwise called *Æge*, or the city of the Goat, was the royal city before *Pella*; and it still retains the first of these names, as well as that of *Moglena*, the name of the country in its environs. *Pella*, which had taken rank of *Edessa*, was advantageously situated on a lake, which communicated with the sea by a river called *Ludias*, holding a parallel course with the *Vardari*. On the western side of the *Thermaic Gulf* is a district called *Pieria*, wherein the Romans finished the conquest of the kingdom of Macedon.—East of the *Axius* lies *Mygdoni*, one of the most extensive countries of *Macedon*, and which was conquered, with a great part of *Thrace*, by the predecessors of *Alexander*. *Thessalonica*, which under the Romans became the capital of *Macedon*, was called *Therma* before *Cassander* gave it the name of his wife, the sister of *Alexander*; and it still flourishes under the name *Saloniki*. A gulf which was called *Singiticus Sinus*, washes one of the flanks of the famous *Mount Athos*, and the *Strymonicus Sinus* the other. This mountain which, from its monasteries, is now called *Agios-Oros*, or *Monte-Santo*, is only connected with the continent by a low and narrow tongue of land, which was easily opened to *Xerxes*, to afford a

GRÆCIA.

SECT. XII.

passage to his fleet, as reported in history. Advancing towards *Thrace*, and a little above the sea, we find the ruins of *Philippi*, which owed its name to Philip, the father of Alexander, and whose plains were the scene of a battle fatal to Brutus and Cassius.

GRÆCIA,

Chimera, Thessaly or Janná, Livadia or Acaia.

Under this title we comprehend all that which, south of the former part, is included between the *Ionian Sea* and the Gulf of *Corinth* on the one side, and the *Ægean Sea* on the other. *Epirus* and *Thessalia* fill the northern part of this space; and, looking from west to east, *Epirus* precedes *Thessaly*.

EPIRUS. The shore of *Epirus* commences at a point named *Acro-ceraunia*, directly opposite to the heel of Italy, and terminated by mountains which, by reason of their precipitate elevation, are obnoxious to thunderbolts, and thence called *Acro-ceraunii Montes*.—The canton situated in these mountains, and along the sea, was named *Chaonia*; and the name *Chimera*, which was that of a maritime place of *Chaonia*, is now applied to the whole country.—*Thesprotia* follows, and is one of the principal parts of *Epirus*, extending to the entrance of the gulf of *Ambracia*: *Corcyra* is separated by a very narrow channel from the continent of *Epirus*, opposite to *Thesprotia*. This is the isle of the *Pheacians* in Homer. The city of the same name with the isle; and which received a colony of *Corinthians*, who became powerful, did not occupy precisely the site which is given to the modern city, but was confined to a peninsula, which they call *Chersopoli*; and the present name *Cór-*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

siderable of the Thessalian cities, and it still subsists in the same position, without any alteration in its name. It is after having left this city on its right, that the *Peneus*, enclosed between *Olympus* and *Ossa*, in a narrow and rapid course, is discharged into the sea by a mouth called *Lycastomo*, or the Wolf's mouth; and the whole length of this passage, through wild and picturesque scenes, is the famous valley of *Tempe*.—*Azorus* was the principal city of *Pelagonia*, surnamed *Tripolitis*, or the Three Cities, towards the frontier of Macedon, as the expedition of a Roman commander has shown.—Passing south of the *Peneus*, we find *Pharsalus* on the river *Enipeus*, which the *Apidanus* receives. This place, which a signal and decisive battle between Julius Cæsar and Pompey, in which the former was victorious, has rendered ever memorable, preserves in the maps the name of *Farsa*.—Beyond *Pheræ*, and at the bottom of the gulf named *Pelagicus*, and now *Volo*, was the city of *Demetrias*, which owed its foundation and name to *Demetrius Poliorcetes*: and this was deemed by Philip one of the proper posts to impose chains on Greece.—The entrance of this gulf had a port from which it is pretended that the ship *Argo* took her departure, and its name of *Apheta* preserves some traces in that of *Fetio*.—*Magnesia*, without the gulf, near the promontory of *Sepias*, where the fleet of *Xerxes* suffered from tempests, has communicated its name to a canton of this country. Opposite are ranged many isles south of the *Thermaic Gulf*: the principal of these are *Sciathus*, *Scopelus*, *Halonnesus*, and *Peparethus*; of which the two first preserve their names.—But returning to the interior country, we shall mention a city seated on an eleva-

SECT. XII.

GRÆCIA.

tion that immediately commands the plains of Thessaly. It was called *Thaumacia*, from the sentiment of admiration wherewith the spectator was impressed, on contemplating from it a delightful and luxuriant prospect, after having been among gorges and precipices, which must be passed to enter *Thessaly* on the side of *Phocis*.—*Lamia* is remarkable for having given the title to a war which the Greeks maintained with Macedon after the death of Alexander.—Upon the southern side of the *Sinus Maliacus* begin the famous defiles of *Thermopylæ*, which took its name from the warm baths in its neighbourhood. This pass is celebrated for a battle fought before Christ 480, between Xerxes and the Greeks, in which 300 Spartans desperately resisted, for three days, five millions of Persians, when they were crowned with the laurels of victory in the moments of a glorious death, earned in checking the merciless, proud, and sanguinary enemy of their country.—In a little plain among the mountains was placed a city named *Trachys*, or the Rugged. It is also called *Heraclea Trachinia*, from Hercules, who is said to have been thrown upon his funeral pile upon the summit of Mount *Œta*, which is not far distant.

ACARNANIA. Having thus terminated Thessaly, we must return towards the Ionian Sea. That which was called *Acarmania*, and whose name is not entirely lost in that of *Carnia*, was separated from *Epirus* by the *Sinus Ambracius*. This country extended along the strand of the sea to the mouth of the river *Achelous*; the course of which formed the separation of *Acarmania* and *Ætolia*.—*Anactorium* was the first place in entering the abovementioned *Sinus*; preceding even the position of

Actium, whose ruins are distinguished by the name of *Azio*. It was in a basin, contracted by two corresponding points, and interior to the more capacious bay, that the famous naval combat was exhibited which decided the empire of the world, between Augustus and Antony.—To describe the rest of *Acarmania*, we must depart from the continent. The island of *Leucadia*, which preserves the same name, bearing also that of *Neritus*, was previously a peninsula, but has been insulated by art, in dividing a low and narrow beach, by which this portion of land was prolonged from the main. The city of *Leucas*, which gives it the name, is not in the same position with that of a Venetian place called *Santa-Maura*.—The island of *Cephalenia*, or, according to the modern orthography, *Cefalonia*, being a situation near to *Leucadia*, should find a place here. In the interior of the country, a city of the same name with the isle has changed this name for *Borgo*; and near the eastern shore we find a position called *Same*, which also appears to have been a name for the entire island.—A channel of the sea separates this from another isle called the *Little Cefalonia*; but which, in its proper name of *Theaki*, appears to represent that of *Ithaca*: it would appear absurd to confine the name of *Ithaca* to a holm that lies before *Theaki*, since that bears the name of *Iotaco*. And we see in *Homer* that *Ulysses* commanded the *Cephalenians*, without whom his domain would have been extremely contracted.

ÆTOLIA. *Ætolia* succeeds to *Acarmania*, and from the margin of the sea penetrates to the mountains on the confines of *Thessaly*, where the *Valaques*, who were transported thither by the Greek emperors, still inhabit,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Phocis offers nothing more celebrated than the oracle of *Delphos*, and *Parnassus Mons*, which covers this city towards the north. *Delphos* is now a small place named *Castri*; and the most elevated point of Mount *Parnassus* is called *Heliocoro*.—*Crissa*, to the south of *Delphos*, gave the name of *Crissæus Sinus* to the part of the *Corinthiac* gulf which is now called the Gulf of *Salona*. *Anticyra*, on the isthmus of a peninsula, has taken the name of *Aspro-Spitia*.

The little mountainous country of *Doris* gives birth to the river *Cephissus*; and near to its course *Elatia*, the greatest city in *Phocis*, exists only in a very small place called *Turco-chorio*. The *Locri*, whom the city of *Opus* had surnamed *Opuntii*, and those who from Mount *Cnemis* were called *Epi-Cnemidii*, bordered on the sea which separated this part of the continent from *Eubœa*.

BOËOTIA. *Bœotia* succeeding *Phocis*, extends along the sea opposite the island of *Eubœa*; and, touching on the other side of the *Corinthiac*, is bounded by *Attica* on the south, from which it is separated by the river *Asopus*.—The land here being rich and fertile, and the air more thick than in *Attica*, of which the soil is dry and sterile, is thought to have made the fancied difference in the minds and genius of the natives of these two countries.—In the interior country *Thebæ*, which owed its foundation to *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, and from whom the citadel of this city was called *Cadmea*, retains some vestiges under the name of *Thiva*. Destroyed by *Alexander*, who spared only the house of *Pindar*, it rose again from its ruins.—*Lebudea*, distinguished by the oracle of *Trophonius* in a cavern where he was precipitated, appears to be the capital city; whence it comes that the

country bears, improperly, the name of Livadia in the maps.—*Cheronæa* is found, as well as the preceding city, in the most northern part of *Bœotia*, towards *Phocis*. *Cheronæa* is rendered famous by a victory of Philip, father of Alexander, over the Greeks, and for one of Sylla over the generals of Mithridates, and still more for having given birth to Plutarch.—*Orchomenus* was reputed so opulent in the earliest times, that its riches became proverbial.—*Hæliartus*, on the side of the lake *Copias*, was destroyed by the Romans in the first Macedonian war.—At the bottom of the Corinthiac gulf we may cite *Leuctra*, not far distant, as a place which the victory of Epaminondas over the Lacedæmonians has illustrated.—*Platæa*, whose name recalls to the memory the defeat of the Persians commanded by Mardonius, is separated from *Eleutheræ* by Mount *Cythæron*.

ATTICA and MEGARIS. The name of *Attica* is derived from the Greek term *Actè*, denoting a shore or beach; and *Attica* justifies this etymology of its name, in having two sides embraced by the sea. We shall extend it to the isthmus, comprising therein *Megaris*, which nevertheless pretended to the separate dignity of an independent state.—The city *Athenæ*, whose glory is well known on the subject of the fine arts, which from her bosom were diffused through all the nations where they are best cultivated, preserves its name under the form of *Athèni*; and it is by depravation, and by prefixing the preposition of place, that *Athens* is called *Sètines* by the uninformed. This city, though situated at some distance from the sea, had nevertheless three ports; the principal of which, although the most distant,

named *Piræus*, now Porto-Leone, had a communication with the city by means of two walls forty stadia in length. *Munychia* and *Phalerus* were the two other ports.—Among the mountains of Attica, *Hymettus* and *Pentelicus*, near Athens are the most known; that for the honey which it afforded, and this for its marble.—We know how much the mysteries of Ceres distinguished the city of *Eleusis*, the name of which is now pronounced Lessina. The isle of *Salamis*, which takes the name of Colouri from a place that it contains, leaves but a narrow passage to the cove which the sea forms before this city.—Near the opposite shore, *Marathon* preserves the same name, which a victory of the Athenians over the Persians has rendered immortal.—Among the events of the Peloponnesian war, a particular circumstance of a garrison being there established, that proved very galling to the Athenians, may create a curiosity concerning the position of *Decelia*, on the route from Athens to Chalcis in Eubœa.—Attica, extremely contracted between two seas, terminates at the promontory of *Sunium*; where the columns still standing, of a temple of Minerva, have caused it to be called Cabo Colonna.

EUROEA. The island of *Eubœa* is comprised in our present division, as covering *Bœotia* and *Attica*; and only separated by a channel, so narrow in one place as to permit it to be connected with the continent by a bridge.—*Chalcis* was the principal city of this great island, and one of the three that in the judgment of the king of Macedonia, would enable their possessor to enslave Greece. This city derives its present name of Egripo, or Egri-vo, (as the modern Greeks pronounce it) from the *Eurippus*, or the strait on which it is seated; and where, un-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

the Corinthiac gulf, occupies the northern side of the Peloponnesus from the isthmus; comprehending the districts of *Corinth* and *Sicyon*, which have their particular names of *Corinthia* and *Sicyonia*.—It is remarkable that it was under the name of *Achaïans* that the Greeks contended for their liberties against the Roman power: whence it happened that, under the general name of *Achaïa*, conquered Greece became a province of the Roman empire; and the name of *Græcia* does not appear among the provinces enumerated in the Notice of the Empire.—The *Isthmus* which affords entrance to the Peloponnesus, is now called Hexa-Mili; its breadth being estimated at six modern Greek miles, which are shorter than the Roman. The *Isthmus* was destined to the celebration of games called Isthmian, which, in a place contracted by two seas, were dedicated to Neptune.—*Corinthus*, a rich and powerful city, whose situation on the opening of the isthmus might make one of the shackles of Greece in the opinion of Philip, owed its re-establishment to Cæsar, after having been erased to the foundations in the war of the Romans against the *Achæan league*; and a wretched hamlet on its site still recalls it to memory, in the name of Corito. This city had two ports; *Lechæum*, on the Corinthiac gulf, and *Cenchiræa*, on the Saronic; besides a citadel on the pike of a mountain, which, by reason of its situation, was named *Acro-Corinthus*.—*Sicyon*, from its having been governed by kings, in a remote age, has taken the name of Basilico.—*Ægium* was the place where the states of Achaïa were held; and which is thought to have been replaced by Vostitza, on the borders of the gulf.

ARGOLIS. The country of *Argolis* derives its name

from the city of *Argos*, one of the most renowned in Greece, and still exists in the name of *Argo*. Its little river, which from the most ancient king of the country was named *Inachus*, loses itself in a morass near the sea.—*Mycenæ*, having become, after *Argos*, the residence of kings, was that of *Agamemnon*.—*Tyrius* had been the dwelling of other princes; and its sequestered situation is found expressed in the name of *Vathia*, which the place now bears. It is deeply bosomed in mountains; and the entrance to it is through a narrow gorge, which affords a bed for a torrent.—*Nemea*, on the confines of *Corinthia*, must also be mentioned, on account of the celebrity it acquired from the destruction of the *Nemean* lion in the neighbouring forest by *Hercules*, and the institution of the *Nemean* games by that hero in commemoration of that event, according to some. On the shore of the *Argolic* gulf, we discover in a pool called *Molini* the lake *Lerna*, which its *Hydra*, also killed by *Hercules*, has made famous.—*Epidaurus*, on the *Saronic* gulf, which a particular adoration rendered to *Esculapius* distinguished, preserves its name under the form of *Pidavra*.—*Egina* is directly opposite, not far from the continent of *Argolis*; and we see in history that the inhabitants of this isle were powerful in their marine.

LACONIA. *Laconia* succeeds *Argolis*: its name under the Greek empire took the form *Tzacona*; and it is erroneously that in modern maps the name of *Sconia* appears in the centre of *Argolis*.

It is well known how much the laws and the martial valour of the Spartans distinguished their nation in

Greece. It is known also that the names of *Lacedæmon* and *Sparta* were common to the same city. The river *Eurotas* envelops it so as to form a peninsula; and the place which this city occupied is called *Paleo-Chori*, or the Old Town. The New town, under the name of *Misitra*, at some distance towards the west, is sometimes erroneously confounded with *Sparta*. About midway up the Laconic gulf, *Gythium* served as the port to the city of *Sparta*; and is now known by the name of *Colo-Kythia*, which it has communicated to the gulf.—The worship of *Apollo* gave some lustre to *Amyclæ*; not far from *Sparta*, towards the south.—On the coast of the Argolic gulf the most remarkable place is *Epidaurus*, with the surname of *Limera*, the site of which is now called *Malvasia-Vecchia*, as being in the vicinity of *Napoli* of *Malvasia*, a strong place on an insulated rock.—The promontory of *Malea*, which terminates this coast, retains the name of *Malio*, although otherwise called *Sant'-Angelo*. *Cythera*, now called *Cerigo*, an isle consecrated peculiarly to *Venus*, lies off this promontory.—The *Tænarium Promontorium*, which is the land of the Peloponnesus the most advanced towards the south, is now named *Metapan*, from the Greek word *metáphon*, which signifies a front. It is formed by a great mountain, whose name was *Taygetus*, and which was prolonged towards the north till it joined the mountains of *Arcadia*. It is inhabited by a particular nation, who derive their name *Mainote* from a castle called *Maina*, situated on the western acclivity; but it does not appear that they ever extended their name over all *Laconia*, as expressed in the modern maps. Several places, for the most part maritime, having been detached from the *Lacedæmoni*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



east.—Its southern part contiguous to *Messenia*, was distinguished by the name of *Triphylia*; and in this canton was a place of the name of *Pylus*, which disputed with that of *Messenia* the honour of having belonged to old Nestor; antiquity itself being not decided on this article.—*Olympia*, whose name is distinguished by the most celebrated games performed in Greece, was seated on the left bank of the *Alpheus*, at some distance from its mouth; while Pisa was opposite on the other. The reader perhaps would not imagine that we are still uncertain of the identity of a position so celebrated as *Olympia*; and that it is only by a mere presumption, that what we find under the name of *Rofeo*, by alteration from *Alfeo*, represents it.—*Elis*, which gave its name to this part of the Peloponnesus, and which was invested with the prerogative of presiding at the the *Olympic games*, was situated in the most spacious canton of the country, on a river of the same name with the *Peneus* of Thessaly, though much inferior to it in magnitude. It is thought a place named *Gastoni* occupies the site of this city.—There is still another place named *Pylus*, further advanced in the country than *Elis*. But on the sea from which *Elis* was distant, *Cyllene*, now a place uninhabited under the name of *Chiarenza*, was a port of the *Elians*.—A promontory named *Chelonites*, now *Capo Torneso*, is the most advanced point of the Peloponnesus towards the west, and which a channel of the sea separates from *Zacinthus*, or the isle of *Zante*.—Two shoals rather than isles, to the south of *Zante*, are the *Strophades*, which the poets have peopled with harpies, and whose modern name is *Strivali*.

ARCADIA. There remains to be described a country

which, under the name of *Arcadia*, having no communication with the sea, was contiguous, in some part of its limits, to every other state in the Peloponnesus. The nature of the country, environed by mountains, and fit for the feeding of cattle, had attached its inhabitants to a pastoral life: and the shepherds of *Arcadia*, and of mount *Manalus* in particular, are celebrated by the poets.—To those who entered this country on the side of *Argolis*, *Mantineia* was the first city that presented itself; and it is illustrated by a victory gained over the *Lacedemonians*, which cost *Epaminondas* his life. It is thought that this city is succeeded by that of *Triapolizza*.—In approaching the frontier of *Achaia*, and of mount *Cyllene*, where it is pretended that *Mercury* was born, *Pheneos* discovers itself in the name of *Phonia*.—*Megatopolis*, or the great city, constructed by the advice of *Epaminondas*, as a barrier to *Arcadia* on the confines of *Laconia*, and on a river named *Helisson*, which joins the *Alpheus*, corresponds in these circumstances with the modern position of *Leonardi*.

CRETA ET CYCLADAE INSULAE.

Candia and the Cyclades.

CRETA. The island of *Crete*, which nothing could render more illustrious in antiquity than having given birth to *Jupiter*, retains its name under the form of *Iciriti*, as the *Turks* pronounce it. The application of the name of the capital, which is *Candia*, to the island itself appears to have arisen from the *Venetians*.

This island extends in length from west to east, forming two promontories; on one side *Criu-Metôphon*, which signifies the ram's front, now simply *Crio*; the other *Samonium*, vulgarly *Salamone*. Another promontory,

which advances towards the north, and is called *Spada*, was heretofore named *Cimarus*. Among the mountains which reign throughout the island, *Ida*, where it is pretended that Jupiter was nursed in his infancy; elevates itself in the centre of the country.—*Cnossus*, or *Gnoſſus*, *Gortyna*, and *Cydonia*, were the three principal cities of Crete. The first, at some distance from the northern shore, and which is said to have been the residence of Minos, has left no vestiges that are known. Candia, less remote towards the east than was *Cnossus*, is a new city; and which had its commencement by being a post of the Saracens in the ninth century. The ruins of *Gortyna* are better known in receding from Candia towards the south, on a little river named *Lethæus*, at no great distance from the ports which this city has upon the southern coast. Subterranean passages in its environs seem to represent a *dædalus* or labyrinth, which one is curious to find in this country.

CYCLADÆ INSULÆ. It is said that the isles called *Cyclades*, from the Greek term *Kuclos*, owe the name to their encircling *Delos*; but it may more plausibly be ascribed to the circumstance of their being collected in the same part of the *Ægean Sea*, adjacent to Greece. It is proper to add, moreover, that the name of *Archipelago*, by which we now call this sea, is no other than an alteration of that of *Egiopelago*, according to the form of the Greek, very far from being an expression of pre-eminence in relation to other seas.—After having doubled the Malean promontory of the Peloponnesus, the first isle that presents itself, and a considerable one among the *Cyclades*, is *Melos*, or *Milo*: *Cimolus* is adjacent, and has taken the name of *Argentiera*, though that



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Stánpalia, may be classed among the CYCLADES, as the remotest towards the east.

The *Sporades*, which are beyond, belong to Asia, and do not enter into our present division.—But we must not omit an isle separated from the rest by the intervention of Eubœa, *Scyros*, which the banishment of Theseus, and the temporary dwelling of Achilles, served to illustrate, and which preserves the name of *Skiro*.—We defer speaking of Lemnos, as being much more remote, and in the parallel of *Troy*, but which will become an article in treating of the next continent.

CHAPTER II.

A S I A.

SECTION FIRST.

ASIA PROPRIA, NOW ASIA MINOR.

IT must be premised that antiquity knew no distinction of country under the name of *Asia Minor*; though there be found sometimes in the ancient writers, ASIA on *this side* of Mount *Taurus* and the river *Halys*; distinguished from that which is *beyond*. But to comprise what we propose under the present title, we must advance eastward to the *Euphrates*, follow the shore of the *Euxine* northward to *Colchis*, and the shore of the *interior sea* or Mediterranean to the limits of *Syria*.—the frequent revolutions that the countries of ASIA have experienced, attended with occasional contractions and expansions of their limits, render it impossible to treat of those limits with precision.

Two grand DIACESSES, or departments, under the emperors of the east, in the fourth century, divided this ASIA, by the names of *Asiana* and *Pontica*, under the two metropolitan sees of *Ephesus* and *Cæsareà* of *Capadocia*. But this division has no affinity with any distribution in the ages of antiquity; nor does it preserve any traces at present. *Asiana* occupied all the shore of the Mediterranean, *Pontica* that of the Black sea; and a line drawn obliquely from the *Propontis* made the separation.

ASIA MINOR.

SECT. I.

Endeavouring to apply method to the distribution of the divers countries which compose Asia Minor, we find them disposed in such a manner as to be divisible into **THREE CLASSES**: one towards the north, along the *Euxine*, one towards the south, along the *Mediterranean*, separated from the precedent by a middle class, which extended from the *Ægean Sea* to the *Euphrates*. Each of these classes, or assemblages, is composed of **FOUR** principal countries. Under the *first* or **NORTHERN**, are ranged *Mysia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, and *Pontus*; in the *second* or **INTERMEDIATE**, *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Gallatia*, and *Cappadocia*. The *third* or **SOUTHERN** consists of *Caria*, *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, and *Cilicia*. Consequently the following detail will be divided into **THREE** heads, each bearing the title of the countries comprised therein. And some portions of territory which do appear in this arrangement, shall be made known by their connexion with some individual province: thus *Ionnia* will appear with *Lydia*; *Lycaonia* with *Phrygia*; *Pisidia* with *Pamphylia*; and *Armenia Minor* with *Cappadocia*.

*MYSIA, BITHYNIA, PAPHLAGONIA, PONTUS.**

MYSIA. *Mysia* is adjacent to the *Propontis* on the north, and to the *Ægean Sea* on the west: it is bounded

* The civil divisions of Asia Minor of the present day correspond so illy, and are so few comparatively with those of antiquity, that we must be contented with stating in the way of note, that this country is now divided into three provinces of the Turkish empire. One called **NATOLIA**, or rather **ANATOLIA**, which occupies the *western part*, extending over its whole width; while the other two, called **AMASIA**, on the *Black sea*,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



ASIA MINOR.

SECT. I.

do not, as is ordinarily supposed, represent the positions of Abydus and Sestus; the one in Asia, the other in Europe. *Abydos*, which is not precisely opposite to *Sestos*, exhibits now but a heap of ruins, in a point named *Nagara*. The width of the strait a little above, and nearer to *Sestos*, is not more than 375 toises. It was in this place, the most contracted, that Xerxes laid a bridge for the passage of his immense army: and as this bridge had seven stadia of length, according to the testimony of Herodotus, it follows that these stadia are the shortest of the three measures under the same denomination.—On the farther side of a narrow channel, which separates a spacious insulated land, was *Cyzicus*, which held a rank among the principal cities of Asia, sustained a siege against all the forces of Mithridates. It had the dignity of a metropolis in the province that has been mentioned under the name of *Hellespontus*; and ruins of it still preserve its name. But its channel, which numerous bridges covered heretofore, is now filled up with rubbish.—Among many adjacent isles *Proconnesus*, the only one which shall be mentioned here, owes its present name of Marmora to the marble which distinguished it in antiquity; and this name is also communicated to the Propontis; it being commonly called the Sea of Marmora.—In our progress we find the *Rhyn-dacus*: and as this terminates Mysia on the side of Bithynia, we must return to Troy.—Before the Alexandria of Troas lies the small isle of *Tenedos*, which still retains its name —The coast of the continent, tending towards the east, conducts into a gulf to *Adramyttium*, whose name is more purely preserved in *Adramitti* than under the vulgar form of *Landemitre*. This coast, and

SECT. I.

ASIA MINOR.

that which succeeds towards the south, were occupied after the ruin of Troy, by Æolian Greeks; and the name of *Æolus* was given to a part of Mysia, extending hence to Lydia and the river *Hermus*.—At the mouth of the *Caicus* is recognized the position of *Elæa*, which was the port of *Pergamus*, and now called *Ialea*. *Pergamus* was the capital of a kingdom, which the Romans aggrandized considerably in favour of the king *Eumenes*, after the defeat of *Antiochus the Great*, king of *Syria*; and this city, which, with its kingdom, was bequeathed to them by *Attalus*, its last king, subsists in the name of *Bergamo*.—A promontory named *Cana*, now *Coloni*, very near the eastern point of *Lesbos*, is accompanied with little islands called *Arginussæ*; which merit notice as they became the scene of a great naval victory of the Athenians over the Lacedemonians.—*Lesbos*, whose oblique position between the north and east, covers all the space between the promontories *Lectum* and *Cana*, is one of the largest islands in the *Ægean Sea*. Its present name of *Mytilin* is from *Mytilene*, which is described in antiquity as a delightful abode, and distinguished by the cultivation of literature. This city, which subsists under the name of *Mytilini*, is ennobled by the birth of *Sappho*, whose fame has survived her poems.—*Methymna*, which yielded to *Mytilene* alone, existed in a place whose modern name is *Porto-Petera*.—The small islands enclosed between this coast and the shore of *Æolis*, and which, from the epithet of *Hecatus* given to *Apollo*, were called *Hecaton-nesi*, are now *Musco-nisi*, or the Isles of *Mice*. But from the promontory of *Lesbos*, the most advanced in the *Ægean*

Sea, and to which the name of *Sigrium* is continued in *Sigri*, we shall take a view of *Lemnos*, which, as being nearer to Asia than to any land in Europe, can no where be better described than in this place. Of two cities which it possessed, *Myrina* and *Hephæstia*, the first is *Palio-castro*, or the Old Castle, on a point turned towards the north-west, which is remarked by the ancients to receive the shadow of Mount Athos at the time of the winter solstice.

What we have hitherto seen of *Mysia* regards only the part bordering on the sea: it is proper also to be acquainted with some principal places in the interior country.—*Scepsis* was a considerable city in Troas; and from which it is remarkable that the writings of Aristotle came to light again, much damaged by having been long buried in the earth. It is to Strabo that we are indebted for this anecdote, and also for information concerning the succeeding fortune of these writings.—The country which envelops the bottom of the *Adramyttian* gulf was called *Cilicia*, and portioned between two cities, *Thebe* and *Lyrnessus*, of whose present state and situation we have no knowledge.

BITHYNIA. This country was named *Bebrycia*, before a people who are said to have issued from Thrace gave it the name of *Bithynia*. There is, moreover, observed a distinction between the *Thyni* and *Bithyni*, although both were reputed of Thracian origin. Departing from the *Rhyndacus*, we shall extend *Bithynia* to the river *Parthenius*; observing that there was a time when the dependencies of *Pontus*, extending to *Heraclea*, confined *Bithynia* within narrower bounds; and remarking also, that under the lower empire *Bithynia* was no long-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

ASIA MINOR.

SECT. I.

of exile appropriated to persons of that rank.—*Chalcedon* was called the City of the Blind, in derision of its Greek founders, for overlooking the more advantageous situation of Byzantium. A council against the Eutychi-an heresy in the middle of the fifth century has illustrated *Chalcedon*, which has taken under the Turks the name of Kadi-keui, or the burgh of the Kadi.—It is here that the Propontis begins to contract itself to form the Bosphorus, which becomes still narrower at *Chryso-polis*, the modern Scutari, directly opposite the point that Byzantium occupied. It must be observed, that this Bosphorus has its old and new castles, as well as the strait of the Dardanelles. And at some distance within its aperture, called by the Turks Bogas; where the new castles now stand, is the site of a temple consecrated to Jupiter *Urius*, or the Dispenser of favourable winds; and which is now named Ioron.—The powerful maritime Greek city of *Heraclea* with the surname of *Pontica*, is evidently that subsisting under the name of Erekli. The gulf at the head of which this city is situated is covered by a point of land, in the figure of a peninsula, called *Acherusia*; and it was pretended that Hercules, who gave the name to this city, dragged Cerberus from hell through a cavern in this promontory. The nation of *Mariandyni*, who occupied the country, were not definitively distinguished from the *Bithyni*. Under the lower empire, this part of Bithynia adjacent to Paphlagonia composed a separate province named *Honorias*.—In this canton, *Bithynium*, which bore also the name of *Claudio-polis*, was the metropolis of Honorius, and was disbo-noured by the birth of Antinoüs, so well known as the

favourite of Adrian. Its position seems to be that of the modern town of Bastan.

PAPHLAGONIA. It extends from the river *Parthenius*, which preserves the name of Partheni, to the river *Haly*s before mentioned. Adjacent to the *Euxine* on the north, it is contiguous on the south to *Galatia*. Till the time of the Trojan war this country was occupied by the *Heneti*, who are pretended to have afterwards passed into Italy, in confounding their name with that of the *Veneti*.

To enter into a detail of this country, we must first recount its maritime cities. *Amastris*, situated advantageously in a peninsula, bore the name of the niece of the last king of Persia of the name of Darius, whom a Greek, tyrant of *Heraclea-Pontica*, had married; the term tyrant being peculiarly applied in antiquity to an usurper of the sovereignty of a free state.—An ancient city called *Sesamus*, to which this princess subjected many other cities in its environs, also assumed her name, which it still preserves under the form of *Amasreh*.—But the most celebrated of the cities adjacent to the sea was *Sinope*, naturally strong by its situation in a narrow isthmus of a peninsula, which afforded it two ports. Inconsiderable however in remote antiquity, this city owed its aggrandizement to a Milesian colony, before it fell under the domination of the kings of Pontus, who made it their ordinary residence. It preserves its name under the form of *Sinub*.

In the interior of Paphlagonia there is found no position which will better represent *Germanicopolis* than that of *Kastamoni*, which was seized from its native prince by Mahommed II.—*Pompeïopolis* had mines of

ASIA MINOR.

SECT. I.

Sandarac or orpiment, the foliations of which were deemed poisonous.—There is an ambiguity concerning the limits of Paphlagonia and Galatia. *Gangra* was the metropolis of the former province under the lower empire; yet the local position of this city, and the circumstance of its having been the residence of a Galatian prince, as king Dejoratus, seem to favour the claim of Galatia during the ages of antiquity.

PONTUS. *Pontus* was a dismemberment from *Cappadocia*, as a separate satrapy under the kings of Persia, till it was erected into a kingdom about 300 years before the Christian æra. The name of *Leuco-Syri*, or White Syrians, which was given to the Cappadocians, extended to a people who inhabited Pontus: and it is plainly seen that the term *Pontus* distinguishes the maritime people from those who dwelt in the Mediterranean country.—This great space, extending to *Colchis*, formed under the Roman empire two provinces: the one encroaching on *Paphlagonia* on the side of *Sinope*, was distinguished by the term *Prima*, and afterwards by the name of *Helenopontus*, from Helen, mother of Constantine; the other was called *Pontus Polemoniacus*, from the name of Polémon, which had been that of a race of kings; the last of which made a formal cession of his state to Nero.

Leaving the mouths of the Halys, the shore of the sea conducts to *Amisus*, a Greek city, but which, subjected in the sequel to the kings of Pontus, was aggrandized by Mithridates with a quarter called from the surname he bore, *Eupatoria*, that is *Kind Father*; and Samsoun, as it is now called, preserves the ancient site. The sea here forms a kind of gulf, which from the name of *Amisus* was called *Amiseus Sinus*; and Asia, being consider-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



dwelling attributed to the Amazons. This country is inhabited by a people almost savage, named Djanik.—*Polemonium* may have owed this name to the first Polemōn, who was established king of this country by Marc Antony. This city, adjacent to the promontory of *Phadisana*, appears to derive therefrom its modern name of *Vatista*, where the river *Sidenus* meets the sea, after having given the name of *Sidena* to the district which it traverses.—*Cerasus* is a city existing under the name of *Keresoun*: if we may credit an historian, it was from *Cerasus* that Lucullus, in his war with Mithridates, brought into Europe a fruit tree hitherto unknown, which was thence called *cerasum*, or cherry.—*Trapezus*, a very celebrated Greek city, apparently owed its name to the regular geometrical figure of that denomination which its wall assumed, on a point of land projected in the sea. It was the residence of a prince of the race of Comnenes, when it fell, in the reign of Mahommed II, under the domination of the Turks, who, according to their pronunciation in such cases, call it *Tarembezoun* or *Trebisond*.—The river named *Bathys*, or the Deep, which appears also under the name of *Acampis*, now *Batheun*, separates *Pontus* from *Colchis*.

Advancing from *Trebisond* into the interior country, a place given on a Roman way under the name of *Byla*, may correspond with that which from its mines the Turks call *Gumish-kaneh*, or the House of Silver.—The name of *Tehea*, in this canton, discloses that of *Teches*, from which the ten thousand Greeks had the first view of the sea in their memorable retreat.—A chain of mountains, by which the *Euphrates* seems constrained to take a southern course, were named *Scydisse*; and described

as rugged and inaccessible. For the same quality of extreme asperity they are now distinguished by the name of Aggidag, or the Bitter Mountain.—Different names distinguish the people in the vicinity of the sea. The *Mosynæci*, who imprinted spots on their skins, derived their name from the form of their habitations, which were towers built of wood. There is mention, in Xenophon's retreat, of the *Drylæ* as adjacent to Trebisond. These nations received the general name of *Chalybes*, from being occupied in the forging of iron. They are mentioned by Strabo under the name of *Chaldæi*; and all this country, distributed into deep vallies and precipitate mountains, is still called Keldir. The character of the people corresponded with the face of the country as above described; which was composed of *Hepta-cometæ*, or seven communities.

LYDIA, PHRYGIA, GALATIA, CAPPADOCIA.

LYDIA ET IONIA. We now treat of what fills the intermediate space between the northern part which has preceded, and the southern which is to follow. On this space, which should conduct us from the shores of the *Ægean Sea* to the banks of the *Euphrates*, *Lydia* is the first country, in proceeding thus from west to east. It is bounded by *Mysia* on the north, *Phrygia* on the east, and *Caria* on the south. The name of *Mæonia* was also common to it: but leaving equivocal distinctions, we may affirm that the *Lydi* and *Mæones* were the same nation. The borders of the sea having been occupied by *Ionian* colonies, about 900 years before the Christian æra, took the name of *Ionia*, whose maritime situation will necessarily precede in our detail the interior of *Lydia*.

Ephesus, the most illustrious city of Asia, was founded by a son of Codrus, king of Athens; was adorned with a superb temple, constructed by common contribution of the Asiatic cities; and was the residence of a Roman proconsul, whose jurisdiction respected a province of great extent, under the name of *Asia*. It is now a mass of ruins, under the name of Aiosoluc, which is an alteration of Agio-Theologos, or Saint Theologian; an epithet which the modern Greeks have given to St. John, founder of the church of this city. Its position is at some distance from the sea, and from the mouth of the river *Caystrus*, called by the Turks Kitchik Meinder, or the little Meander.—*Smyrna*, which did not enter into the association of the Ionic cities till the establishment had been some time formed, took its name from an Amazon. This city, which disputed with several others the honour of giving birth to Homer, is well known to be the greatest emporium of commerce in that part of the Ottoman empire, it preserves its name in the form of Ismir, which the Turks have thus altered to avoid the combination of the two initial consonants, the pronunciation of which, from their organs being inveterate in contrary habits, they find difficult to compass.—*Phocæa*, founded by Athenians, was the remotest of the Ionic cities towards *Æolis*. We know that *Phocæa* was the parent of Marseilles, by an emigration of its inhabitants from the oppression of one of the generals of Cyrus, named Harpagus. The name of Fochia remains to its ancient site, although a new town of the same name is a little distant from it, towards the gulf of Smyrna.—*Cuma*, or *Cyme*, which follows, was the most powerful of the *Æolic* colonies, at the head of a gulf called *Cumæus Sinus*; and there are vestiges of this city in a place called Nemourt.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

ASIA MINOR.

SECT. I.

Ionic union, we should speak of Miletus, if this city were not rather comprised within the limits of Caria: and *Myus*, above the mouth of the Meander, was of the same foundation. But we must now quit this famous colony to survey the interior of Lydia.

Sardes was the capital of a kingdom which extended to the river Halys, when Cyrus conquered it from Cræsus; and under the kings of Persia it became the residence of the Satraps of Asia. It was seated at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, now called by the Turks Bouzdag, or the Cold Mountain. The river that watered this territory was named *Pactolus*, which in the time of Strabo rolled no more sands of gold; whence it was idly supposed formerly proceeded the treasures of Cræsus. *Sardes* is said to be represented by a small place named Sart, which preserves some vestiges of antiquity.—*Hyrceanians* transported under the kings of Persia from the borders of the Caspian Sea into the plain north of the *Hermus*, had given the name of *Hyrkania* to a city, which that now named Marmora is supposed to have replaced.—*Magnesia*, which was surnamed *Sypilia*, was situated at the foot of mount *Sypilus*, on the left of the *Hermus*. It is near this city that Antiochus the Great was defeated by Scipio Asiaticus; and Magnisa, as it is now called, having been the residence of the Ottoman Sultans, is still a considerable place.—*Thyatria*, towards the frontier of Mysia, and which received a Macedonian colony, is now called Ak-hisar, or the White Castle.—In the plain which the *Caystrus* traverses, another city, under the modern name of Tireh, appears to have been the *Metropolis* of Lydia.—In ascending the Meander to the limits of Lydia, *Tripolis* appears to have been situated

SECT. I.

ASIA MINOR.

in a place where this river receives another that comes out of Phrygia.—*Philadelphia*, which owed this name to a brother of Eumenes, king of Pergamus, was situated immediately under the extremity of a branch of Tmolus; but was constructed with little solidity in its edifices, as being extremely subject to earthquakes. These phenomena were most dreadful in their effects in the seventeenth year of the Christian æra; for then twelve of the principal cities of Asia, particularly *this* and *Sardes* were nearly destroyed. A great tract of country, which from Mysia extended in Phrygia, being at all times most exposed to these disasters, was called *Catakecaumene*, or the Burnt Country. It must be said to the honour of Philadelphia, that when all the country had sunk under the Ottoman yoke, it still resisted, and yielded only to the efforts of Bajazet I, or Ilderim. The Turks call it *Alah-Shehr*, or the Beautiful City*; probably by reason of its situation.

PHRYGIA ET LYCAONIA. Succeeding to *Lydia*, towards the east, *Phrygia* is one of the principal countries in what is called Asia Minor. The *Phryges* were of Thracian origin, according to Strabo; and their first establishments, from the time that Gordius and Midas reigned over this nation, were towards the sources of the *Sangar*, which divided their territory from Bithynia, according to the report of the same author. It is to this part, although at first but of small extent compared with

* Rather the divine city, according to the common interpretation of the sacramental word *Allah*.

its subsequent expansion, that the name of the *Greater Phrygia* is given by distinction from a *Phrygia Minor*, which encroached on *Mysia* towards the *Hellespont*, and was thus denominated from *Phrygians* who occupied this country after the destruction of *Troy*. The testimony of *Strabo* is explicit; and if the *Trojans* are called *Phrygians* by *Virgil*, they became so by usurpation; and that accidental event will not justify us in obliterating the distinction between *Mysia* and *Phrygia*, as provinces. But by a dismemberment which the kingdom of *Bithynia* suffered on the part of the Romans, and to the advantage of the kings of *Pergamus*, this part of the territory, which was *Phrygian*, assumed under these kings the name of *Epictetus*, or *Phrygia by acquisition*. The territory which *Phrygia* possessed towards the south, and contiguous to *Pisidia* and *Lycia*, appears to have been called *Paroreias*, denoting it in the Greek to be in the vicinity of mountains.—In the subdivision of provinces that took place in the time of *Constantine*, we distinguish two *Phrygias*; one surnamed *Pacatiana*, the other *Salutaris*; and *Laodicea* appears to have been metropolis in the *first*, and *Synnada* in the *second*.

It is singular that, on entering upon the detail of the principal cities of this country, we cannot begin with those that belonged to its first occupants. The *Galatians* having diffused themselves in *Phrygia*, the canton where the *Phrygians* originally settled, decisively makes a part of *Galatia*, which forms a distinct province among those that divide the continent.—A city which commerce had rendered sufficiently flourishing to yield this advantage only to *Ephesus*, was *Aphamea*, surnamed *Cibotus*, or the *Coffer*, and situated at the confluence of the little river



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



beginning towards the close of the eleventh century. The country which they oppressed, called Karaman, in its present state of a Beglerbeglic of the Ottoman empire, extends from the limits of Anadoli to those of a country distinguished by the name of Roum; which we shall describe in treating of Cappadocia.—A vast plain which extends upon the limits of Galatia, is so dry and scarce of water, that Strabo remarks this necessary element to be sold in a place called *Soatra*, or *Sabatra*. The *Tutta Palus*, a salt pool, mentioned by the same author, in this plain, is called Tuzla; a term, in the language of the Turks, signifying the quality of its waters.

GALATIA. It is adjacent towards the north to *Bithynia* and *Paphlagonia*. The *Sangar* and the *Halys* traverse the contiguous extremities of these provinces. We see in history, that about two hundred and seventy years before the Christian æra, a handful of *Gauls*, detached from a great emigration, led by Brennus, passed into Asia by crossing the *Hellespont*. After having laid under contribution all the country on this side of mount *Taurus*, these *Gauls* cantoned themselves in a part of *Phrygia*, extending to the confines of *Cappadocia*. And, as there had been previous establishments formed by the Greeks, with whom the strangers had mingled, the conquered country obtained the name also of *Gallo-Græcia*. However, they had so well preserved the distinction, that their language appeared to St. Jerome, about six hundred years after their migration, the same with that spoken at his time in Treves*. This nation was

* Pinkerton, who has written professedly upon the migrations of the parent nations, seems to prove that these Galatians

SECT. I.

ASIA MINOR.

composed of three people; the *Tolisto-boii*, confining on *Phrygia*, called *Epictetus*; the *Trocmi*, on the side of *Cappadocia*; and the *Tectosages*, occupying the intermediate territory. Among many cotemporary princes, called Tetrarchs, who ruled in *Galatia*, Dejotarus, favoured by Pompey, and not less so by Cæsar, usurped the government of the whole, and assumed the title of King. But a kingdom that Amyntas, a creature of Antony, possessed, and which beyond *Galatia*, extended in *Lycaonia* and *Pisidia*, was re-united to the empire by Augustus, after the battle of Actium. As to the occurrences of later times, *Galatia* was not divided into two provinces before the reign of Theodosius.

Ancyra, among the *Tectosages*, is the first city of *Galatia*. It received many favours from Augustus; and Angoura, as it is now called, still preserves a magnificent inscription, reciting the principal circumstances of the life of that prince. It is in these environs that Bajazet was vanquished, and made prisoner by Timur. This city is distinguished by a much esteemed manufacture of cam-clots of goats'-hair which numerous herds of these animals furnish in this canton, inhabited by Türkmans, and

were not originally Gauls, but Germans, who having conquered a part of Gaul, were thus denominated to distinguish them from other Goths; as the Arabs of Mauretania are called Maures; and the English, Britons. He also considers the evidence of St. Jerome as decisive with regard to their Germanic origin; for it is well known that, in the time of this father, the German was the popular language at Treves, as it now is. Their leaders too were called Lomnoriis and Lotharius, names in themselves purely Gothic, though disguised under Roman terminations.

named Tchourgoud-ili.—*Pessinus*, which appears to have been near the Sangar, in the country occupied by the *Tolistoboians*, was a sanctuary of the worship which the Phrygians rendered to the mother of the gods, or Cybele, whose simulacrum, or idol, was transported from this city to Rome during the second Punic War. Augustus elevated *Pessinus* to the dignity of metropolis in *second Galatia*, surnamed *Salutaris*.—*Gordium* is another place of consideration, in quality of the ancient residence of the kings of this country; and its situation on the Sangar admits not of the doubt which some of the learned have suggested concerning it. It had declined into a very small place, called *Gordiu-come*, when it was aggrandized under the name of *Juliopolis*, in the reign of Augustus; and the injury that the walls of this city received from the course of the Sangar, was repaired by Justinian. But we reluctantly confess the deficiency of actual information concerning this and the preceding position.—*Amorium* was a considerable city when it was taken and sacked by the Khalif Matosem, in the year 223 of the Hegira, and in the 837th of the Christian æra; an event that did not however preclude the mention of Amora by the Arabian geographers many ages after.—In following the track of a Roman way which from Ancyra conducts into Cilicia, a place is found under the name of Gorbaga, which indicates *Gorbæus*, the residence of a prince whom Déjotarus put to death. This way leads to *Tavium*, otherwise *Tavia*, which was the principal city of the *Trocmians*, the remotest of the Galatian people; and a place now called Tchoroum represents it.—The whole north side of Galatia is covered with a chain of mountains; among which



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

domain to the *Euphrates*. An union with the Armenian nation caused the part adjacent to the river to assume the name of *Armenia Minor*, but in a manner indeterminate, and much more contracted at first than in posterior times, when by the division of Cappadocia into four or five provinces, the name of *Armenia* was extended to two of them, as will be shown in speaking of the metropolitan cities.

Mazaca, capital of Cappadocia, in a particular canton called *Cilicia*, took the name of *Cæsarea* under *Tiberius*, without losing its former denomination. It is surnamed *Ad Argæum*, being situated at the foot of Mount *Argæus*, from whose summit, it is said, both the Euxine and Mediterranean Seas may be seen. Some difference is thought to be distinguished between the site of the ancient city of *Cæsarea*, and the modern one of *Kaisarieh*. The river *Halys* on the other side of Mount *Argæus*, cannot be far distant, since the devastation brought on the territory of *Cæsarea* by the inundations of this river, occasioned a remission of the customary tribute.—*Mocissus* must be noticed, being known by this name at the time of its re-edification by *Justinian*, who made it the metropolis of the *third Cappadocia*, giving it the name of *Justinianopolis*, which it has not retained: for this place is found under the name of *Moucious*, at some distance from the passage of the *Halys*.—In the environs of a place named *Bour*, the vestiges of an ancient castle appear to be the fortress of *Nora*, or *Neroassus*; where *Eumenes*, who had been secretary to *Alexander*, sustained a siege against the forces of *Antigonus*—A branch of the river *Halys* issues from one of the gorges of *Taurus*, and the *Sarus* rushes

SECT. I.

ASIA MINOR.

through another, before entering Cilicia. At the sources of these rivers the mountain prolongs one of its chains towards the north, called *Anti-Taurus*, by opposition to the more dominant ridge that encompasses a particular country called *Cataonia*.—Two principal cities in this country were *Tyana* and *Comona*. The former was elevated to the dignity of metropolis in the second *Cappadocia*; and was remarkable for producing a celebrated pretender, named Apollonius. The other was distinguished by a college devoted to the worship of Bellona or Diana, the pontiff of which was a sovereign prince, who only yielded in dignity to the kings of Cappadocia. The *Sarus* issuing from *Anti-Taurus* passed through this city; which the position of a place named *El Bostan*, or the Garden, appears to represent. There is no positive knowledge of the site of *Tyana*; and it may be proper to add, that this is the city which appears under the name of *Dana*, in the march of the younger Cyrus.—*Podandus* preserves its name in *Podando*. This place was much decried for the rudeness of its situation; it being buried among the mountains, which here form a defile that affords a difficult passage from *Cataonia* into *Cilicia*.—*Cucusus*, the gloomy place of exile of St. John Chrysostom, situated likewise in one of the gorges of *Taurus*, is named *Coccon*; and through these defiles lay the routes of the crusades towards Syria.—It requires more actual knowledge of the country than we possess, to indicate the positions of *Ariathia*, the residence of many kings.—The principal Roman camp in *Melitene*, one of the greatest prefectures of this country, took the form of a city under Trajan, with the same name; and in the division of

the lesser Armenia into two provinces, *Melitené* became metropolis of the *second*. Situated between the rivers Euphrates and *Melas*, it subsists in the name of Malaria. — We must now pass to *Sebaste*, which being under Mithridates but a castle named *Cabira*, became a city under Pompey. The name which it still keeps, and which in Greek has the same signification with *Augusta* in Latin, was given to it, in honour of Augustus, by the queen dowager of Polemon, king of Pontus. The river Halys flows in its vicinity; and Mount *Paryadres*, is not far distant towards the north. Sivas, as it is now called was the metropolis of the *first Armenia*; and was cruelly treated by Timur, who erased its ramparts, which a Seljukid Sultan had erected. It is now but an inconsiderable place, although the residence of a Beglerbeg, whose government extends over the country distinguished from *Karaman*, and *Anadoli* by the name of *Roum*. This denomination, which was extended to the whole Greek empire by the Arabian Khalifs, is now confined to this territory, which formed its eastern frontier.—In the vicinity of *Sebaste* there is mention made of an almost inexpugnable fortress, situated on a steep rock among deep valleys, and where Mithridates had deposited his principal treasures. Its name, which was *Novus*, is retained by the Armenians in the form of *Hesen-Now*; but the Turks call it *Kadj-hisar*.—*Nicopolis* in Armenia Minor constructed by Pompey, after having forced Mithridates to retire to the *Acilisene* on the banks of the Euphrates, cannot be referred to any other position than that of a city, whose modern name of *Divriki* is the same with *Tephricé* in the Byzantians, although *Tephricé* and *Nicopolis* be found separately mentioned



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



thought extraordinary that the actual state of a city, once so illustrious, should be unknown; for it is an erroneous opinion that a place named Palatsa represents it. It may be added, to the honour of *Miletus*, that Thales who laid the foundations of philosophy among the Greeks, to whom the sciences owed their nurture, was one of its citizens.—Crossing a narrow space of country which separates the *Iassus Sinus* from another which succeeds, we find *Halicarnassus*, a city of Greek foundation, which became the residence of the kings of Caria; and which was ornamented with a superb tomb, erected by Artemisia to king Mausolus, her husband. The birth of Herodotus, the most ancient of the Greek historians, as that of the famous philologist and antiquary Dionysius, and the defence made by *Halicarnassus* when besieged by Alexander, are circumstances which contribute to the fame of this city. On the spot that it occupies is a castle named Bodroun, which appears to have been erected by the knights of Malta, whose possessions extended on the coasts of the continent, as well as to the adjacent isles.—Near a long-projected promontory named *Troptium*, now Cape Crio, was the city of *Cnidus*, distinguished heretofore for the devotion rendered to Venus, and now exhibiting but a mass of ruins.—This canton of Caria, having been occupied by Dorians, was named *Doris*; and the sea there forms a gulf which was called *Doridis Sinus*. Its contiguity to Rhodes admitted of the establishment of a ferry.

All that is known of *Alabanda*, one of the principal cities in the interior of Caria, is, that it was not far distant from the Meander.—The site of *Aphrodisias* is found in a place named Gheira; and that of *Stratonicea*

SECT. I.

ASIA MINOR.

in Eski-Shehr, or the Old Town. The first had the rank of metropolis, in the province of Caria; the second aggrandized under the kings of Syria, owed its name to Stratonice, wife to Antiochus Soter.—*Mylasa*, a considerable city, where Jupiter was honoured with a particular worship by the Carians, subsists under the same name, although the quarries in its vicinity have caused it also to be called Marmora. The city is situated at some distance from the sea; and its port, named *Physcus*, retains the name of Physco.

But this article of Caria cannot be concluded without some notice of the adjacent isles of the Ægean Sea. The name of *Sporades* is applied to them in general, to signify that they are dispersed. *Pathmos*, *Leros*, and *Calymna*, preserve their names; with a small alteration in the last, which is pronounced Calmine. It is well known how much the circumstance of the banishment of St. John, the apostle of the churches of Asia, has illustrated the first of these isles, but little remarkable in itself.—*Cos*, a considerable isle off the Ceramic gulf, had the glory of producing Hippocrates and Apelles, two men who held the first rank in their respective faculties. It preserves its name in the form of Stan-Co, where the preposition of place is recognised; but, by a depravation singularly gross, it is called Lango by Europeans.—The isle of *Rhodes* has a well-earned celebrity: the Rhodians signalized themselves particularly in the marine; and the services rendered by them to the Romans, in the war against the last king of Syria, procured them extensive possessions on the continent. *Lindus*, *Camirus*, and *Ialysus*, had preceded in this isle the

foundation of a city named *Rhodus*, which remounts no higher than the Peloponnesian war, or about four hundred years before the Christian æra. It was in vain that Demetrius, surnamed Poliorcetes, or the Taker of Cities, held it besieged for a year. Having successfully resisted Mohammed, II., it yield at length to the efforts of Soliman, II., in 1522. The colossal statue of Apollo erected by the Rhodians at the entrance of their port has also contributed to their renown. It may be added, that Lindo and Camiro are still names known in the isle of Rhodes;—The little isle of *Carpathus*, now Scarpanto, lying in the mid channel between Rhodes and Crete, had given to this channel the name of *Carpathium Mare*.

LYCIA. Contained between two gulfs, *Lycia* is bordered by the sea on three sides; and Mountains which extend their branches in various directions through the country, cover it on the other side. It is recorded of the *Lycii*, that having ports favourable for navigation, they had preferred the establishment of a good administration to the example of their neighbours of *Pamphylia* and *Cilicia*, who were addicted to piracy.

At the head of the gulf which confines Lycia on the side of Caria, *Talmissus*, which was famed for very skilful magicians, takes a position similar to that which is given to a modern city named Macri.—*Zanthus*, the greatest city of Lycia, was situated upon a river of the same name, at some distance from the sea; and it is evident that the modern name of Eksenide, in the same position, is only an alteration of the primitive form.—Near the sea, *Patara* (or as it is now pronounced, Patera,) was in possession of an oracle: between which and that of Delos it was pretended that Apollo equally divided his pre-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

The *Cestrus* conducts at some distance from the sea to *Perga*, which took the rank of Metropolis in the province of *Pamphylia*, and which appears to be concealed under the Turkish denomination of Kara-hisar, or the Black Castle, in a district call Tekieh.—Ranging along the coast we find *Side*, which seems to have taken precedence of *Perga*; for, when *Pamphylia* was divided into two provinces; it became metropolis of the *first*. A port covered with many little isles and called Candeloro, appears to correspond with this position.—Beyond the river *Melas*, or the Black, the limits of *Pamphylia* are extremely equivocal: *Coracesium* being attributed to *Cilicia*; and in another time, *Sydra*, which is more remote; being given to *Pamphylia*. On this shore there exists a place named Alanieh, seated on a rock that overlooks the sea, as *Poracesium* is described in antiquity; and although this place owes its present state to a Seljukide Sultan, it may be esteemed more ancient, and the same as the Castle Ubaldo of the marine atlases.

Advancing towards the interior country, we find *Termessus*, on the intermediate limits of *Pamphylia* and *Pisidia*, situated before the défiles that gave entrance to the country of *Mylas*, which was mentioned in concluding the article of *Lycia*. It was the centre of the little territory of *Cabalia*; bounded by *Lycia* and *Pamphylia*, and inhabited by the *Solimi*. This position appears to correspond with that of a place at the foot of mountains, whose name of *Estenaz* may be derived from a Greek word signifying defiles.—In the interior of *Pisidia*, now named *Hamid*, *Premna*, a strong place where the Romans established a colony, appears to preserve its name

in that of Kebrinaz, which has an ancient castle on a high mount.—Between this place and Sagalessus, was *Sandalium*, a fortress that no invader ever insulted.—The greatest city of Pisidia was *Selga*, of Lacedemonian foundation, and which had become so powerful as to be able to arm twenty thousand men. It appears to be ascribed to Pamphylia, in a posterior age; but the site which it occupied is now unknown.

Isauria was a country adjacent to Pisidia; and the Isaurians were distinguished from the Pisidians by the violence and rapine which they exercised on their neighbours. Servilius, who was charged with the conduct of the war in this country, and who acquired from its success the name of Isauricus, destroyed their capital called *Isauria*; which Amyntas, of whom Galatia has given us occasion to speak, re-established, after having dislodged a partisan who in this country held *Derbe* and *Lystra*. The name of *Derb* properly denotes a gate; and this place may be represented by that called *Alahdag*, at the passage of a high mountain. Among the places that are known at this day in Isauria, *Ber Shehri*, on a lake, is the principal; and above this, a position near another lake preserves in the name of *Kērali*, that of *Ceratis*.—We shall see that the name of *Isauria* has become proper to a part of *Cilicia*.

CILICIA. Overlooked by the ridge of *Taurus* on the northern side, *Cilicia* borders the sea on the south, to the limits of *Syria*. The *Cilices* are first mentioned at a time when the weakness of the kings of Syria, and the divisions in their house, permitted this nation to exercise piracy with impunity; a practice which could not but be agreeable to the Ptolemies, enemies to the Se-

leucides, and which was not at first an object directly interesting to the Romans. But the predatory power, which extended to the maritime places as well as on the seas, having grown to such a height as to brave the Romans on the shores of Italy, Servilius Isauricus was sent to destroy the pirates. He, however, merely began the work, which Pompey finished by a naval victory under *Coracesium*, and the consequent capture of this city.

A part of *Cilicia*, extremely rude and mountainous, was distinguished by the name of *Trachea*, which expresses in Greek its topical character of ruggedness; and this is the first that presents itself after Pamphylia. A conformity of the aspect of the country with that of *Isauria*, just described caused this name to pass by continuity into this part of Cilicia, which appears thus denominated in the notices of the eastern empire. Among the Turks it is called *Itch-il*, which signifies an interior country.—On the coast, *Selinas* occurs at the mouth of a river of the same name; and which, for having been the place where the emperor Trajan died, assumed the name of *Trajanopolis*; but it has since retaken its primitive denomination in the form of *Selenti*.—At the foot of a steep mountain near the sea, and named *Cragus*, as that in Lycia, an *Antiochia* has taken the diminutive form of *Antiocheta*.—As to the inland positions, *Homonada*, on the confines of *Isauria*, in a situation very proper for a strong fortress, retains, under the name of *Ermenak*, a castle hewn out of a rock, and less disfigured by time or violence than most others of the same antiquity.—We could wish to ascertain, with equal precision the situation of *Olba*, in the country named *Cetis*; as



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



lems it became the frontier of the two empires, and received new fortifications from the Khalif Haroun Al-Rashid. It exists under the name of Tarsous, but as subordinate to Adana, and even comprised in the modern district of this city.—*Adana* preserves its name and position on the river *Sarus*, or *Seihoun*, as it is now called. This river, after opening to itself a passage through Mount Taurus, and forming thereby the famous defile known under the name of *Pylæ Cilicia*, or the gates of Cilicia, renders itself into the sea where the shore retires so as to form two points called *Sari Capita* or the Heads of Sarus.—Ascending the same river, we find *Antazarbus*, which also bore the name of *Cæsarea*, particularly distinguished in this country; and on the division of Cilicia into two provinces, under the younger Theodosius, this city was elevated to the rank of metropolis in the *second Cilicia*; *Tarsus* preserving that dignity in the *first*.—*Germanicia* is recognized in the position of Marash; for we know that this city, now the chief place of a great government, is also called *Banicia*, by alteration of the ancient name; and detaching it from Cilicia, it has also been comprised in a province of Syria, called *Euphratesien*.—The country that we have just been viewing, and its environs, correspond with that which, in the time of the crusades, was called the kingdom of *Leon*, from the name of many Armenian princes; the first of whom arrived at the regal dignity towards the close of the twelfth century.—Returning towards the sea, *Issus*, the famous scene of a great victory of Alexander over Darius, and which gives the name of *Issicus Sinus* to a gulf of the Mediterranean that penetrates deepest into the continent, retains its

name under the form of *Aïasse*; and the river *Pinarus*, which is in the neighbourhood, is now named *Deli-sou*. — *Licopolis*, appears to owe this name to a famous victory also; although its position, distant from the sea, does not represent the field of battle: a place named *Kenisat-asound*, or the *Black Church*, now occupies this site, which retained its ancient defences when the *Khalif Haroun Al-Rashid* fortified it. — The torrent named *Carsus* is found in the name of *Mahersi*, or *Ma-kersi*; and the traveller has only to cross it to find himself enclosed between *Mount Amanus* and the sea. It is here that *Cilicia* terminates; this passage being called *Syriæ Pylæ*, or the *Gates of Syria*. It concludes also our description of this part of *Asia*; which, as well from the extent of the subject, as from the importance and celebrity of the objects that are contained in it, could not be treated with more brevity.

SECTION SECOND.

COLCHIS, IBERIA, ALBANIA, ET ARMENIA.*

GURIA, MINGREL, IMERITI, GEORGIA, AND ARMENIA, OR
DIAR-BEKR BY THE ARABS.

COLCHIS. This country, which the *fable* of the *Golden Fleece*, and the expedition of *Jason* and the *Argonauts*, have rendered famous in remote antiquity, borders the head of the *Euxine Sea*: being bounded on the east by *Iberia*, and covered by *Caucasus* towards the north. In the time of the *Lower Empire* the same country was

* This *Armenia* has commonly the addition of *Major*, to distinguish it from *Armenia Minor*, which belonged to *Cappadocia*, as we have seen. Q

COLCHIS, &c.

SECT. II.

called *Lazica*; and the name of *Colchi* appears to have been replaced by that of the *Lazi*, which anteriorly was only proper to a particular nation, comprised in the limits of what is now named Guria, on the southern bank of the Faz. That which is now known under the name of Mingrel, or Odisci, on the Black Sea, from the mouth of the *Phasis* ascending towards the north, is only a part of *Colchis*, as is that more inland towards the frontier of Georgia, and called *Meriti*.—Colchis is watered by a great number of rivers, whereof mention is made in the ancient monuments, but which are of too small importance to obtain notice here.

To enter upon some detail of positions, we must first speak of a city of Greek foundation, as having existed under the name of *Phasis*, at the mouth of the river of the same name.—On this river too, at some distance from the sea, *Æa* had been known to the Argonauts.—But the principal city of Colchis, and the native place of Medea, was *Cyta*, now Cotatis, on the *Rheon*, a little above its junction with the *Phasis*.—There is no mention of *Archæopolis* till the reign of Justinian; yet as the principal place of the *Lazi*, and which defended itself against the Persians, it may be interesting to remark, that its position accords with that which in Mingrel is distinguished as an asylum of the princes of the country, under the name of Ruki.—On the shore of the sea, *Dioscurias*, also named *Sebastopolis*, was in the earliest age the port most frequented in Colchis by distant as well as neighbouring nations, speaking different languages; a circumstance that still distinguishes Iskuriah, whose name is only a depravation of the ancient denomination.—The last place of the country was *Pityas*, the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

great river called *Cyrus*, issuing from the frontier of Armenia, traverses all this country to the limits of Albania; after having received the *Araxes*, it discharges itself into the *Caspian Sea* by two mouths, which retain the name of *Kur*. *Iberia* was not subjected to the Medes or Persians; nor could it have been well known in the west before the Roman arms, under the conduct of Pompey, penetrated through *Albania*, to the *Caspian Sea*; or till the affairs of *Armenia* occasioned discord with the kings of this country.

In a narrow pass at the entrance of the country, where the *Cyrus* receives another river named *Aragus*, were two cities at no great distance from each other; *Harmozica* on the greater river, and *Seumara* on the less; and it may be presumed that these places were in the neighbourhood of *Alkalzike*, the capital of a government on this frontier of the Turkish empire.—We should be glad to discover the position of *Zalissa*, which is mentioned by Ptolemy as the capital of *Iberia*.—On the frontier of *Colchis*, a place called *Ideessa* had borne the name of *Phrixus*, which, according to Greek fables, was antecedent to the arrival of the Argonauts in the country.—In the remotest part of *Iberia*, towards the north is a narrow passage through the mountains, called *Pyla Caucasæ*, which was closed with a gate, and defended by a fortress named *Cumania*: and the bed of a torrent traversed this defile. A vast country, consisting of plains, stretches from these mountains as far as the *Palus Mæotis*; and it was to shut the entrance of *Iberia* against the Sarmatian nations assembled in these plains, that this passage was fortified. Under the lower empire these nations, among whom we distinguish the Sa-

biri, are called Huns. In the time of Justinian, the fortress was in the possession of a Hunnic prince, and it is found cited in an Armenian manuscript under the name of Hounnora-Kert.

ALBANIA. *Albania* extends from *Iberia* eastward along the *Caspian Sea* to the *Cyrus*, which appears to separate it from *Media Atropatena*; and its limits remount this river to a stream, which it receives towards the frontier of *Iberia*, and whose name of *Alazon* it yet retains.—The country was divided among many nations, which Pompey found united under a king. The people inhabiting *Albania*, less inclined to agriculture than those of *Iberia*, were occupied principally in the feeding of cattle. There is mention in antiquity of the *Leges*, or *Legæ*, as a Scythian people of *Caucasus*, near the sea, and contiguous to *Albania*.

According to Pliny the principal city of *Albania* was *Cabalaca*, which name is found in that of *Kablas-var*, on a river named *Samura*: and as this river is the greatest in the centre of the country, it may represent the *Albanus fluvius* of Ptolemy. A maritime city, under the name of *Albana*, might be represented by *Niasabad*, if a position more northern than the river, according to Ptolemy, did not suit better with that of *Derbend*.—If a maritime city be sought for distant towards the south, to correspond with that of *Getara* in Ptolemy, *Baku* will be found to agree in the local circumstances, being a place remarkable for the springs of naphtha or bitumen in its environs.—The object most remarkable in *Albania* is a defile between a promontory of *Caucasus* and the sea; the passage of which is closed by the interpo-

sition of a city, named by the Persians Der-bend; by the Turks, Demir-capi, or the Gate of Iron; and by the Arabs, Bab-al-Abuab, or the Gate of Gates. This situation suits the application of the name of *Albania Pylæ*, or the Gates of Albania. Adjacent as they are to the Caspian Sea, the name of *Caspia Pylæ* would appear more proper to these than to the gates of Iberia, before mentioned, to which the Romans, nevertheless, who during the war in Armenia, under Corbulo, had prepared maps of the country, applied this name of *Caspian*. But a defile conducting, according to Strabo, from Albania into Iberia, and which must be the *Albania Pylæ* that we see in Ptolemy; at a distance from the sea, is a topical circumstance at this day well known; there being a similar passage through the Daghestan into the Kaketi of Georgia, and named in the country Tup, Karagan.

ARMENIA. *Armenia* extends from the Euphrates eastward to the place where the Kur and Aras unite their streams, not far from their mouth. It is contiguous on the north to the three other countries assembled in this section, and which fill all the interval between the Euxine and Caspian Seas. Towards the south it is bounded by *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, and *Media*. It is a country much diversified with mountains and plains. The Euphrates and Tigris have here their sources; and the Aras traverses the principal part of the country from west to east.—The fables published by the Greeks concerning the origin of this nation, and the name of the country, merit not the least consideration. Armenia appears to have been successively subjected to the great monarchies of the East: to that of the Medes, after the Assy-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



mountains inhabited by the *Tzani*, whose name was *Sanni*, according to the most ancient notice of this nation.—The situation of Ispira on this river indicates that of *Hispiratis*, which Strabo speaks of as containing mines of gold.

We now revert to the course of the *Aras*. It receives on the left shore a river which comes from an ancient city, whose present name of Anisi refers to that of *Abnicum* of the Byzantine historians. As to the name of the river, which is Harpasou, it scarcely differs from the *Harphasus* that we find in Xenophon, immediately after the passage of the Phasis, which we have remarked to be the *Aras*.—Descending the *Aras* a little, we encounter *Arnavria*, or *Armavir*, as the Armenians pronounce it; which, in their tradition, is an ancient royal city. But it is still lower, and in a bend of the river, that the Armenian city most distinguished in history existed under the name of *Artaxata*, which it received from king Artaxias. This city is no longer in being, but its site is known.—If the tradition of the country is to be credited, another royal city, to which the king Valarsaces, brother to the second of the Parthian Arsacides, had given the name of *Valarsapat*, existed in the place where the patriarchal church of Eksmiazin is now found. The population of these places has been exhausted to supply Erivan, now the predominant city in their neighbourhood.—Naksivan is a city distinguished in Armenia, by the opinion of its being constructed soon after the deluge; and we find *Naxuana* in Ptolemy. The country here extends in plains more than in any other part; and the *Aras*, towards the end of its course, separates it from *Media Atropatene*.

We proceed to describe the parts which extend to Mesopotamia and Assyria. To the *Euphrates* which has its origin near Arzroum, is added another branch, whose sources called in the country Bing-gheul, or the Thousand Fountains, form a river which appears to have been that named *Lycus*. The river, of which the union of these two streams makes the commencement, is particularly called Frat. But there is still another *Euphrates*, which having its fountains more remote, becomes more considerable than the preceding at its junction. This *Euphrates* is that which, precisely under this name the ten thousand passed in returning; and the same that Corbulo, charged with the conduct of the war in Armenia under Nero, makes issue from a district called *Caranites*, according to the report of Pliny. Ptolemy recognises a *twofold Euphrates*, concerning which modern literati manifest an embarrassment which a further knowledge of the country will remove. The mountain whence the *second Euphrates* issues, is called *Abus*, or *Abas*:—*Moxoëne*, forms a particular canton among many which Dioclesian acquired by cession of the king of Persia, and which is recognised in the name of Moush.—The river which traverses it appears to be the *Teleboas*, which the ten thousand met with between the sources of Tigris and their passage of the *Euphrates*.—The space comprised between the two *Euphrates*, retains its name of *Acilisene* in that of Ekilis.—Between the *Euphrates* and Mount Taurus is a great country, whose name of *Sophene* is preserved in that of Zoph. A river named *Arsanias*, now *Arsen* crosses this country, to discharge itself into the *Euphrates*, after having passed *Arsamosata*, a considerable place, whose name is

preserved under the form of Simsat, or Shimshat. A little below, and at a place of the same name with the *Elegia*, or Ilija, by Arz-roum, the Euphrates pierces the chain of Mount Taurus; and this place is now called the Pass of Nushar. A fortress of this country above Simshat, called Kar-birt, is *Charpote* in the Byzantine authors.—*Anzita*, which gives the name to a canton, appears to be the same with a place called Ansga; and the fortress known by the name of Ardis seems to indicate the position of *Artagi-certa*, the same probably with *Artagera*, mentioned particularly on the occasion of a mortal wound which Caius, one of the nephews of Augustus, received there.—On approaching Amid, we find *Argana* under the ancient name. *Amida* was not known, at least under this name, till the fourth century. From changes that took place about that time in the distribution of provinces, effacing even the primitive limits of countries, it happened that *Amida* was made the metropolis of a province of Mesopotamia. Constantius, putting it into a state to cover this frontier of the empire, gave it the name of *Constantia*, which it has not retained: for that of Amid has remained; and its walls, constructed with black stones, have caused it to be called Kara-Amid; although it is more commonly denominated Diar-Bekir, the name of its district.—But we must not omit to remark that mention is made of a royal city Sophene by Strabo, under the name of *Carcathio-certa*; and the city of this name was on the Tigris, according to Pliny; whence arises a strong presumption that it is Amid which is thus spoken of under a former name, which expresses in its termination a place of defence. And this having been a barrier to the Greek empire,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

the Tigris, since its distance from Nisibis in Mesopotamia is but thirty-seven miles. A very considerable river, named *Nicephorius*, flowed under its ramparts; and when we see the Greeks in Xenophon, after having cleared the Carducian mountains, and before arriving at the fountain of the Tigris, passing a river, which in the country was named *Centrites*, there can be no doubt that this river has something common in its course with that which has the Greek name of *Nicephorius*. It appears at present under the name of Khabour; and a city named Sered, towards the lower part of its course, may represent *Tigranocerta*.—This southern part of Armenia would terminate the description of the country, if it were not judged expedient to comprise within these limits the great lake which has the name of *Arsissa* in Ptolemy. It was on its northern side embellished with cities which were better known to the Byzantine writers than they had been before; viz, *Chaliat* or *Aklat*, *Arzes* or *Argish*, *Perkri*, and the city under the name of *Artemita* in Ptolemy, which appears to be that of Van. If Armenian history be worthy of credit, this city owed its foundation to Semiramis, and it should in consequence have borne the name of *Semiramocerta*; as among the Armenians *Vani* signifies a strong hold. Although it be common to call this lake by the modern name of the city, there may be also remarked an analogy between the name which Ptolemy furnishes and that of *Arzes*, or *Argish*. This canton of Armenia is called *Vaspurakan*, a name that appears to be employed by the Byzantine writers.

SECTION THIRD.

SYRIA,

WHICH NAME IS RETAINED.

AMONG the countries of Asia, that which we proceed to describe is among the most worthy to be known. The *Syrian* nation was not bounded by the limits which comprise *Syria*, but extended beyond the *Euphrates* into *Mesopotamia*; and we have also remarked, in treating of *Cappadocia*, that the people who occupied it, as far as the *Euxine*, were reputed of *Syrian* origin. The country still known by the name of *Syria* did not claim the same limits with the nation just mentioned. It extended along the sea from the frontier of *Cilicia*, and, comprehending *Palestine*, touched the limits of *Egypt*. Mount *Taurus* covers it towards the north; and to the course of the *Euphrates*, on the side of the east, succeeds an indefinite canton of the *desert Arabia*; which, turning to the south, stretches into *Arabia Petraea*.—In the dismemberment which the empire of Alexander suffered after the death of this conqueror, Seleucus Nicator, having become the most powerful of princes among whom this empire was portioned, possessed the great division of it, extending from the *Ægean Sea* to *India*. But the insurrection of the Parthians, which happened under Antiochus II, grandson of Seleucus, deprived the successors of that prince of the *eastern provinces*; and Antiochus III, in the war that he had with the Romans, lost that part of Asia which was situated beyond *Mount Taurus* with regard to *Syria*. Great divisions in the family of the Seleucides having at length extremely enfeebled this power, Tigranes, king of Armenia, took possession

of Syria, and, when constrained by Pompey to confine himself within his proper limits, his conquest became a province of the Roman empire. A situation bordering upon the Parthian empire, and also upon the second empire of the Persians, must have made the defence of this province an object of the greatest importance. Syria constituted by much the greatest part of that *Diocese* (for so the great departments established before the end of the fourth century were named) called *Oriens*; comprising Palestine, a district of Mesopotamia, the province of Cilicia, and the isle of Cyprus.—By a division of primitive provinces, there appear five in the limits of Syria, viz, two Syrias, *Prima* and *Secunda* or *Salutaris*; two Phœnicias, one properly so called, and the other named *Libani*, by the extension of the anterior limits of *Phœnice*; and finally, the *Euphratensis*.—In the sacred writings Syria is called *Aram*. The Arabs now give it the name of *Sham*, which in their language signifies the left, its situation being such on facing the east.—To enter into a detail of the country, we shall depart from the sea at the limits of *Cilicia*, and ascending the *Orontes* to Damascus, thence visit the parts watered by the *Euphrates*. *Phœnicia*, with which the isle of Cyprus will naturally connect itself, will conclude this section: for whatever relates to the remainder of Syria, extending from *Cœle-Syria* to *Arabia Petræa*, which was called the *Promised Land*, or *Palestine*, will be fully discussed under that head, when treating of the Sacred Geography.

The first position that occurs is *Alexandria*, surnamed *Cata Isson*, or near Issus, at the head of the bay called *Issicus*, well known to be that of Alexandretta, or, as the Syrians call it, Scanderona.—*Antiochia*, the re-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



the sea, near the mouth of the Orontes, was also a work of Seleucus Nicator; and, from its situation at the foot of a mountain named *Pierius*, was surnamed *Pieria*: but it was more distinguished for giving the name of *Seleucis* to a part of Syria, extended on the Orontes in ascending. The site of this city is known under the altered name of *Suveidia*. On the opposite side of the Orontes is mount *Casius*, from whose summit it was said, by an extravagant hyperbole, that both the morning's dawn, and the evening's twilight might at the same time be seen.—*Apamea*, situated between the Orontes and a lake, holding a place among the principal cities of this country, assumed the rank of metropolis of the *Second Syria*. It was constructed by Seleucus Nicator, who entertained his elephants there, the number of which was said to amount to five hundred. This position has been erroneously taken for that of Hamah; for the name of *Apamea* is still extant in *Farnieh*, attended with identical circumstances of situation.—Continuing to ascend the Orontes, we find *Epiphania*, or the *Illustrious* in Greek, in Hamah; it having reassumed its primitive Syrian name of *Hamah*, in conformity to the practice of many cities whose names had been changed by the conqueror. We may be allowed to remark here, that *Abulfeda*, the author of a body of Oriental Geography, reigned in this city, with the title of sultan, in the fourteenth century.—*Emesa*, which had a famous temple of *Elagabalus*, or the Sun, retains its name in the form of *Hems*, at no great distance from the Orontes

Hid Amalthea, and her florid son

Young Bacchus, from his stepdame Rhea's eyes.

on the right.—*Laodicea*, surnamed *Libani*, by distinction from another *Laodicea* of Syria, on the sea, occupied the position of a place called *Ioushiah*.—We now come to *Damascus*, whose name is pronounced *Demesk* in the country. This city, which does not yield in celebrity to any in Asia, was the metropolis of the *Phœnicia* of *Libanus*. The charms of its situation in a fertile and irriguous valley, famous among the Orientals under the name of *Goutah Demesk* (the orchard of Damascus) are documents of the high antiquity of this city, as they have always occasioned it to revive after calamities that had nearly annihilated it at different periods. A river, named by the Greeks *Chrysorrhœas*, or the Current of Gold, otherwise *Bardine*, whence the modern name of *Baradi* is derived, divides in many channels, which stream through the city as well as in the environs.—Above Damascus, *Abila*, surnamed *Lysaniæ*, or of *Lysanias*, a governor of that name, is now called *Nebi Abel*, or the town of the Prophet Abel, after the immediate son of the parent of humankind.—At the bottom of an adjacent valley, *Heliopolis* preserves, under its primitive name *Baalbek*, a magnificent temple dedicated to the divinity to which it owed its denomination, both in the Syriac and Greek. The valley is enclosed between two parallel ridges, which are *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; the first having its exterior declivity towards the sea, while the second regards Damascus. And the name of *Aulon*, given to this valley, denotes a hollow in the Greek. It is now named *el Bekah*; and this district, extending to the sources of the *Orontes*, was called *Cæle-Syria*, or the concave Syria, from its local character.

We proceed now to survey the course of the Euphrates, beginning with that country which is distinguished by the name of *Comagene*, on the declivity of Taurus and Amanus, forming the northern extremity of Syria. *Comagene* was governed by kings, who were thought to have been of the race of the Seleucides, before it was united to the empire under Vespasian. It is found afterwards confounded with the *Euphratesian* province, of which it made a part; being mentioned in the Oriental Geography under the name of *Kamašh*.—*Samosata* is its capital, situated advantageously on the Euphrates, at the apex of a great parabola, by which this river, which hitherto appears to direct its course to the Mediterranean, turns suddenly towards the east and south. This city is still known by the name of *Semisat*.—Remounting the Euphrates, the strong places of *Borsalium* and *Claudius* appear under the names of *Bersel* and *Cloudieh*.—*Pendenissus*, which an expedition of Cicero (during his government of Cilicia) seems to recommend to notice, appears to be a place known under the name of *Behesni*.—*Syco-basilisses*, situated upon a Roman way, should be the same with *Sochos*, mentioned in the march of Darius to meet Alexander at Issus.—*Zeugma conjunctio*, or the *bridge*, was the principal passage of the river, as its name evinces; and an ancient fortress by which it was commanded, is called *Roum-Cala*, or the Roman Castle; to which we may add, that, on the opposite shore there is a place named *Zegmé*.—The most considerable city in this part of Syria, and which became the metropolis of the *Euphratesian* province, was *Hieropolis*, or the Sacred City, so called by the Macedonians, from its being the seat of the worship



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

which Alexander entered Mesopotamia,* and inclined towards the Tigris to fight Darius on the plains of Assyria, is named *el Der* in the country.—Lower down the river the position of a castle named *Horur*, or *Gorur*, is remarkable for having the advantage of indicating a place which Pompey, in reducing Syria, decided as a boundary of the Roman empire under the name of *Oruros* according to Pliny.—We shall conclude this article with a notice of the famous city of *Palmyra*, which gives the name of *Palmyrene* to a vast plain that is united to the Desert Arabia. The foundation of this city is attributed to Solomon, by Josephus the historian; and the name of *Tadamora*, which he applies to it, remains in that of *Tadmor*, a Syrian name, whose signification seems to have suggested the Greek denomination of *Palmyra*. This city, by its central position between two great empires, and by holding the same relative situation to the two seas, by which it maintained a great commerce between these divisions of the ancient hemisphere, rose to great opulence and renown. The great power of *Odenatus* and *Zenobia*, under the reign of *Galienus* and *Aurelian*, is well known; and the remains of lofty edifices interspersed among the cabins of a few Arabs, manifest the former magnificence, and the present wretchedness, of *Palmyra*.

PHOENICE ET CYPRUS. Everyone knows how much

* Three years previous to this period, Darius crossed here, after his defeat at the battle of Issus; and fifty-nine years before that the younger Cyrus passed in his expedition against his brother, and was said to have been the first who forded the river at *Thapsacus*.

the *Phœnicians* distinguished themselves by navigation, from which their commerce derived its extension and aggrandizement. Confined to a margin of land between the sea and mountains, they could only acquire power by the means which they employed, and which were exerted with such success as to enable them to form establishments, not only on the shores of their own sea, but also on those of the Western Ocean. The Arts owed both their birth and their perfection to them. It was a Phœnician who introduced into Greece the knowledge of letters, and their use; and artists brought from Tyre, presided over the construction of the temple with which Solomon embellished his capital city.—In the description of this maritime part of Syria, we shall take our departure from *Laodicea*, which was a Phœnician city before it became a Greek one by renovation under Seleucus Nicator. It then took the name of *Laodicea*; which, distinguished by its maritime situation, was surnamed *ad Mare*; and its name has scarcely suffered any alteration in the present form of *Ladikieh*. Although Phœnicia be sometimes mentioned in a manner that would prolong its extent as far as the limits of Egypt, we deem it expedient here to stop at *Tyre*, that we may not take from Palæstine what it would have a right to reclaim, when we come to the consideration of it in turn.

Immediately succeeding to *Laodicea*, *Gabala* exists in *Gebileh*.—*Aradus* is a rock two hundred paces in the sea, less than a mile in circuit, but which, nevertheless, contained a populous city, and powerful among those of Phœnicia. Its name in the present form is *Ruad*. *Antaradus*, situated opposite on the shore of the continent, is now named *Tortosa*.—Retiring from the sea we must

mention *Raphanea*, whose name is recognised in that of Rafneh. On a mountain in its environs, a fortress named Masiat was the residence of the Ishmaelite prince of the Assassins, celebrated in the time of the crusades.—*Aphaca*, a city infamous for prostitution, was destroyed by Constantine.—*Berytus*, among the number of the principal cities of Phœnicia (the termination being abscinded) is called Beirut. The mountains of this part of Phœnicia are those which the Druses occupy, who are said to be descended from the crusards who took refuge here after the loss of Palestine.—We arrive now at Sidon, which was distinguished by a degree of power and opulence beyond the competition of any other city in Phœnicia, Tyre excepted. By use it is called Seïde, although a place at some distance from the sea, towards the mountain, preserves precisely the name of Sidon.—Between this city and Tyre *Sarepta* preserves its name in Sarfond.—There were two cities of the name of Tyre; *Palæ Tyrus*, or the Antient, and *Tyrus*, placed on an isle; but the time of the transmigration is not well known. The ruins of the first furnished Alexander with materials for constructing a mole or causey, which joined the continent to the insulated city, and which time has rather consolidated than impaired. Tyre, which yielded to Sidon in antiquity, at least equalled it in renown; and the famous purple dye contributed to the maintenance of its wealth. Its name in the oriental languages is *Sur*. The Franks, who rendered themselves masters of this city, lost it again towards the end of the thirteenth century; and it is now buried in its ruins.

The Isle of *Cyprus* extends in length from a pro-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SECT. IV.

MESOPOTAMIA.

venth, by the transmigration of its inhabitants, yet the name of Constanza remains to the site which it occupied. *Pedæus*, or Pedia, the most considerable of the rivers of this island, had its mouth here. The place which has since become the principal in the island, and not far distant from the former capital, is Famagouste, or rather Amogoste, as the Cyprian Greeks pronounce it, and derives this name from a sandy cape adjacent called *Amochostos*.—There were two cities of the name of *Paphos*: the more ancient, which had received Venus when issuing from the foam of the sea; and a new one which has prevailed, preserving its name under the form of Bafò, or Bafa.—We have three cities to cite in this interval between Salamis and Paphos: *Citium*, the native place of Zeno, author of the Stoic philosophy, and which is now called Chiti; *Amathûs*, a Phœnician rather than a Greek city, but where Venus was not less honoured than at Paphos, and whose site is called Linmeson Antica: and lastly *Curium*, which is thought to have occupied the position of a place now named Pisco-pia.—We think that we discover *Idalium*, as well by the pleasantness of its situation, as by the analogous name of Dalin.

SECTION FOURTH.

MESOPOTAMIA,

AL GEZIRA.

THE name of Mesopotamia is known to denote a country between rivers; and in the books of the Pentateuch this is called *Aram-Naharaim*, or Syria of the Rivers. It is also known that these rivers are the *Euphra-*

tes and the *Tigris*, which embrace this country in its whole length, and contract it by their approximation in the lower or southern part, which is contiguous to *Babylon*. From this situation it has acquired the name of *al-Gezira* among the Arabs, who have no specific term to distinguish a peninsula from an island. We cannot forbear remarking here, that it is through ignorance that this country is called *Diarbek* in the maps. For not only should this name be written *Diar-Bekr*, but it should also be restrained to the northern extremity, which *Armenia* claims in antiquity. This part corresponds with the oriental geographers call *Diar Modzar* on the side of the *Euphrates*, and *Diar-Rabiah* on the banks of the *Tigris*.—On the north there reigns a mountainous chain, which from the passage of the *Euphrates* through *Mount Taurus* extends to the borders of the *Tigris*. This is the *Mount Macius* of antiquity, and now known among the *Turks* by the plural appellation of *Karadgia Daglar*, or the *Black Mountains*. A river called *Chaboras*, which preserves the name of *al-Kabour*, and augmented by another river, to which the *Macedonians* of *Syria* have given the name of *Mygdonius*, proceeds to join the *Euphrates* under a fortress which we shall mention hereafter. The lower part of the country, distant from the rivers, being less cultivated and more sterile than the upper, could be only occupied by *Arabs* called *Scenites*, or inhabiting tents.

The district of *Mesopotamia*, which is only separated from *Syria* by the course of the *Euphrates*, bore the name of *Osroene*, which it owed to *Osroés*, or, according to the chronicles of the country, *Orrhoés*; who, pro-

MESOPOTAMIA.

SECT. IV.

fiting by the feebleness of the Seleucides, caused by their divisions, acquired a principality about a hundred and twenty years before the Christian æra. In the time of the unsuccessful expedition of Crassus against the Parthians, we find in this country a prince, whose name of Abgar passed successively to many others. The Euphrates appearing to the prudence of Augustus as the boundary that nature had prescribed to the empire, the *Osröene* princes had to adjust their interest between the Roman power and that of the Parthians; and Trajan, in the conquest that he made of Mesopotamia, forbore to despoil the prince Abgar. But Caracalla did not conduct himself with equal moderation. However, it cannot be decided that the *Osröene* was distinguished as a province of the empire before the time of the first successors of Constantine.—The capital of the country received from the Macedonian conquerors the name of *Edessa*: and an abundant fountain which the city enclosed, called in Greek *Calli-rhoe*, communicated this name to the city itself. In posterior times it is called Roha, or, with the article of the Arabs, Orrhoa, and by abbreviation Orba. This name may be derived from the Greek term signifying a fountain; or according to another opinion, it may refer to the founder of this city, whose name is said to have been Orrhoi: but however this be, it is by corruption that it is commonly called Orfa. A little river, which by its sudden inundations annoys this city, was called *Scirtus*, or the Vaulter; and the Syrians preserve this signification of the name of *Daisan*.—*Zeugma*, or the Bridge, which afforded entrance to the *Osröene*, and which has been mentioned under the article of Syria, was on the opposite side co-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

cipal of which the Khalif Haroun Al-Rashid erected a castle, which became his favourite residence.

We pass, without meeting with any object to arrest our attention, to the *Chaboras*, or al-Khabour. Its junction with the Euphrates forms an angle which affords to *Circesium* a situation naturally advantageous, to which Dioclesian added fortifications, making it a barrier of the empire; and Kerkisia, as it is pronounced, preserves the same situation. Some of the learned are of opinion that this is the position mentioned in the Scriptures under the name of *Carchemis*, on the Euphrates.—*Resaina*, which was a colony formed under Septimius Severus, received from Theodosius the name of *Theodosiopolis*.—Below Kerkisia, the modern name of *Zoxo-Sultan*, indicating the monument of some prince, plainly alludes to the younger Gordian, who perished by the conspiracy of Philip, and whose sepulchre was a tumulus of earth, thrown up by a Roman soldier on the spot.—*Anatho*, on a holm farther down, and whose name subsists in that of Anah, is the residence of the most considerable prince among the Arabs, who nevertheless recognises the supremacy of the sultan of the Turks.—The Euphrates is thence seen to describe great circuits; and among these involutions, out of a number of positions we must cite the insulated cities of *Neharda* and *Pombeditia*, where the Jews had celebrated schools. *Haditba* and *Juba* are their modern names.—*Is* was another remarkable place, near a river of the same name, affording the bitumen wherewith the walls of Babylon were cemented, according to Herodotus.—The place which appears best to accord with the field of *Cunaxa*, where Cyrus lost his life in fighting with his brother Artax-

erxes, is Mnemon, immediately preceding a canal of communication between the Euphrates and Tigris. This canal is what in the march of Julian is called *Macepracta*, of the Syriac *Maïfarekin*, denoting a derivation by the means of a canal. It is now dry, and is found to have been paved. What is beyond this seems without the bounds of Mesopotamia, which on this confine even is called Media.

We must now remount the Tigris to complete the contour of Mesopotamia. At the height of a place called Opis, on the Babylonian side of the Tigris, extending to the Euphrates, a rampart, thought to have been erected by Semiramis, separated the two countries.—*Bertha*, or *Vitra* above, is described as a very strong fortress, and said to have been constructed by order of Alexander. There is no position more agreeable to this description than that of Tecrit; which in the seventh century was chosen for the residence of a Jacobite primate, in whom the immediate government of many churches was confided, with the title of Maphrien. This place having been taken and destroyed by Timur, or Témir-leng, in 1393, is now but a village.—*Hatra* in the desert, at a distance from the Tigris, is a place celebrated in history for having resisted the attacks of Trajan and of Severus in person, as well as those of Artaxerxes, under whom, in the third century, the Persians carried off from the Parthians the empire of the east. An Arabian prince occupied this place; which, although ruined is known by the name of Hatder.—The Roman army on its route towards Nisibis, after the unsuccessful expedition of Julian, encountered a castle held by

MESOPOTAMIA.

SECT. IV.

the Persians, and named *Uz*, which appears to some to be the *Uz* of Chaldæa, that the father of Abraham quit-
ted to settle in Charran.—Among the principal places
of Mesopotamia is *Singara*, transposed by Ptolemy in
assigning it a place on the bank of the Tigris. After
Trajan had made the conquest of this place, its situation
on the common limits of two empires subjected it alter-
nately to them both. Its modern name is Sinjar, which
it communicates to a ridge of mountains in its vicinity.
There is some difficulty in acceding to the opinion
which refers the name of this city to that of *Sinear*,
which we find in the scriptures appropriated to the plain
country that was chosen for the site of Babel. Positive
geography finds a hundred leagues of interval between
Babylon and Singara.

We pass now to *Nisibis*, which of all the places of
Mesopotamia was the most important; and its name
Nisbin, in the plural, properly denotes posts, or military
stations. Under the Macedonian princes of Syria, the
district which is now distinguished by the name *Diar-
Rabiah* in al-Gezira, was called *Mygdonia*, from a coun-
try in Macedon, and *Nisibis* was named *Antiochia Myg-
donia*. This place is seen afterwards serving as a bar-
rier to the Roman empire against the enterprises of the
Parthians. But it was at length ceded to Sapor, king
of Persia, by one of the conditions of the treaty which
succeeded the disgrace of the Roman army in the ex-
pedition of Julian. *Nisibin* is now a place entirely open,
and reduced to a hamlet. By a great number of brooks
which descend from the neighbouring mountains, there
is here formed a river, which in antiquity was called
Mygdonius Fluvius, and is now named *Hermas*, or *Nahr*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



water on three sides, it is called in the language of the people who inhabit it, *Gezirat-el-Arab*, the Island or Peninsula of Arabia.—There are distinguished two races in Arabia, as well by lineage as by modes of life. The first and more ancient are reputed to owe their origin to Jectan, or Kahtan, son of Eber; they are called *pure Arabs*, inhabit cities, and have been governed by kings. A posterior generation of *Mostarabes*, or *mixed Arabs*, who are not stationary, or occupied by agriculture, but erratic and pastoral, recognise for their author Ismael, the son of Abraham.—It has been remarked that none of the great Asiatic powers have subjugated a nation whose liberty seems defended by the nature of their country, destitute of water, and for the most part uncultivated; and an expedition undertaken into *Arabia* by Augustus, had nearly occasioned the destruction of a Roman army, without any advantage resulting from it.—It is sufficiently known that this continent is divided into three regions distinguished from each other by the several epithets of *Petræa*, the *Happy*, and the *Desert Arabia*. What appertains to each it is our present purpose to show.

ARABIA PETRÆA. From the confines of Judæa, *Arabia Petræa* extends towards the south to the *Arabic Gulf*; which embraces it by two smaller gulfs that terminate the greater, under the names of *Heroopolites* on the west, and *Ælanites* on the east. The limits of *Egypt* terminate it towards the west. The part confining on *Judæa* is particularly distinguished under the name of *Idumæa*, formed from that of Edom, which was given to Esau, the son of Jacob. And the posterity of this patriarch possessed a part of *Arabia Petræa*, when the

people of Israel, respecting the limits of a nation sprung from a common ancestor, made a great circuit through the desert, turned south to the *Elanite Gulf*, and then remounting northward, entered by the country of *Moab*. But the posterity of Ismael, who derived their name from Nabaioth, his eldest son, becoming very numerous, the name of *Nabathæi* prevailed in Arabia Petræa; which in the time of Augustus was governed by a king seated at *Petra*, whence the country drew its name. Having been conquered by Trajan, it was joined to Palestine; and afterwards formed a particular province called the *Third Palestine*, and otherwise *Salutaris*, of which the metropolis was the ancient residence of its kings. The modern name of this city is *Krac*, which is also common to many other places whose natural situation is very strong. Baldwin I, king of Jerusalem, becoming master of this place, gave it the name of *Mount Royal*. This prince suffered much in traversing the mountains south of Judæa, which have caused this part of Idumæa to be called *Gebalene*, from the term *Gebel*, or *Gebal*, which in Arabic denotes a mountain. On this route, and beyond the mountains, he found a city, whose name *Sezuma* has re-established Sodom under this form in the opinion of some.

The cities known to antiquity in *Arabia Petræa*, are those of which we have no modern information. We must, however, except *Ælana*, or *Ailath*, as it appears in the Bible, and which gives to one of the arms which the Arabic Gulf forms at its extremity, the name of *Sinus Ælanites*. This place, which is now ruined, has no cultivated land in its environs, though it preserves the name of *Ailah*.—*Asiongaber*, whence the fleets of Solo-

mon took their departure for Ophir, was an open port, at the head of the most eastern creek of the Elanite Gulf; and this position is called *Berenice* by Ptolemy. The Arabic name of Minet ed-dahab, signifying the Port of Gold, had reference to the riches that were there debarked on the return from Ophir. This place is now called Calaat-el-Acaba, which signifies the Castle of the Descent; while the Elanite Gulf is named Bahr-el-Acaba.—The point called Ras-Mahommed, which separates this gulf from the Heroopolite, or that of Suez, was called *Posidium*, in common with many other promontories, which derived this name from the Greek of Neptune. Ptolemy names it *Phara*, and notes an inland city of this name; to which relates the desert of *Pharan*, in the Scriptures. There is nothing remaining of this city but the ruins of a monastery, called Deir-Faran.—The mount of *Sinai*, to which that of *Horeb* is contiguous, is called by the Arabs Gebel-Tour; and a place called Tor, which is the port of Mount Sinai, was formerly distinguished for its palm trees, under the name of *Phænicon*.—The *Nabatheans* prevailing in Arabia Petræa, extended themselves far towards the Desert, and thus confounded the limits of their primitive seats and the *Happy Arabia*; so that these limits cannot, with accuracy, be decided. It may be said, however, that the first claims not only the country between the gulfs, as has been reported, but also that adjacent to the eastern shore of the Elanite gulf.—*Madian*, called by Ptolemy *Modiana*, and whose name relates to one of the children that Abraham had of Keutrali, caused the *Madianites* to be so called; and we find the dwellings of a



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

that anciently appropriated to it signifies.—A point far projected in the sea, in the manner of a peninsula, which was called *Chersonesus extrema*, is now called Ras-Edom, or the Red Head.—We then arrive at *Char-motas*, a port with a spacious basin, although extremely contracted at the entrance: and its modern name of al-Sharm signifies the slit or aperture.—Receding still farther from the sea, the name of Iatrach, appropriated to Medina before it was called Medinet-al-Nabi, or the City of the Prophet, is the same with *Iatripsia*.—The name of Mecca appears evidently in that of *Maco-raba*, the second member whereof is used to designate a great or principal city; and the house revered at Mecca is among the Arabs of an antiquity anterior to the origin of the Mahomedan worship; for they attribute the foundation of it to Abraham.—We cannot forbear remarking that a river whose course appears considerable in Ptolemy, under the name of *Betius*, is in reality only composed of two little streams, now called Bardilloi. Arabia has scarcely a river that does not perish in the sandy plains, or expand in moors and fens.—The city of *Badeo*, with the epithet of *Regia*, or Royal, retains the name of *Badea* in its maritime position; and a point of land which forms the southern boundary of the creek, at the head of which is seated Giddah, the port of Mecca, is still called Ras-bad.—At length, arriving at the strait by which the Arabic Gulf communicates with the Erythrean Sea, we discover in a port named Ghela, that which is mentioned in antiquity under the name of *Ocelis*. This strait was called *Dira*, or *Diræ*, which in Greek expresses a passage straitened in the manner of a throat. Its modern name of Bab-el-Mandeb signifies in the

Arabic language the Port of Mourning or Affliction, from apprehensions of the risk of venturing beyond, in the expanse of a vast ocean.

The southern part of Arabia, which remains to be reviewed, bounded on the east by the *Arabic Gulf*, and on the south by the *Erythrean Sea*, is that which particularly merits the epithet of *Happy*. The name of Iémen, whereby it is actually known, is a term in the Arabic, as in many other oriental languages, to express the Right: and turning towards the rising Sun, according to the aspect affected by the Asiatics, such will be the relative position of a southern country. It may be added that in this term of Iémen is also comprised an idea of *felicity*.—Among the several people included in this country, and specially reputed Jectanides, or children of Jectan, the *Sabæi* are the most distinguished, and sometimes comprise others under their name. Another name, that of the *Homeritæ*, thought to be derived from Himiar, the name of a sovereign, and which signifies the Red King, appears latterly confounded with that of the Sabeans.—*Sabatha*, as the principal city of the Sabeans, can be no other than Sanaa, which is known in Iémen as holding anciently the first rank.—The *Minæi*, who formed a people sufficiently conspicuous to give to their country the name of *Minæa*, had for their capital *Carana*, whose name is preserved in that of *Almakarana*, which is a strong fortress.—*Saphar*, the name of another city among those of the first class, differs only in its initial letter from that of *Dafar*.—*Tamala* is found in the name of *al-Demlou*, which belongs to one of the strongest places, by nature of its situation.—The royal

city of the Homerites was called *Mariaba*, or, as we read in Arabic, *Mareb*; which name expresses in this language the pre-eminence of the city. The Arabs make it the residence of Beltris the queen of *Saba*, who visited Solomon. There subsist vestiges of this city, which was destroyed by a sudden inundation caused by the bursting of a dyke whereby the collected waters in its environs were restrained. It confined on a country whose modern name of *Hadramaüt* is only the altered pronunciation of *Chatramotitæ*, among whom the city named *Catabanum* is now found in the fortress of the same country, under the name of *Shibam*.—Beyond this is another country, whose name of *Seger*, or *Sehger*, comes from *Sochor*, cited by Ptolemy, although misplaced by him, as are many well-known positions. This is the canton which, affording the incense, admits with signal propriety the name of *Thurifera Regio*, otherwise and more specially that of *Libanophoros*, because the most valuable kind of the drug is distinguished by its whiteness; *Liban* being the Arabic term for this quality. Hence, among traders, incensè is called *Oliban*, with the article of the Portuguese language, which is current in the ports of the oriental seas, as the *Franc* language is in those of the Mediterranean. When we read, in the account of the expedition of the Romans in Arabia, that from the territory of *Mariaba* to the country of incense was only a journey of three days, *Hadramaüt* must be understood; which, nearer than *Seger*, had also its particular odour.—On the route that the Romans held in their retreat, as well as in advancing into the country, there is mention of *Anagrana*, as a considerable city, which afterwards became the centre of Christianity in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



city named Hasec, near which there is a tomb named Cabal Houd, and said to be that of Eber, father of Jectan.

—The identity of an island mentioned under the name of *Serapis*, cannot be better assigned than to that which lies beyond, and whose modern name is Maceira. As we read in a particular description of the shores of the Erythrean Sea, that the *Syagros Promontorium* is the most eastern point of this continent, it can be no other than Ras-al-Hhad, although the information of Ptolemy appears not to authorize this opinion. We shall stop here, as the retrogression of the coast towards the entrance of the Persian gulf will enter more properly into a detail of what concerns the *Desert Arabia*.

ARABIA DESERTA. To the Region of Incense succeeds a country named Mahrah, whose aspect is sufficiently deformed by nature to merit the distinction of the *Sterile Arabia*. For between the country of Oman, whereof we shall presently speak, and the environs of Mecca, a continued desert extending across the continent, furnishes no particular objects in geography; the ancients appearing even to be unacquainted with the country in this part. But, adhering to the coast, we find *Moscha portus* represented by Mascat, which was for some time in the power of the Portuguese. And this position follows the Syagrosic promontory, instead of preceding it as in Ptolemy. Also the *Omanium Emporium*, or *Omana*, which this geographer places in the interior of the continent, is actually a maritime position, which has given the name of Oman to the country in its environs. That of *Vodona*, also noted by Ptolemy, is evidently the same with Vadana, the residence of an Emir in the country of Oman. Knowing only as Ara-

bia Deserta what extends on the south side of the Euphrates between Syria and Babylon, the writers of antiquity have comprised this shore of the Persian gulf in Arabia Felix; and truly some places are recognised on it that do not disgrace this distinction.—The point of land which straitens the entrance of this gulf is covered with mountains, which were named *Sabo*, or *Assabo* with the Arabic article, and to which a port named *Lima* now communicates its name. *Macæ* was that of a people on this land, and *Maceta*, the name of the promontory which terminates it, is now called *Moçandon*. The inhabitants of this coast are mentioned under the name of *Ichthyophagi*, because they subsisted chiefly upon fish.

The most considerable object furnished by the Gulf of Persia on the Arabian coast, is the isle of *Tylos*; the pearl fishery on whose coast has rendered it famous in antiquity: and the same circumstance still contributes to its renown, under the name of *Bahrain*, which in Arabic signifies two seas.—At the bottom of a little gulf making a creek of the greater, *Gerra* was a city enriched by commerce of the perfumes brought from the Sabean country, sent up the Euphrates to *Thapsacus*, and across the desert to *Petra*. This city, for the construction of whose houses and ramparts stones of salt were used, appears to be represented by that now named *el-Katif*.—*Iémama*, a country which according to modern geography is remarkable, makes no figure in antiquity; one cannot even conjecture what might have represented it.—A place named *Cariatain*, in the route of the pilgrims passing from *Bussora* or *Basra* to *Mecca*, appears

under the name of *Cariatha* in Ptolemy.—The Romans, in their Arabian expedition, before arriving at Nagran, traversed a country named *Ararena*, which, though arid and barren, was governed by a king.—The tribe of Beni-Temin, which occupies a part of the desert, may find its name in that of the *Themî*, among many other names furnished by Ptolemy.

We shall conclude this section with some general remarks. The Arabs who live under tents are called *Scenitæ*, after a Greek term, which signifies precisely this species of habitation. In calling them Bédouins, we use an Arabic word, denoting a people habituated to live in plains without a fixed habitation, and properly expressed by the Latin term *Campestres*. The first mention that we find of the *Saraceni* in Pliny and in Ptolemy, far from affording an idea of a great nation, seems to indicate but a single tribe among those who divided the country of Arabia Petrea, as well as that of the desert. Procopius, under Justinian, speaks of the *Roman Saracens* and the *Persian Saracens*, and we see this name diffused over the space extending between the Arabic and Persian gulfs. In the opinion of some of the learned, this denomination is derived from an Arabic term, designating men addicted to rapine; and as we see them without scruple adopting this mode of life, we may believe that they would not blush to be distinguished by the name. That of *Hagareni*, which we find in the historians of the Lower empire, is founded on their origin in Ishmael, son of Hagar, and seems to have been used to perpetuate a remembrance of this origin.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

modern travellers, Zarb. This river appears nearly equal to the Tigris, into which it falls a little above a position whose name of Ghilon was anciently *Aloni*.—Farther down, another river named *Zabus Minor*, and called by the Macedonians *Caprus*, or the Boar, is also received by the Tigris, and now called by the Turks *Altunsou*, which in their language signifies the River of Gold.—Assyria is sometimes named *Aturia*, although this name was proper only to a particular canton of the country in the environs of Nineveh.—There is also mention of the name of *Adiabene*, as having supplanted that of Assyria, notwithstanding that it was distinguished as belonging only to a particular country which Assyria comprehended.—*Corduene* was one of those countries towards the northern mountains; and it was annexed to the empire under Dioclesian, with many other cantons, as *Moxoene*, *Arzanene*, and *Zabdicene*. These, in consequence of the failure of Julian's expedition, his successor was obliged to restore to the king of Persia. And *Adiabene*, conquered by Trajan many years before from the Parthians, relapsed almost as soon under the power of its former possessors.

Nineveh, or, according to the oriental formule, *Nineve*, constructed by Ninus subsequently to Babylon, and on a more spacious plan, if we may credit Strabo, was destroyed by the Medes leagued with the Babylonians against the Assyrian Empire. But this city being mentioned as the residence of many Assyrian kings posterior to this empire, it must be supposed while in a second state of existence. It may be doubted whether it ever fell under the dominion of the Persians: for though near the Tigris in their return, the ten thousand, be-

tween the Zab and the mountains of the Carducians, met with the two desolated Median cities of *Larissa* and *Mespila*, yet there is no mention of Nineveh. We must therefore conclude it to have been seated in the concavity of a sudden flexure described by the Tigris, and consequently without the line of their course. However, there is mention made of *Ninus*, as existing in an age less remote; and we are even assured of its site by vestiges on the Tigris, opposite the position of Mosul, retaining the name of Nino, independently of a particular place which the memory of the prophet Jonah renders venerable to the people of the country.—*Arbela*, whose name has a plural signification, is represented as the principal city of *Adiabene*, and is still in existence under the name of Erbil. The final victory of Alexander over Darius has rendered this place famous; though the actual field of battle was at *Gaugamela*, nearer to the Tigris, and on the opposite side of the Zab to *Arbela*.—The *Bumadus*, which Alexander met with after having passed the Tigris, is now known by the name of Hazir-sou, which is communicated by a place situated at the confluence of this river and the Zab. It is said of *Gaugamela*, the name whereof signifies the *Habitation of the Camel*, that in this place Darius Hystaspes had affected to entertain the camel that carried his personal camp equipage in his Scythian expedition.—At some distance from the little Zab, towards the mountains, we discover in the modern name of Kerkouk the position of a place which, appearing under that of *Demetrius* in Strabo, may be the *Corcura* of Ptolemy. We have already remarked that it is not extraordinary to find two names for the same place in these countries:

one given by the Macedonian conquerors; the other native and original, and which has commonly prevailed. This position is singularly identified by the mention that Strabo makes of the springs of naphtha, and the fires emitted by a hill in the environs of *Demetrias*: for these phenomena are observed near Kerkouk: the burning hill itself retaining the name of Korkour, which is scarcely an alteration of *Cercura*.—Farther on, the city named *Siazuros*, in the account of an expedition of Heraclius in this country is easily recognised in Sherzour, the capital of a particular government on this frontier of the Turkish empire.—In re-approaching the Tigris, the *Garamæi*, who were a people of Assyria, according to Ptolemy, are found under the name of Garm: and the principal city on the bank of the river, formerly named *Carcha*, preserves the name of Kark, though the place is commonly called Eski-Bagdad, or Old Bagdad, the metropolitan see of Garm. Tracing the retreat of the Roman army in the expedition of Julian, we find *Carcha* an intermediate situation between *Sumere* and *Dura*.—*Sumere* is still called Samera; and in the ninth century it became considerable by the residence of several Khalifs, under whose dominion it is found distinguished by the Arabic name of Seramen-rai, alluding to the specious and alluring aspect of this dwelling.—*Dura* is distinguished by the name of the sepulchre of a revered personage preceding the local denomination; as Imam Mohammed Dour.—There is mention of *Opis*, as being near the entrance of a river in the Tigris, whose name is *Physcus* in Xenophon, appears under the name of *Torna* in the march of Heracleus, and of *Odorneh* in the modern geography. There is every



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SECT. VII.

BABYLONIA.

Chalonitis.—To conclude what concerns Assyria, a position given by the name of *Albana* is known to be that of Holuan, near the mountains which form the boundary of Media.

SECTION SEVENTH.

BABYLONIA,

IRAK.

FROM the limits which it has seemed expedient to give to Mesopotamia and Assyria, *Babylonia* extends both on the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* to the *Persian Gulf*, by which it is terminated towards the south; confining with *Arabia Deserta* on the west, and with *Susiana* on the east. The name of *Chaldea*, which is more precisely appropriated to the part nearest to the gulf, is sometimes employed as a designation of the entire country; and the greatest part of it being comprehended between the rivers, has given occasion to extend to it the name of *Mesopotamia*. It is this country which the Arabs name properly *Irak*; and it is by the extension that this name has taken, in penetrating into ancient *Media*, that the part contiguous to *Babylonia* is called *Irak Arabi*.

The proximity of the rivers towards the confines of *Mesopotamia*, in a country whose superficies is extremely uniform, had given occasion to the opening of many canals, that convey the waters of the *Euphrates* towards the *Tigris*; and which still appear, according to the accounts of travellers, though without water. The first we have to speak of had its issue near a city named *Siphora*: and this must be believed the *Nar-raga* of Pliny, since he cites it as being adjacent to *Hippara*, which

appears to be the same city as that just mentioned. The canal named *Nahr-Sares* is known to be that called *Nar-Sarsar*. But the greatest was the *Nar-Malcha*, *Fluvius Regum*, or the River of Kings, which joined the Tigris near Seleucia. Repaired by Trajan in his expedition against the Parthians, it had again become dry, when Julián returned the waters of the Euphrates into it, but which no longer flow.—Adhering to the course of this river, we find it enveloping by several implications, a city whose name of *Peri-Saboras*, in an expedition of Julian, is after the oriental form of Firuz Sapor. But it is more commonly known by the name of Anbar; and the first khalif of the house of Abbas, in the eighth century, made it his residence.—It may be observed that the name of Anbar, which in Arabic signifies properly a magazine of provisions, has great affinity with that of *Ancobaritis*, which we find in Ptolemy as proper to a particular canton of this country.—At the same height, but nearer to the Tigris, is the position which *Sitace* ought to take, a city considerable enough to have communicated the name of *Sitaceñe* to the circumjacent country. As we learn from Xenophon that the Greeks met with this city before they passed the Tigris, it must be erroneously placed in Ptolemy far beyond that river. Vestiges of it form a small eminence called Karkuf, which some travellers have mistaken for the remains of Babylon.—Bagdad, not far from this, is a city of Islamism, and of later date, placed at first by al-Mansor, the second of the Abbassides, on the right bank of the Tigris, in a place called by the Turks Kushlar-Kalasi, or the Castle of Birds; and afterwards transferred to the

opposite side of the river, where it now flourishes. Dignified under the Khalifat with the title of Medinet-as-Salam, or the City of Peace, it is cited by the writers of the Lower Empire in the name of *Irenopolis*, which in Greek has the same signification.—It was a little lower, in the territory of a place named *Coche*, on the right bank of the Tigris, that Seleucus Nicator, having in view the depopulation of Babylon, founded a city to be, under the name of *Seleucia*, the capital of the east. The same motive with respect to Seleucia, induced the Parthian monarchs to erect on the other side of the river, almost opposite to the ancient site of *Coche*, a new city, under the name of *Ctesiphon*, which became their ordinary residence. Hence what we find denominated in the oriental geography al-Modain, or the Two Cities, represents Seleucia and Ctesiphon; and in this last the ruins of an ancient edifice are called Takt-Kesra, or the Throne of Chosroés.—*Babylon*, the most ancient city in the world, founded by Belus, who is thought to have been the same as Nimrod, embellished by Semiramis, and long after by Nabuchodonosor, was bisected by the course of the Euphrates from north to south. Its extent formed an equilateral square, whose sides subtended the four Cardinal Points of the Great Circle. The mensuration attributed to its circumference, and on which the ancients are not agreed, as three hundred and sixty, or four hundred and eighty stadia, has given occasion to estimate it rather as a region of country, than the possible extent of a city, for want of proper distinction in the length of the stadium employed therein. It will appear on the result of a valuation founded on the greatest probabilities, that the extent of Babylon, which was never



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

where it expands in a pool, which may be the remains of the great lake said to have been excavated for the purpose of preserving Babylon from inundations, when the snow melts on the mountains which cover the sources of the Euphrates. The tomb of Hosein, son of Ali, of the family of Mohammed, may have caused the change of name in this place.—Another canal, derived from the same bank of the Euphrates, but below Babylon, and whose aperture Alexander caused to be repaired, was named *Pallacopa*. It is now absorbed in a morass called Rahemah, at the extremity of which a city bore the name of *Alexandria*. This city was known by the name of *Hira*, when it became the residence of the Arabian princes who served the Persians and Parthians against the Romans; and called in history by the general name of *Alamundari*, after the name al-Mondar, common to many of these princes at the fall of their dynasty in the first age of the Mohammedan. A similar cause to that which operated on the name of *Vologesia*, has induced the mutation of this also. The body of Ali, who had been assassinated in Kufa (a place but a few miles distant, and long since abandoned,) was interred in *Hira*, which, from the sepulchre of this khalif, came to be called Meshed-Ali.

In returning to the Euphrates, *Borsippa*, or, according to Ptolemy, *Barsita*, was a city distinguished by a particular sect of the Chaldeans, whose name denotes rather the persons and ministers of a religious faith, than the inhabitants of any particular district of country. It is remarkable on this subject, to find near the Euphrates a city named Semavat, or Celestial: and a principal arm of the river, called Wadi-Ussema, or the River of

Heaven.—Below the former position, *Sura*, where the Jews had a school which rivalled that of Neharda, subsists under the same name.—Thence we shall follow the Euphrates to its junction with the Tigris. In the angle formed by this confluence was a city to which are referred two several names, as to many others in these oriental countries: *Apamea*, in Ptolemy; *Digba*, in Pliny; and if Ptolemy, by a position whose name he writes *Didigua*, appears to give two different cities, it is only by a similar error to that wherein he falls in distinguishing Chalybon from Berœa in Syria. This position is occupied by a fortress, whose name of Korna expresses in Arabic a point resembling a horn.—What the Tigris furnishes to observation below Ctesiphon, regards a river named *Gyndes*.* It descends, according to Herodotus, from the mountains of Mantiene, or Matiane, in the northern part of Media, and is received into the Tigris. Cyrus, finding it on his passage, divided it into three hundred and sixty channels. The *Gyndes*, reduced to nothing by the number of drains which it suffered from Cyrus, has at length re-assumed its course to the Tigris; and its entrance into this river is called Foum-el-Saleh, or the Mouth of Peace, in the Arabic language. The name given to it by the Turks in the places whence it issues, is Kara-Sou, or the Black River.—A position named *Aracca*, on this eastern side of the Tigris, attracts

* This name of *Gyndes*, or, as Tacitus expresses it, *Gindes*, in describing a river of Aria, is the same as Zeindeh, in the Persian language denoting (as that passing by Ispahan) a river which revives after having disappeared.

BABYLONIA.

SECT. VII.

the attention of the learned, by reason of the affinity in its name with that of *Erech*, mentioned in the Old Testament among the cities constructed by Nimrod.—But we must not omit remarking, that there was a time when the Euphrates had its own mouth separately from that of the Tigris; and it was in existence when the fleet of Alexander ascended from the sea towards Babylon. The term of the navigation of the sea from the river Indus was a place named *Diridotis*, otherwise *Teredon*, at the head of the Persian Gulf, which receives the Tigris and Euphrates. Accompanying a modern traveller in the route of Basra, towards the west, there will be found the ancient bed of the river, now dry.—The *Orcheni*, inhabiting a city named *Orchoë*, caused the diminution of the Euphrates, by deriving it through their lands, which could not otherwise be watered. This city was one of the principal of Chaldea, and the centre of a considerable sect of those doctors to whom the name of Chaldeans is applied. It is believed that its situation is found in the place now named *Drahemia* and *Dgiam-Ali*, on a canal, which, issuing from the Tigris a little above the position of Basra, conducts to this city, whose foundation, under the khalifat of Omar, caused the depopulation of the circumjacent places; and it is thus that a great intermediate deposit of merchandise, whose name of *Apologi* is scarcely discernible in the modern form of *Oboleh*, a little below the aperture of the canal just mentioned, has transferred this advantage to Basra.—The lower part of the course of the Tigris from the junction of the Euphrates, was called *Pasitigris*; and this is what is now named *Shatul-Arab*, or the River of the Arabs. We see that, in the time of Alexander, this



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



mania. Its name in Scripture is *Paras*, which is nearly the same with that of *Fars*, according to its modern form, as the permutation in the initial of *P* to *F* is frequent in this country, where *Isfahan*, for example, is pronounced *Isfahan*. Elam, son of Shem, is the parent of this nation, according to the holy text. It remained in obscurity till the time of Cyrus, who extended his dominion over the most considerable part of Asia that was known, from the river *Indus* to the *Egean Sea*; subjecting to the patrimony of his ancestors as well the kingdom of *Babylon*, as whatever the domination of the *Medes* had comprehended westward to the river *Halys*; and annexing to it also the kingdom of *Lydia* beyond that river. This empire, to which *Cambyses*, son of *Cyrus*, added *Egypt*, subsisted not much more than two ages, when it was conquered by *Alexander*, after whose death the eastern provinces fell to the lot of *Seleucus Nicator*; and his successors in *Syria* lost these provinces to the *Parthians*. But, under the dominion of these last; *Persia* had its particular kings; and in an enumeration which we have of the provinces of their empire, neither *Persia*, nor the adjacent country of *Carmania* are found comprised. The *Persian* princes were nevertheless in a state of dependence till the third century. A *Persian*, who took the name of *Artaxerxes*, shook off the yoke of the *Parthians*, and transferred their power to the *Persians*, who enjoyed it about four hundred years, till the invasion of the *Arabs*, under the first *khalifs*, successors of *Mohammed*. The ancient renown of *Persia*, which a second dynasty renewed, has maintained the name of this empire, as a general term in geography, applied to all that country which from the

limits of the Turkish domination extends eastward to Hindoostan. *Susiana* and *Persis*, or *Persia Proper*, complete the general term of PERSIA; and with the former province which first presents itself, we enter upon the detail of particular objects.

SUSIANA. *Susiana*, whose name is now Khozestan, participates the situation of PERSIA, as being contained within the limits of *Media* and the *Persian Gulf*. It confines with *Babylon* in the neighbourhood of the *Tigris*; and the river *Oroates*, which is also found under the name of *Pasitigris*, and called *Tab* in the modern geography, separates it from *Persia Proper* on the borders of the gulf.—The name of *Elymais* takes a great extent in *Susiana*, being as well applied to the northern and mountainous division, as to the maritime part, which is flat and moorish. But the first is more agreeable to the situation of the *Elymæi*, who are mentioned as having a prince independent both of the Macedonians of Syria, and the Parthians.—Another country of *Susiana*, and which comprised the capital, according to Herodotus, was named *Cissia*. The middle of the country is traversed by the river *Euleus*, which is *Ulaï* in Daniel; and which, taking also the name of *Choaspes*, pierces, before arriving at *Susa* the capital, a mountain, whose name of *Koh-asp* signifies in Persian the Mountain of the Horse. We read that the kings of Persia drink no other water than that of this river. Its true source, above its issue from the *Koh-asp*, is in the *Koh-zerdeh*, or the Yellow Mountain, from whose opposite side springs the *Zeindehrud*, or the river of Ispahan. After having directed its course very obliquely towards the *Pasitigris*, with which this river has an artificial communication, it turns

suddenly, and discharges itself into the Persian Gulf by many mouths, taking from a modern place on its banks the name of Karun.—*Susa*, from whose name is formed that of the province, appears also under the plural form of *Susan*, which in the language of the country signifies Lilies. It was the winter dwelling of the Persian kings, the great heats of the summer rendering Ecbatana the more agreeable residence during this season. It is now commonly called Tuster, or, with more conformity to its original name, Suster. A city now in ruins, but heretofore considerable, and whose vulgar name of Ahwaz was extended by the Arabs to all the Khozestan, would appear to preserve in that of Hus (by which it is known to the Syrians) some analogy to the name of *Chusii*, or *Cisti*, mentioned as a people of Susiana, as well as of the particular canton called *Cissia*.—The mountains which covered the country on the north, were occupied by people who acknowledged no superior; for, to the Elymeans must be joined the *Cossæi*, who, by a situation confining on Media, are sometimes comprehended in it.—The *Uxii* were placed on the frontiers of Persia; and Alexander, to open himself a way, was obliged, notwithstanding the asperity of the places, to reduce this nation. Their name may be perceived in the modern denomination of Ascias, particularly appropriated to this canton, which concludes what we have to say concerning Susiana. We may add, however, that the whole extent of this mountainous region is now named Loûristan, and that the people inhabiting it are called Loûr and Baktiari.

PERSIS. We enter now upon the description of *Persis*, or *Persia* properly so called, which is separated from



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

great augmentations in the fourth century of the same æra, yet its situation is too advantageous for us to believe that such had been formerly neglected. In seeking then to give it a place in antiquity, it may be remarked that the name of *Corra*, applied to a Persian city by Ptolemy, is the same with that of the river which passes through this, or *Correm-dere*: the last member of it being only the general designation of a current of water. It is to be observed that this does not fall into the Persian Gulf, as we see in some maps; but, like the united Araxes and Medus, expands itself in a moor, whose waters are salt.—*Pasargadæ* was the ancient royal city of the Persians. A particular people who took the name of it, were distinguished for comprehending the tribe or family of the Achæmenides, the most illustrious of the nation, and from whom Cyrus was descended. Cyrus had there his tomb; and a city which preserves the name of Pasa, or Fasa, with the surname of Kuri, according to the Persians, shows us the position of *Pasargades*, or *Pasagardæ*; for the name is also thus written.—The mountains which cover the north of this country were occupied by the *Parætaceni*; and it is remarked that a neighbouring canton to Ispahan is named Perhaûer. That which is called Hetzardara, or the Thousand Mountains, may answer to the *Parchoatras*, which, according to Ptolemy, separates Persia from Media.—The name of *Ashadana*, among the cities which he gives to Persia, has too much affinity with that of Ispahan to permit any doubt of its identity: though it may be observed of this city, which the great Shah Abbas made his capital, that it is beyond the mountains which constitute the modern limits of Fars.—Pliny

SECT. IX.

CARMANIA ET GEDROSIA.

speaks of a city under the name of *Ecbatana*, as a place occupied by the *Māgi*: a circumstance that attracts our attention to a place called *Gnerden*, where the *Ghebres*, or ancient *Parsis*, preserving the worship of fire, have a priest of superior dignity charged with the office of preserving a pyre perpetually burning on an adjacent mountain. It is remarked that *Elburz*, the name of the mountain, is common to many other places consecrated to this object of superstition.—In the name of *Iezed*, on the frontier of the *Kerman*, may be recognised that of *Isaticæ*, though placed in *Carmania* by *Ptolemy*.—There remains something to be said of the maritime part of *Persia*. A royal residence, under the name of *Taoce*, at some distance from the sea, is indicated by the name of *Taûg* in the oriental geography.—The limits between *Persia* and *Carmania*, on the coast of the *Gulf*, were fixed by *Nearchus*, admiral of *Alexander's* fleet, to be opposite to a neighbouring isle, whose name of *Catæa* is recognised under the modern form of *Keish*, or *Caïs*. This isle, though of no great extent, was remarkable for being a great emporium, before this advantage was transferred to *Ormus*.

SECTION NINTH.

CARMANIA ET GEDROSIA,

KERMAN, AND MEKRAN.

CARMANIA. *Carmania*, succeeding *Persia* towards the east, preserves in its extent the same parallels of latitude. *Ptolemy*, encroaching on *Gedrosia*, exaggerates the dimensions of *Carmania* far beyond the limits as-

signed to it in the relation of Nearchus; who, coasting these countries, fixes as a term of division a promontory named *Cārhella*, which is indubitably Capé Jask; and recognising moreover for the first place in *Carmania*, coming from the mouths of the Indus; that which, under the name of *Badis*, he indicates as adjacent.—The objects that antiquity offers to observation in *Carmania*, are for the most part limited to the sea-coast. *Harmozia*, now represented by Gomron, or Bender Abbassi, was an ancient position on the continent, before the retreat of its inhabitants to a little island in the vicinity, which happened on the invasion of the country by the Moguls, in the thirteenth century.—This isle, called Gerun, is mentioned in antiquity under the name of *Ogyris*, and is said to have contained the tomb of king Erythras, who is pretended to have given his name to the *Erythrean Sea*. The people that this desert isle received, communicated to it the name of their primitive dwelling; and, notwithstanding that an insulated ground, of small extent, covered with salt, destitute of fresh water, was but a dreary habitation; we know that, by its advantageous situation for a mart of Indian commerce, it became the once flourishing state of Ormus.—The greatest island of the Persian Gulf, near Ormus, and separated from the continent only by a narrow channel, is Kismis, otherwise called Vroct; and it preserves in the last of these names that of *Oaracta*, which we find attributed to it by the ancients.—The isles that appear under the names of *Tyrus* and *Aradus* are, one Ormus, and the other Arek.—In the interior country, where modern geography finds many cities, we can only indicate *Carmania* as referring to antiquity, and in those



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



that we discover *Rambacia*, which Alexander found in his route before passing a defile of mountains, which would appear the *Parsici Montes* of Ptolemy.—The nation of *Oritæ* find their name in that of Haûr, and the *Arabitæ* in Araba.—A canton named *Sangada*, contiguous to the mouth of the Indus, is that of the Sanganes, known by their inhospitable treatment of strangers who have the misfortune to fall into their hands.

SECTION TENTH.

MEDIA;

IRAK-AJAMI, AND ADERBIGIAN.

MEDIA is separated on the north from *Armenia* by the *Araxes*, and then bounded by the southern shore of the *Caspian Sea*. *Persis* and *Susiana* are the countries contiguous to it on the south; *Assyria* on the west, and *Aria* on the east. A part of this country is mountainous, especially that on the side of *Assyria*, whence arose the distinction by the Arabic name of al-Gebel, or the mountain. And a ridge that reigns to the south of the *Caspian Sea*, bounds a vast plain, a great part of which, being covered with salt, is uncultivated and desert. The name of *Irak*, with the surname *Ajami*, that is to say, *Persian Irak*, to distinguish it from the *Irak Arabi*, which is *Babylonia*, extends at present over a great part of ancient *Media*. We know that there was a time when the *Medes*, having shaken off the *Assyrian* yoke, ruled over that part of *Asia* which extended towards the west as far as the river *Halys*; but we know very little of the commencement of their monarchy.

ATROPÁTENA. The part of Media contiguous to Armenia was distinguished by the name of *Atropatena*, from that of Atropates, satrap of this particular province, who, in the dissensions which reigned among the Macedonian generals after the death of Alexander, rendered himself independent, and took the title of king, which his successors enjoyed for many ages. The name now given to this country is Aderbigian, from the Persian term Ader signifying fire; according to the tradition that Zerdust, or Zoroaster, lighted a pyre or temple of fire in a city named Urmiah, of this his native country. We find also in an Arabian geographer the name of Atrib-kan, in which it is easy to recognise Atropatena.—The capital is named *Gaza*, or *Gazaca*, and its position is that of Tebriz, or, as it is more commonly pronounced, Tauris: which nevertheless among the Armenians bears the name of Ganzak. In the account of the expedition of Heraclius against the Persians, there is mention, under the name of *Thebarmai*, of a city which there is reason to take for Urmiah though its orthography be not conformable to that of places in the ancient geography. Between Tebriz and this city, a great salt-water lake which is named *Spatu* in Strabo, is Capoton in the Armenian geography. Huiakou-Khán, grandson to Genghiz, and who abolished the khalifat in the thirteenth century, amassed the spoils of a part of Asia in a fortress insulated by this lake; and he caused to be erected, at the neighbouring city of Maraga, an observatory, from which Nasir-uddin, a distinguished astronomer among the orientals, was appointed to make observations.

GREAT MEDIA. A lake given by Ptolemy, in the name of *Marcianes*, can be found only in the above, because the country affords no other. And if we read it *Matianes*, we shall find it communicating this name to a neighbouring province which is *Matiana* in Strabo, and *Mantineia* in Herodotus. Ptolemy derives from this lake a stream, which conducts into the river *Amardus*, that has its mouth in the Caspian Sea; but the lake of Capotan, though it receives rivers, renders none; and the *Amardus* can only be the Kezil-Ozein, that pierces the chain of mountains which we have described as covering the southern shore of this sea. It takes its name from the *Amardi*, or *Mardi*, who in the defiles of almost inaccessible mountains maintained a barbarous independence: and this canton is well known, as having served for the dwelling of the Assassins who were exterminated by Hulakou. This ulterior country, [as regards, *Atropatena*, is distinguished in antiquity by the qualification of the *Great Media*.—It is known that the capital in this country, as of the whole Median empire, was *Ecbatana*, constructed by Dejoces, who was elevated to the regal dignity over a people who, before his time, had no regular or decided form of government. The Persian monarchs, and those of the Parthians, made this city their retreat during the heats of summer, which were excessive both at Susa and Ctesiphon. It is agreed withal to refer to Hamadan the site of *Ecbatanes*; this name being used also in the plural.—The name of *Orontes*, given to a great mountain in the neighbourhood of this city, is to be developed in the name of Eruend, which, as well as that of Eluend, it now bears.—On the route which leads from Bagdad to Hamadan, a



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

trance to the country towards the south, that environs the sea of the same name,) are indubitably known.—The *Tapuri* inhabiting this country, have given it the name of Tabaristan, though it is otherwise called Mazanderan. Its principal city *Zadra-Carda*, has not entirely lost this name in that of Sari.—The *Gela* owed their name to Ghilan, a low and miry district, according to the proper signification of this name. Among the cities of this country, Kurab appears to be an alteration of the name of *Cyropolis*, a position which Ptolemy places on this shore. The *Mardus*, of which we have spoken, is called Ipserud towards its mouth.—But leaving the Caspian Gates on the left, to advance towards the extremity of Media, we enter a canton at the foot of the mountains celebrated under the name of *Choara* for the amenity of its situation; and it is still named Kaûr.—Demegan, the principal city of a country named now Comis, and heretofore *Comisene*, is cited under the name of *Hecaton-pylos*, which, referring to the time of the Greek domination in these provinces, signifies the Hundred Gates; a figurative expression, alluding to the numerous routes which diverge from it to the circumjacent country: and when it is found in Ptolemy that this extremity of Media was that called *Parthia*, having *Hecaton-pylos* for its capital, it must be understood of the time when a people, hitherto but inconsiderable, had extended their limits far and wide by the prevailing fortune of their arms.—Here are recognised two particular cantons, *Articene* and *Tabiene*, one by the name of Ardistan, the other by the name of two neighbouring cities, to which that of Tabas is common.

SECTION ELEVENTH.

ARIA, BACTRIANA, ET SOGDIANA,

KHORASAN, AND USBEC TARTARY.

ARIA VEL ARIANA. The name of this country is properly that of a particular province; and it is by extension of its limits, to comprehend several adjacent cantons, that *Ariana* appears a name distinguished from *Aria* in antiquity. This extension was carried by Strabo as far as the mouths of the Indus; and its limits are described in such a manner as to embrace the frontier of Carmania as far as Gedrosia. But, without descending thus to the sea, it may be said that the country which represents the ancient *Ariana*, is that which the Persians call Khorasan, because of its relative situation towards the rising sun; and the name of *Choro-mithrena*, in which is recognised that of Mithras, the deity of the sun, according to the ancient Persians, would correspond with the situation of the same country, if Ptolemy did not apply it to a district of Media less remote than Khorasan.

Aria had a principal city of the same name; and when we read that *Artacoana*, among the nation of the *Arii*, was the royal residence, the same city is to be understood, under a particular and distinctive denomination, which extended to all the country in its dependence. There is also mention of a river called *Arius*; and it may be remarked that Heri-rud, or the river Heri, passes by Herat, the capital of the country, and the most considerable city of Khorasan.—*Susia*, on the route of Alexander, immediately before he arrived at Artacoana, preserves its name in Zeuzan.—But the river *Arius*,

and a lake called *Aria Palus*, are subjects of difficulty. There is no other lake known in all this country than that of Zere, so called from a city whose name is found to be *Zaris* in Ctesias. There is mention also of a city named *Alexandria* in Aria, and which is placed by Ptolemy near this lake. To judge of its position, it must be remarked that Alexander, who from Artacoana entered the country of the Zaranges (of whom we shall presently speak,) must have found his passage between the western extremity of lake Zere and the neighbouring mountains. Now it is probable that a route indicated from the capital of the Zaranges towards this extremity, led to a place of some consideration; and a town of that description named Corra, is thus situated. But wherefore is not this Alexandria reputed to appertain to Aria, since it was situated on the *Aria Palus*? We have seen then Alexander pass from Aria into an adjacent country, whose principal city, named *Prophthasia*, preserves in the name of Zarang that of the *Zarangai*, otherwise *Drangæ*, who inhabited this country.—The *Etymander*, known at present by the name of Hindmend, traverses this country, to convey into lake Zere what remains of its waters, after numerous derivations; and does not descend northward to the sea, as Ptolemy would represent, who seems indeed to have been indifferently instructed in the chorography of Aria and its dependencies.—The *Ariaspæ*, whom succours afforded to Cyrus had caused to be distinguished with the surname of *Euergetæ*, or Benefactors, are still recognised by the name of Der-gasp.—Among the provinces of the Parthian empire is *Anabon*, which following Aria, and preceding the Drangiane, has a great city, whose name of *Phra*, or rather



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



HYRCANIA. The limits of *Hyrkania* are not easily determined. To assume as a term the mouth of a river named *Sideris*, where the sea commonly called Caspian begins to take, according to Pliny, the name of *Mare Hyrcanum*, is to circumscribe it within the angle which this sea forms between the east and the south. This river of *Sideris* has not lost its name so totally as not to be found again in that of Ester, of which the name of Ester-Abad, or the city Ester, is formed: and, in the oriental pronunciation, Sider and Ester are confounded.

Zadracarta, mentioned in treating of Media, is qualified as the royal city of Hyrcania, in the history of Alexander's expedition; and the position of *Saramane*, given to Hyrcania by Ptolemy, is found by the name of Siarman on this Southern shore. But we know that different times prescribe different limits to countries. According to the recital which we owe to Polibius of the expedition of Antiochus III, king of Syria, against the Parthians, *Syringis*, which, by the circumstances of this narrative is very remote and beyond the mountains, is the principal city of Hyrcania; and that which Ptolemy gives under the same name of *Hyrkania*, appears to be this city. Now the actually existent capital of this country being Jorjan, according to our pronunciation, is more correctly Corcan; in which we may perceive what, according to the orthography of the ancient writers, is *Hurcan*, or Hyrcania.—In the description of the provinces of the empire of the Parthians, the country of Hyrcania succeeds immediately to *Astabena*, having a city where it is said that the first Arsaces, founder of this empire, was proclaimed king. The name of this city is read *Asaac*: and one may perceive therein the resem-

blance with that of *Zûsh* on this frontier. The *Dahestan*, which is contiguous, evidently owes this name to the nation of *Dahæ*, which *Arsaces* governed — The *Barcanii* mentioned in the armies of the kings of Persia, retain their name in that of *Balkan*, which a mountain and a gulf adjacent still bear.—*Apavaretica* was the name of an inland province, which retains that of *Abivêrd*, or *Baverd*.—It was of an adjacent canton named *Parthiene* that the name of *Parthian*, once so illustrious, was formed. This canton, under the kings of Persia, and the Macedonian princes of Syria, was subordinate to *Hircania*, and of little consideration. But the conquests of the Parthians extended the name of *Parthia* to that part of *Media* situated beyond the *Caspian Gates*.—*Parthounisa*, as it appears in the description already cited of this part of the empire of the Parthians, or *Nisæa*, was the principal city of *Parthiene*, and the place of sepulture for their kings. *Nesa* is still the name of this city; which, beyond the hills of *Sahar*, or the *Sariphi* of *Ptolemy*, has before it vast plains, proper for the *Parthian* nomades, or shepherds, as they were characterized. And it was thence that the *Turkish* sultan, ancestor of the *Ottoman* family, departed for the banks of the *Euphrates*.—Let us add that a river which flows in the environs of *Nesa*, falls into the *Caspian Sea*, under the name of *Ochus* in antiquity.

We have yet to speak of a province which was comprised in the empire of the Parthians. *Margiana*, adjacent to *Bactriana*, lay east of *Parthiene*, and north of *Aria*. It owed its name to the river *Margus*, which issues from the mountains between *Bactriana* and *Aria*; and like the

Arius, to which its course is parallel, is absorbed a little below the capital on the borders of the desert; by which a great part of this country is enveloped; the Persians preserving its name in Marg-ab. The fertility of a particular canton determined Antiochus, son of Seleucus Nicator, to inclose it with a rampart of fifteen hundred stadia, as appears by Strabo. But probably these stadia are of the shortest scale, as that seems to have been especially used in the eastern countries.—The prince whom we have just mentioned made a new and very considerable city of a situation which Alexander had judged proper for an *Alexandria*, altering its name at the same time to that of *Antiochia*. This is known to the oriental geography by the name of Marou; with the surname of Shahi-gian, as who should say, the soul or affection of the sovereign; the great calamities which it has suffered from those revolutions to which Asiatic states have ever been extremely subject, having not totally annihilated it. The name of Marou is common to another city, which is Marou-rund, or Marou of the River: and this river is the Merg-ab.—*Maruca* is a position to report here; because we recognise the *Marucæi* in the canton named Marushak, adjacent to Marou, though placed by Ptolemy in Bactriana; where we shall have occasion to remark a still more eccentric transposition by this geographer.

BACTRIANA. *Bactriana* extends along the southern bank of the *Oxus*, which separates it from *Sogdiana*. The mountains, which are a continuation of the *Paropamisus*, covering the north of *India*, bound *Bactriana* towards the south.—This country is said to be of such high antiquity as to have been conquered by Ninus. It



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

tan is still the name of the country between the mountains and the Gihon, or Oxus.—A city under the name *Aornos*, which appears common to many places strong by situation, can be no better assigned than to Talekan, having a castle on a mountain called Nokr-koh, or the Mountain of Silver, which was besieged by Genghizkhan. And this concludes what we have to say concerning Bactriana.—it must nevertheless be added, that if Ptolemy here places *Maracanda*, which actually belongs to Sogdiana, it is that the latitude of this city does not amount to the height whereto he advances Sogdiana, but is included in the space which he assigns by a proportionate exaggeration of this country immediately contiguous.

SOGDIANA. This country extends along the right or northern side of the river *Oxus*, or, in the oriental geography, *Gihon*, whose course divides two great regions, Iran and *Touïran*; the one embracing the Persian provinces in general, the other extending over the countries of ancient *Scythia*. The country called by us *Trans-Oxiane* corresponds with that which the orientals also express by the name of *Mader-cnnahr*, or beyond the river. The name of *Sogdiana* subsists in that of *al-Sogd*, proper to a valley which, for its exuberant fertility, is one of the four cantons distinguished by the name of *Ferdons*, or *Paradise*.—This valley is watered by a river which the historians of Alexander call *Polyitmetus*, or the most precious: and it is by the numerous drains derived from this river that the adjacent lands are fertilized, while the parent stream is thereby so much reduced that it wants power to attain the *Oxus*.—*Maracanda* preserves its name in *Samarkand*, in the valley of

Sogd, on this river. We read in the oriental geographers that this city, which Timur, or Temir-leng, made the capital of his empire, has a vast exterior space environed by a wall, to protect it against the sudden incursions of the enemy, to which it is extremely exposed, from the character of the neighbouring nations. The same is reported of Bukara, which only yields to Samarkand in this country: but to which there cannot be assigned a correspondent position among those mentioned in antiquity.—We, however, recognise some of these. *Oxiana* cannot be better applied than to Termed, because it is the great passage of the *Oxus*, between the country of Balk and Maſer-ennahr.—A considerable river named Wash is received into the Gihon: and the name of *Bascatis*, in Ptolemy, appears to have affinity with it; though he makes it one of the rivers which contribute to form the Jaxartes.—There was an *Alexandria* in this canton: and the surname of *Oxiana*, which distinguishes its individuality, according to Ptolemy, authorises the presumption of its being upon the *Oxus*: and, in the Arabian geography of Edrisi, *Alexandria* is a city of this country, without an indication of its situation. If we place it above *Oxiana* or *Termed*, as in Ptolemy, it may have occupied a position which, before the domination of Timur, the princes who governed what is called the empire of Zagatai had chosen for their residence, under the name of Sali-Seraï.—A place which is only distinguished by the appellative *Petra*, or the Rock, and which was besieged by Alexander, corresponds with that named in the country itself *Shadman*; but by the Turks *Hisarek*, which in their lan-

guage denotes a fortress.—*Nautaca* is thought to be discovered in Nek-shab; as in Nur, or Nour, is supposed the canton called *Naura*, where a défile was guarded by another rock, or *Petra*.—The situation and the name of *Kaous* refer to *Gabæ*, which is mentioned as one of the first places to which the exploits of Alexander have given celebrity in this country.—Another more remarkable, was a city constructed by Cyrus, on the hither bank of the Jaxartes, in his expedition against the Massagetses, named *Cyreschata*; a name which in its termination expresses a position the most remote. It was destroyed by Alexander, to substitute a city of his own name, distinguished by the surname of *Ultima*, corresponding in Latin with the precedent term in Greek. There is no position which so evidently represents these cities as that of Cogend, which presents itself before entering the country of Fergana on this bank of the Sion, or Jaxartes.

The country traversed by the Oxus in the latter part of its course, belonged to the *Chorasmii*; and is well known by its modern name of Kharasm, or Khoaresm. under the second empire of the Persians, we find it occupied by a Scythian nation, called *Euthalites* by the Greeks of the Lower Empire; and whose name of Hai-atelah in Abulfeda extends over all the Maûr-ennahr, which is ordinarily attributed to the Tartars called Uzbeks.—The name of *Gorgo* is observed to be that of the capital of the Euthalites: and the city known at present in Kharasm under the name of Urghenz, is the same with Corcang in the oriental geographers.—According to the ancients, both the *Oxus* and *Jaxartes* have their mouths in the Caspian Sea. However, we know by actual



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SECTION TWELFTH

SCYTHIA ASIATICA, ET SERICA,

PART OF TARTARY AND TIBET, &C.

SCYTHIA ASIATICA. This *Scythia*, according to the knowledge that the ancients had of it, was but a small part of that which common usage comprehends under the general name of Tartary.* *Scythia* is divided by Ptolemy into *Scythia intra Imaüm*, and *Scythia extra Imaüm*.—The mountain of *Imaüs* is connected with *Paropamisus* by the chain which covers the north of India; and in the Indian geography we find the name of *Imeïa Pambadam*, wherein is a remarkable affinity with that of the two mountains above mentioned. In the prolongation of this chain to the east, between *Scythia* and India, it takes the name of *Emodus*; and it is reasonable to suppose that the observations of modern geographers have given a precision to the natural features and local circumstances of this country, which cannot be expected from Ptolemy. But it is evident that *Imaüs*, to divide *Scythia*, must detach a branch which extends far towards the north.—We find no name more considerable in *Scythia* than that of *Massagete*,

* This name of Tartary is of recent date; that of Tatar, as it should be written, only appearing towards the close of the twelfth century; and even limited to a single horde or tribe, whose submission to that of the Moguls commanded by Genghiz Kahn, was the first achievement of this conqueror: an event that did not hinder the name of the vanquished people from prevailing over the other to such an amount, as to become a general indication for almost half the continent of Asia.

which may be interpreted the Great Getes, by the signification of the initial syllables. The primitive and principal dwelling of the *Massagetes* was beyond the Jaxartes or Araxes, according to Herodotus; and in the vicinity of the moor which the same river forms, according to Strabo. And if we find this name in other countries, as in those of the *Alans* and the *Huns*, of a different race, the diffusion of it was owing to the celebrity that it acquired in Scythia. The proper name of *Geté* has remained to a vast country, extending to *Serica*.—Southward of these, the *Sacæ* formed a great nation of Nomades, who had no cities, but inhabited caverns and forests, and who repelled Cyrus in his attack upon them.—A country which immediately succeeds *Sogdiana* towards the east, preserves the name of *Sakita*. The *Comedæ* inhabited the mountains that cover this country on the northern side, and whence the Jaxartes takes its source.—A position under the name of *Turris Lapidea* attracts attention to a fortress on a steep rock, named *Aatas*.—Towards the common limits of the two Scythias, the station appointed for the reception of the merchants whom commerce attracted to the country of the *Seres*, may be represented by that named *Souc*, if it have any relation to the same word in the Arabic language, signifying a fair or market. We may add, that the passage of a mountain gives entrance into the country of *Kashgar*; as *Casia Regio* is placed by *Ptolemy* in the farther Scythia, in the same parallel with the above mentioned position, and immediately succeeding it.—The position of *Ascou*, farther north than *Kashgar*, corresponds otherwise as well as in the circumstance of being a principal place, with that named

Auxacia, in Ptolemy.—We shall speak of *Issedon*, of this Scythia, in treating of *Serica*.—As to the *Abii*, a Scythian people, described as the most just among men, it is as difficult to find them morally as geographically; and Strabo gives this people to Europe, whom other writers place in Asia. The *Arimaspi*, who have but one eye, are in the same category, referred to one and the other division of the world; and the *Griphi*, or Griffons, who guarded the gold that the *Arimaspians* endeavoured to seize, may, together with the two former, be consigned to the regions of romance. The *Sigrippei* of Herodotus should be, from the manner in which he speaks of them, rather a society of Bramins or Lamas, than a particular nation.

SERICA: *Serica* appears to be a continuation of the same country with Scythia, without a separation marked by any local circumstance. The name of the people, or *Seres*, is cited in many writers of antiquity; but it is to Ptolemy alone that we owe any detail of the country, as well as of the anterior part of Scythia. And among all the regions which the geography of Ptolemy comprehends, it is not without some surprise that we remark *Serica* to be the most correctly treated, although one of the objects the most remote in it. But this country was on the route by which a great trade was maintained with the frontier of China; and he might have gained information of its chorography by the same way. An ancient denomination, and truly Scythian, is that of *Gete*, which extends over *Serica*. However, there is another known; the name of *Eygur*, more special and appropriate, which refers to those of *Ithaguri*, given to this nation; and *Ithagurus*, a mountain of the country. It must be added,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

held separate courses towards the north. This river, on the frontier of China, is represented with conformity to these circumstances, as a double stream under the name of Etziné. Now the reigning city in all ages, on this frontier, having been Kan-tcheou, and these natural features corresponding withal, it must undoubtedly represent the capital of Serica. This city, whose name appears under the form of Campition, in Marco-Polo, commanded, as he expresses it, the country of Tangut: and if this country make at present a part of the Chinese province of Shefi-si, it must be observed that in Kan-tcheou resides a particular governor, independent of the viceroy of the province. It was heretofore the residence of princes of a powerful nation, mentioned in Chinese history under the name of Hœi-hé; and the sciences were there cultivated. A remarkable circumstance in its position is, having the latitude well ascertained by observation, in our days, to a fraction of a degree, the same with that of *Sera* in Ptolemy; who appears to have been accurately informed of some particular parallels in the east.

We see, in Ptolemy, *Serica* confining upon a country of the *Sinæ*, between the east and south: a circumstance that requires explanation, to prevent a confusion with a country of the same name, which will appear in this work, annexed to the article of India, without deviating from the order that Ptolemy has observed in the arrangement of the same objects. History, which must often illustrate geography, will show us who were the *Sinæ* contiguous with *Serica*, far distant from the *Sinæ* beyond the Ganges. Shen-si, bordering on *Serica*, comprised, about eight hundred years before the Christian

æra, a kingdom called Tsin; and it must be believed that it is by comparison with this kingdom of Tsin, that, in Chinese books the country to the west, and of greater extent, is called Ta-Tsin, or the Great Tsin. For, besides that the Chinese do not designate their country by this name, it is well known that their pride will not suffer it to be compared with any other. The name of Tsin, comprised in Shen-si, was preserved by the western people whom commerce brought across Serica. Moreover, the situation which we discover here to be that of Serica, by an immediate succession of anterior regions, and by a rigorous application of places reported in this country to those locally correspondent, is not that which it has been made to take: the northern part of China having been hitherto thought to represent it, while the position of *Sera* has been transported to Peking, three hundred leagues distant from that which actually belongs to it.—Antiquity publishes extraordinary things concerning the *Seres*: such as two hundred years of life, an unalterable love of justice, aversion from war, and no taste for the arts. But though this last circumstance may enter into the character of a Scythian nation, we are not to form the same judgment of those which precede.

The ancients appear to have had a false idea of silk; the name of which having an evident analogy to that of Serica, it may not be improper to enter into a brief disquisition of the subject here. The ancients describe it to be a kind of white wool growing on the leaves of a tree, from which it was disengaged for carding by means of a suffusion of water. This seems to be a plau^s

sible error, the description resembling what appears in a Chinese memoir concerning Eygur; that in this country is a tree producing a species of fruit, from which is drawn a thread very white and very fine.* However this may be, there is mention of the silk-worm, under the name of *Ser*, in a writer of the second century; though this worm was reputed Indian, because it was from India that silk was immediately brought into the west.

SECTION THIRTEENTH.

INDIA ET SINÆ,

THE TWO PENINSULAS AND COCHIN CHINA.

INDIA is the most extensive part of ancient Asia, as it is one of the most celebrated. Sciences and polity are found among the Indians from the earliest time in which the country was known. The enterprises of Cyrus, and of Darius son of Hystaspes, on India, preceded by an expedition of Semiramis, and by that attributed to Dionysius or Bacchus, have afforded to the west no particular knowledge of this country. Nor did Europe acquire any geographical acquaintance with India till the invasion of it by Alexander. It was under Seleucus Nicator, who, in the dismemberment of the empire of this conqueror, saw all the east under his dominion, that this continent was explored to the Ganges, and the bounds which the sea prescribed to it on the south were ascertained by navigators. But navigation and commerce, more favourable still than war to the extention of the

* Is not cotton here the subject of disquisition?



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Alexander, in his expedition for India, departed from the *Alexandria* founded at the descent of the Paropamisus, when advancing towards Bactriana, as we have shown above. The oriental geographers agree that this *Alexandria* is Kandahar, a place often disputed between Persia and India. But the analogy of which they speak in this denomination cannot be acquiesced in, since the name of Kandahar seems to come from the ancient Persian term Kohund, or, by abbreviation, Kond or Kand, denoting a fortress.—After a river named *Cophes*, which may be that in the environs of Kandahar; the *Coas*, or the *Cohes*, which Alexander met with, is known by its actual name of *Cou*.—The nation of *Aspii*, and a river under the name of *Euaspha*, which is not mentioned elsewhere, are beyond; then follow the *Guræi*, and the river *Guræus*—The *Assaceni*, who succeeded, are found by the knowledge acquired of a particular canton and city named Ash-nagur, the last member of the name being a term in the Indian language common to principal cities. Now this canton being beyond that which has been for some time known under the name of Cabul, and even beyond the city of Devava more recently known, it must be the region given between the river *Choas* and the nation of the *Assaceni*. This interval is intersected both by the river of Cabul, called Behat or of Spices, otherwise Hezare, or the Thousandth, and by that which passes by Devava. Actual information of Ash-nagur places this city at the confluence of the Behat and the Sind: and this is the first indication that we have of the Indus, whose source must thus be in the north-west angle of India, in the province named Kaka-

ner.*—There is found in Ptolemy, between the Coas and the Indus, a river named *Suastus*, communicating to a canton the name of *Suastene*; and although there be no other mention of it in antiquity, modern geography knows a river and a canton named Suvat, which is evidently the same. It must be observed, at the same time, that the information thus acquired places the region and the river of Suvat beyond the Sind, which we have met with. On the other hand the position of *Barrisadis*, which in the march of Alexander preceded the passage of the Indus, and which the return of Timur from his expedition in India makes known by the name Berudgee, would intimate that the river called Indus is not the Sind hitherto, but the Tchenav, which issues from Kashmir, and at whose confluence with the preceding Indus the city of Attock is situated.—The advantage of the situation of Attock, and some analogy in this denomination, which seems preceded by an article in the oriental manner, concur to represent *Taxila*, the most considerable city in this part of India.—On the Suvat, at its entrance into the Sind, the name of Renas has a manifest affinity with that of *Aornos*, the famous

* In the country called Souhad by Rennel, who, though he differs from M. D'Anville in many of his names, agrees exactly with him in the latitude and longitude of the sources of the Sind, and in the direction of the mountains which cover them. But the disagreement may be easily reconciled, by observing the great diversity of popular names for the same objects in Hindoostan, occasioned by the frequent revolutions and conquests which this unhappy country has suffered.

rock in the submission of which Alexander thought his glory interested. Modern geography indicates another place of similar situation, under the name of Tchekin-kot, below Attock, in the angle formed by the confluence of the Cou with the Sind. As it is said in history that *Embolima* was a city in the vicinity of Aornos, and as the position of this city in Ptolemy appears in the neighbourhood of the Coas and Indus, and lower than Taxila, Tchekin-kot rather than Renas should represent *Aornos*. But when we read in Strabo that Aornos is towards the sources of the Indus, we shall be more inclined to apply to it the position of Renas.—It is deemed necessary to explain also the circumstances that regard *Caspira*, placed in Kashmir. It is given as a principal city, communicating its name to a country; but placed according to Ptolemy more towards the centre of India than Kashmir. An evident analogy in the names is a presumption of identity; and it can hardly be believed that the knowledge of this country, so celebrated in India for the amenity of its aspect, was unknown to the ancients. And yet, in the detail of the marches of Alexander, we see nothing resembling what distinguishes the situation of this region, encompassed by mountains.—On this side of the Indus, *Nysa* was a city which merited to be known to Alexander. Its foundation is attributed to Dionysius or Bacchus, in his expedition from India, and Indian traditions mention *Nysada-buram*; that is to say, the city of Nysa and of a hero who issued from it. Ptolemy gives the position of it under the name of *Nagara*; adding that its name is also *Dionysiopolis*. Nagar, or Nagur, is known to be an Indian term for a city of the first rank; and modern geography recognises this espe-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

arrived at the Indus. These circumstances seem the more worthy to be reported here, as the knowledge resulting from them is not supplied by any modern memoir that has hitherto appeared.—We are not sufficiently acquainted with the shores of the Hydaspes to ascertain what positions hold the place of *Bucephala* and *Nicaea*, cities founded by Alexander in memory of his horse, and of the victory won from Porus. But a common distance given in the ancient itinerary measure of India with regard to *Lahaur*, fixes these cities upon the same radius, on opposite sides of the river. And the city which is here assumed as a central point, should be written *Lahora*, instead of *Tahora*, as it appears in the document called the Theodosian Table.—*Sangala*, between the Hydraotes and the Hyphasis, after having retarded the progress of Alexander in suffering a siege, was totally subverted by that conqueror. *Sangala* is found in Ptolemy with the name of *Euthymedia* also: but we would fain read it *Euthydemia*, after a Greek who directed a successful insurrection in Bactriana against the Seleucidæ, and pushed his conquest deeply into India, where he re-established a city under his own name.—On the further shore of the Hyphasis Alexander erected *Altars* as a monumental term of his progress eastward.—A little beyond these is a position meriting notice, under the name of *Serinda*. This name is cited as national in the history of Julian; for we find there both the *Indi* and the *Ser-Indi*: and it was from *Serinda* that silk was brought to Justinian. In the modern name of this place, which is *Serhend*, there ought to be remarked the name proper to *Serica*, combined with that which in the oriental geography is used to denote India.—The course of the

Acesines conducted Alexander into the canton occupied by the powerful nation of the *Malli*, to which that of the *Oxydracæ* was contiguous. It can scarcely be doubted that Mol-tan, or Multan, a considerable city, represents the capital of the first; and it is thought that a fragment of the name of the second is discovered in the form of Outché, on the Indus, above the confluence of the Acesines. But to an *Alexandria* founded on the point of this confluence, modern observation affords nothing applicable.

It remains that we pursue the course of the Indus to its issue in the sea. The royal city of the *Sogdi*, which Alexander met with in descending this river, and which was renovated by him, can be no other than Bukor, which has served for the residence of the kings of this country. Limited to a holm, the towns, or suburbs rather, Sukor and Louhri, accompany it on opposite shores.—The name of *Sindo-mana*, composed of that of the river itself, is applicable to the position of a city which immediately succeeds the preceding.—A stream emanating from the Indus to rejoin it below, incloses a spacious island named *Prasiane*, or the Verdant.—We are instructed that *Minagara*, the principal city of the country, and situated on this river, is the same with al-Mansora, which, as appears by the oriental geography, bore the name of *Minhale*, before it fell under the Mohammedan power, in the khalifat of al-Mansor, the second of the Abbassides.—The Indus, in approaching the sea, divides itself into two arms; and at the angle of this division, a city named *Patala* gave the name of *Patalene* to the island which these branches describe. This situation corresponds with that of Tatta-nagar, and the

name of Tatta is sometimes extended to the province: but it must be said that this province is more frequently denoted in the name of Sind, borrowed from that of the river. And this name of Sind is moreover continued from the mouths of the Indus towards the west in Gedrosia, comprising the territories of the *Arabia* and *Oritæ* before mentioned — The *Barbaricum Ostium* is the principal mouth, and that which is on the right in descending; and the *Emporium* of the same name corresponds with the position of Debil, or Divl-Sindi.—That of *Xylenopolis*, or the City of Wood, the construction of which is attributed to Alexander, who visited the left branch as well as the right, is applied to the port of Laheri, only on the single presumption of local conformity.—The part of India which we have hitherto traversed, being that wherein history requires the most illustration from geography, we have endeavoured to detail in a manner that will be found sufficient to fix the principal objects of historic circumstances. As to the name of *Indo-Scythia*, given to all the country towards the lower part of the Indus, there is reason to believe that the dominion established in India by the Greeks of Bactriana, was destroyed by an eruption of the Scythians of the countries of Geté, who thus imparted to the name of their own nation: and we observe in Cherefeddin's account of the expedition of Timur, the remains of a numerous people of the name of Geté, subsisting in the centre of India.

The Ganges, although of more considerable magnitude than the Indus, furnishes not so great a number of positions known to antiquity. Its sources, and the upper part of its course, to the point where it changes from



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



bar made his capital in the sixteenth century; *Metho-
ra* on the *Gemné* in Matura, which a celebrated pago-
da or Indian temple distinguishes; and *Sambalaca* on the
Ganges, in Sanbal. The name of *Scandrabatis* in Pto-
lemy differs little from that of Scanderbad in the coun-
try, as proper to a city which in distant ages was a capi-
tal.—Descending the Ganges, we see in Ptolemy a po-
sition between the arms by which this vast river disem-
bogue its waters, named *Gange Regia*. But if the ge-
neral want of precision observed on the part of Ptolemy
permit us to ascribe to this a city corresponding more
in moral than in local circumstances, it would be that of
Raji-mohol, near the first division of the river into two
principal arms. The name of this city distinguished
it as a legal residence, while the vestiges of antiquity in
its environs are evidences of its faded splendor.*—As to
the mouths of this river, the *Magnum Ostium* of Ptole-
my can only correspond with the spacious entrance
most frequented by Europeans, which conducts towards
a place well known under the name of Hougly.

To that which hitherto constitutes the north of India,
succeeds the southern part, on this side of the Ganges.
And this subject will lead us back to take our departure
from near the mouths of the Indus. In the bottom of
the gulf which receives this river, called *Canthi Sinus*,
now the Gulf of Sindi, the name of a river which is Pa-
dar is intimately analogous to that of *Orbadari*, given to
a city in Ptolemy.—Up this river, we discover in the city

* On the Mogul conquest, the court of Bengal was removed
to Mourshedabad.

of Asmer, a position named *Gagasmira*.—The maritime country of Soret is that which we find to have been named *Syrastene*.—Islands on one side of the gulf preserve in their names of Barseti, or Balseti, that of *Barace*.—What Ptolemy calls *Larice*, corresponds with Guzerat; and the name of Lar is found applied to the peninsula which comprehends a great part of this country.—Among the positions recognised therein, that of *Baleocuri-regia* is particularly interesting. The sovereign which this name designates, is celebrated as equally potent and well respected among the Indian princes, in the oriental writings; where the title which distinguishes him, rather than a proper name, is read Balahara. Cambay, at the bottom of a gulf, was the port to the place of his residence; as this town is still to Amed-abad, the capital of Guzerat.—*Ozene*, another royal city, appears in the name of Ugen; and *Mandiadeni* in that of Mandou, which is a considerable fortress.—Returning towards the coast, we find *Barygaza* to have been, in relation to Indian commerce, what Cambay has since been, and what Surat is at present. This city is well known to be Barokia, or Berug, as the Persians call it.—In a situation conformable to that of Surat, that is to say, at some distance from the sea, the river Nerbedah, which passes it, is found in Ptolemy under the name of *Namadus*.—What is now called the Gulf of Cambay, was named *Barygazenus Sinus*.

We penetrate now into that part of India which, being projected between two seas, is considered as a peninsula. The author of a description of the coasts of the *Erythrean Sea*, informs us that what extends beyond

Barygaza towards the south, is called in the country *Dachanabades*; because *Dachan*, among the Indians, signifies the south: and the last member of the word evidently refers to a Persian term, which it is common to see employed at the end of proper names of cities in India as well as in Persia. The denomination denoting the south, may be observed to subsist in that of *Decan*, or, according to the Indian pronunciation *Daken*. The intelligence of this country will appear limited to maritime places.—Antiquity speaks of pirates who still subsist under the name of *Angrías*; and whose principal retreat is a place named *Vizindruk*, in a small island near the coast. *Muziris*, mentioned as a place much frequented, appears to have been this position; opposite to which is a place named *Giría*.—The country adjacent to this coast was called *Limyrica*, and obeyed another prince than *Baleocur*; and whose residence, named *Carura*, at a distance from the sea, may be represented by a city in a similar situation, called *Kaûri*.—*Nelcynda* was approached by means of a river whose name of *Baris* is found in that of *Bardez*, appropriated to a district bordering on one of the canals which environ the isle of *Goa*; and by which a river called *Ganges*, as an appellative term, communicates with the sea. This place was among the dependencies of a prince called *Pandion*, whose government extended hence to the southern extremity of the peninsula. Vessels of a single piece of wood brought to this port the pepper of a canton named *Cottonara*, which is easily recognised in *Canara*.—A port under the name of *Flancon* may belong to that which is cited as a kingdom on this coast under the name of *Eli*, in *Marco-Polo*, and distinguished by an



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

thones, or men in a position opposite to those in the known hemisphere. Ptolemy, better informed, and reducing Taprobana to an island; with some particulars remarkably correspondent in actual circumstances, makes this island nevertheless about five times more spacious than it really is. Strabo speaks of it as though it lay off the hither coast of India, looking towards the continent of Africa. The name of *Salice*, which we learn from Ptolemy to be the native denomination for this island, is preserved in that of Selen-dive, compounded of the proper name of Selen, and the appellation for an island in the Indian language; and it is apparent that the name of Ceilan, or Ceylon, according to the European usage, is only an alteration in orthography.—The river called *Ganges*, which falls into the sea on the eastern coast, is evidently that which is recognised for the most considerable, under the name of Mowil Ganga.—The name of *Malea*, attributed to the mountains of the island by Ptolemy, is the generic term of Malei, used in the maritime part of the neighbouring continent.—The vestiges which the islanders call *Shingulais*, and report to be those of a great and magnificent city, under the name of Anarodgurro, represent *Anurogrammum*, which Ptolemy distinguishes as a royal city.—The position of *Maagrammum*, with the title of capital, corresponds with that of the present residence of the sovereign, and known by the name of Candi.—There is mention in Piny of another royal city, whose name of *Palasimundum* is remarkable, forasmuch as the name of *Simundi* is given to Taprobana by some authors of antiquity. Here resided a king, from whom the emperor Claudius received an embassy: and from an extensive

lake adjacent to this city, as well as from other circumstances in its situation, it is believed to be represented by that which in the north of the island is named Jafnapatam.—The islands which Ptolemy places off Taprobana, to the number of thirteen hundred and seventy, can be no other than the Maldives, although known to be much more numerous.

We must now resume the coast of the continent, and remount to the Ganges; departing from the promontory which we have seen to be Cagliamere.—*Nigama*, which Ptolemy distinguishes as a capital, is Negapatam.—*Chaberis*, a city and river, appear obviously in Caveripatam, on one of the mouths of that river which communicates to this city its name of Caveri.* The denomination which in the usage of Europeans is Coromandel, being actually Sora-Mandalam, indicates what in Ptolemy is called *Paralia Soretanum*, or the maritime country of Sora Arcot, the principal city in what is called the Carnatic, is the same with *Arcati*, a royal city of Ptolemy; and as he adds to it the name of Sora, it is proper to remark that, among the Indians, the title of the sovereign of the country is Soren.—*Maliarpha* is represented by Meliapur, a city heretofore powerful; although the importance of this place, possessed by the Portuguese under the name of St. Thomas, is now superseded by the adjacent establishment of the English at Madras.—The

* Trichinipoly, on this river, manifests in its name a Greek origin; and may be ascribed to the Egyptian Greeks under the Ptolemies, who, as Pausanias informs us, carried on an active trade with this coast of India.

names of the river *Mesolus*, and of the country *Mesolia*, in Ptolemy, seem to be preserved in that of Masulipatam, of which the last member is a generic term for a city in this part of India. We are inclined to believe that *Palura* is represented by Sipeler, which a celebrated pagoda distinguishes. Ptolemy places in its environs a point which made a landmark in steering towards the Golden Chersonese, but which it is singular enough to see farther south than Cape Comorin.—Resuming our course northward, we find *Cocala* in Sicacola.—*Calinga*, and the nation of *Calingæ*, who extended as far as the mouths of the Ganges, are recognised in the name of Calinga-patam.—On the arm of another river with which canals of the Ganges are known to communicate, and which bears the same name of Ganga, as an appellative term, another position called *Palura* corresponds with that of Balasor; with which we shall conclude the detail of what we deem most remarkable in this extremity of the hither India.

Beyond the Ganges it must be premised, that to Ptolemy the ancient geography is indebted for the principal circumstances which will be found susceptible of illustration by the modern.—A river which immediately succeeds the eastern issue of the Ganges, under the name of *Catabeda*, can be no other than that of Shatigan.—The places of *Sada* and *Berabonna*, which precede a point formed by the bending of the coast towards the east, are remarkable for affinity in name with those of *Sedoa* and *Barabon*: and this point called *Temala* is evidently that of *Negraïs*, insulated by arms of a river of the same name.—*Sabara*, which succeeds, and which gives the name to a gulf formed by a reflection of the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



between *Zaba* and *Thagora*, is the great cape of the Malay territory, between *Saban*, or *Saber*, and *Tingoran*. A position much anterior to the great promontory, and named *Perimula*, must consequently be applied to *Pera* or *Perac*, on the Strait of Malacca; the entrance of which might have given occasion to Ptolemy to imagine a gulf called *Perimulicus*. We are indebted to him for indicating the name of Malay in that of *Mleu-colon*, applied to a particular point.—The *Magnus Sinus*, which by a sudden elevation of the coast towards the north in Ptolemy, as in the actual geography, succeeds immediately, is, with the fullest evidence of which the subject is susceptible, the Gulf of Siam.—The great river which Ptolemy leads to the western shore of this gulf, under the name of *Daona*, is that from which the city of *Tanaserim*, or *Colony of Tana*, borrows its name; and which is known to terminate its course not in the gulf of Siam, but in that of Bengal.—But another considerable river, formed by the union of two streams, having its mouth in the bottom of the *Magnus Sinus*. can only be the *Menan* of the country of Siam, and whose name is appellative in this country for a river of the first magnitude, as *Ganges* and *Sind* are elsewhere.—Reflecting on the particular circumstance of the combination of two rivers concurring with that of the name of *Seri*, appearing at its entrance in one of the earliest maps of the modern geography, we may conclude it to be the *Serus* of antiquity. It is a little beyond the mouth of this river that Ptolemy establishes the confines of India without the *Ganges*, with a country which we think merits a separate treatise.

But before entering upon this subject, we must re-

mark that the isles that we have left in a tract of sea, which, under the name *Gangeticus Sinus*, is infallibly the Gulf of Bengal. To answer to *Bazucata* (whose inhabitants were naked,) placed opposite the coast which tends to the south towards Cape *Temala* or *Negraïs*, modern geography recognises *Chedoué*, inhabited by savages of the nation of *Mogos*, wherewith the kingdom of *Aracan*, on the continent is peopled.—Farther on, the *Bonæ Fortunæ Insulæ*, which some navigator who had the fortune to escape the cruelty of the *Anthrophagi* who inhabit them might have thus named, can be no other than the great *Andaman*.—Of the same description of Savages were those who inhabited the little isles of *Maniolæ*, which being placed adjacent to the precedent towards the south, correspond precisely with those of which the principal is named *Chique Andaman*.—*Barrussæ*, *Sindæ*, *Sabadibæ*, also attributed to cannibals, succeeded in the same order that is observed in the isles of *Nicobar*, assembled into many clusters, which are divided by spacious channels. The last of these, which are described as near an ultimate land named *Jabadii Insula*, must be *Pulo-Wai*, opposite the head of *Sumatra*. It may be remarked that the Malay term of *Pulo* has succeeded that of *Div*, or *Dib*, employed in the name of *Sabadibæ*: and that the notice of their number, which is three, is found to be correct.—Ptolemy had indeed an idea that the *Jabadii Insula* contained a greater space than the precedent isles; for he finds in it two degrees of the meridian on the same parallel, instead of limiting himself to a single degree of latitude and longitude, as in each article of these isles. And this distinction shows an evident relation to the manner in which *Sumatra* pre-

sents itself in the sequence of the isles included in the Gulf of Bengal. The site of the capital, which is the western point, corresponds with that occupied by Ashem: and though this capital is called *Argenta* by Ptolemy, he nevertheless specifies the opulence in gold which distinguishes Sumatra, but whose southern extremity remained unknown to this geographer.

SINÆ. We have seen the India beyond the Ganges terminated at the head of the *Magnus Sinus*, or the Gulf of Siam, by limits which separate it from the country of the *Sinæ*. It is evident in modern geography, that these limits are the same that separate Siam from Camboja. We know that this country, and Cochin-China which is contiguous, occupy a great tract of land which the sea envelops on three sides, from the east to the west by the south. The exterior limits of the farther India were the barriers of the world, when Ptolemy passed them, and described a remoter country, till then unknown by name. But he amplifies its longitude a whole hemisphere to arrive at a term, which is known much less remote. Counting from the meridian of the Fortunate Isles as we do, he advances to 148 degrees, or more, the eastern arm of the Ganges; which, by astronomical observations of our days made on the western arm of that river, is fixed at about 108 degrees: hence it results, that by a proportionate reduction, the 180° of Ptolemy only hold the place of 130°. And the ulterior part respecting the Ganges must suffer a still greater diminution, because the observations made at Siam only add ten degrees and a half to the longitude from the mouth of the Ganges, in a space where Ptolemy employs more than twenty degrees. If it then be remark-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

give to the sea which involves this country, is a derivation from the same name. This name of Sin has followed the progress of navigation and commerce, beyond the true limits of the ancient country of Sin; having been extended by the Portuguese, who preceded the other western nations in these remote longitudes, and became common among those which have followed. And that the country of *Sinæ* ought not to be transported to China, as it appears in all the maps which have preceded those of M. D'Anville, is an article in ancient geography which may justify the foregoing discussion.

The capital of the *Sines* is named *Thynæ* by Ptolemy; and according to the Latin version, which is regarded as a text, *Sinæ*. Its position appears at a distance from the sea, at the mouth of a river named *Cotiaris*, having communication on the left with another river, whose name was *Senus*. This then can be no other than the great river of Camboja; which, eighty leagues above its mouth, divides into two branches. The principal, or that of the right corresponding with the *Cotiaris*, and which is called the Japanese river, conducts to a city of which the Arabian geographers speak as being celebrated for its commerce, under the name of Loukin; and this position appears to answer to that of *Thinæ*, in Ptolemy. But the city of the Sines, named Sin by the Arabian geographers, and the Chinese memoirs *Tehen-tchen*, is a position more remote than Loukin, and is found distinguished by the name of Sin-hoa, as having been the most flourishing city of Cochin-China before its port was destroyed by alluvions of sand. The name of *Thoan hoa*, which its district bears, seems, together with the other circumstances reported, to favour the applica-

tion of the name of *Thina* to this city also. *Thina* is mentioned diversely in many authors of antiquity.—In Ptolemy, two promontories succeed on the eastern shore of the *Magnus Sinus*; *Notium*, or the southern, and *Satirorum*, or that of the satyrs. Opposite this last are little isles of the same name, which the Arabian geographers, as well as Ptolemy, people with a species of animals furnished with tails, as satyrs are represented. Apes of a stature almost human, in the little isles named Pulo Condor, situated in the distance opposite the mouth of the river Camboja, may have caused them to be so called. But that a single point of position for three little isles in Ptolemy should be transposed to the islands of Japan in the maps, is an error too gross to be passed unnoticed. Can it be conceived that Ptolemy carried his observation thus far, when so limited was his intelligence of this extremity of the ancient world, that he represents, as succeeding the promontory of the satyrs, a prolongation of the coast, which, turning to the west, proceeds to join the western coast of Africa, and thus makes the Erythrean Sea a basin that has no communication with the Ocean? Were it here proper to examine the state of geography in different ages, it would appear that this error existed more than a thousand years after Ptolemy, although the maritime commerce was maintained under the Moslem princes. But it is sufficient to have shown how much the limits of ancient Asia should be contracted.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



ÆGYPTUS.

SECT. I.

writings is *Misraim*, which it owes to one of the sons of Cham: and it retains the name of Missir or Mesr under the Turks. There appears no doubt that the name of Copt, which distinguishes the remains of the original nation from the Arabs, who are in great numbers in the country, and from the Turks who rule it, is in the form of Kypt (which is the proper modification of it) no other than the root of the Greek name *Ægyptus*.

To this introduction we shall add what concerns the distinction of the several regions of *Ægypt*; capitally divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*. This last partition is comprehended within the two principal branches of the Nile from its division to its mouths; and the triangular figure of a Greek letter which it resembles, has occasioned it to be called the *Delta*: But it must be added that the country of *Ægyptus Inferior* surpasses both on the east and west the natural limits of the Delta, and is now called Bahri, and Rif; both which terms signify in the Arabic a district bordering on the sea. As to *Ægyptus Superior*, we find it separated from the precedent by a particular province, whose name of *Hepta-nomis* denotes it to have been composed of the union of seven districts or prefectures, which in Egypt are called *Nomes*, of which more than fifty are distinguished in the detail which antiquity furnishes of this country; and whereof thirty are as old as the reign of Sesostrius. The distinction of this province still subsists in the name of Vostani, which expresses in Arabic an intermediate space, as relating to Bahri on one side, or Said, or the superior country on the other. Towards the cataract which formed the boundary of *Ægypt* and ancient *Æthiopia*, a territory owed to the famous Thebes its

SECT. I.

ÆGYPTUS.

proper denomination of *Thebais*: such was the ancient division of Ægypt. But in the multiplication of the provinces of the empire, what lower Ægypt possessed beyond the arm of the Nile, which discharges itself below the modern position of Damiat, composed in the fourth-century a province under the name of *Augustamnica*; and the name of *Ægyptus* remained distinctive of the rest. Under Justinian, we see the Augustamnica divided into two; *first* and *second*; this maritime, and that inland. Corresponding with the ancient *Augustamnica*, is the modern district of Sharkie, so called from the Arabic term Shark, denoting the east, to distinguish it from another district, situated beyond a canal of the river, and named Garbié, from the term Garh, signifying the west. The *Hepta-nomis* took under Arcadius, son of the great Theodosius, the name of *Arcadia*. Finally we see the Thebaïd in a posterior age divided into two, *Anterior* and *Superior*, according to the terms which we find employed to distinguish these parts.—To treat of Ægypt in detail, we deem it expedient to depart from the shore of the sea, as less remote, and ascend the Nile towards Æthiopia.

ÆGYPTUS INFERIOR — This division extends along the sea, according to the limits assigned to it by Herodotus, from a gulf to which a place called *Plinthine* communicates the name of *Plinthinetes*, as far as Mount *Casius*, adjacent to the Sirbonian Bog — On the point of what is now called the Gulf of Arabs, *Taposiris* is indicated in Abousir. — To some other obscure places succeeds the site of *Alexandria*. A long and narrow isle named *Pharos*, was there joined to the continent by a

ÆGYPTUS.

SECT. I.

dyke or causey, which, from its definite length was named *Hepta-Stadium*. It separated the two ports of the city, which was bounded by lake *Marcotis* on the other side. The advantage of this situation, on a shore to which nature has given no other port, determined Alexander to found a city on the site of a more ancient place named *Rhacotis*, and which continued to distinguish the quarter of the city from which the causey was protracted. Another quarter of greater extent, named *Bruchion*, on the principal of the two ports, comprised several palaces which the Ptolemies inhabited. The power to which *Alexandria* arrived, in becoming the great mart for exchange between the East and West, is well known. And this advantage principally arose from its local circumstances. To satisfy a curiosity which the reader may have to be better acquainted with a city of the first rank in the ancient world, he is referred to an appropriate treatise on Egypt, by M. D'Anville, containing, with a topographical plan minutely exact, a description much more circumstantial than can be admitted here. It will be seen that an accumulation of earth formed about the *Heptastadium* is the site of the modern city; and that an inclosure which must have been posterior to the age of antiquity, contains scarcely any thing but ruins.—The lake *Marcotis*, which does not press upon the city so closely as it did heretofore, preserves its name in the form of Birk Mariout.—At a little distance from Alexandria, and on the same shore, a place whose name of *Nicopolis* commemorated an advantage obtained by Augustus over Antony, is now changed into Kasr Kiasera, or the Castle of the Cæsars.—Farther on, *Canopus*, a place condemned for the licentious morals



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

ÆGYPTUS.

SECT. I.

aries give to a great city that has taken the name Foua.—The Milesians, ascending the Nile, had founded a city named *Naucratis*.—*Sais* is mentioned as the capital of this part of the inferior Ægypt, where a place still bears the name of Sa.—*Taua* retains the same name.—*Nicii* having the first rank in a Nome called *Prosopitès*, discovers itself in the name of *Nikios*.—The isle *Prosopitis*, formed by two canals, had a city which, under the name of *Atarbèchis*, was consecrated to Venus; and another where the Athenians sustained a long siege from the Persians, and whose name of *Byblos* appears in that of *Babel*.—At the summit of the Delta the Nile divides into three channels, there being an intermediate one between the two principal branches. To this canal is joined, among other derivations, one issuing from the river a little below the position of *Sebennytus*, which subsists in the name of *Semenud*. The continuation of these canals, re-united in a great lake, which from the city of *Butus* on its southern shore was called *Buticus*, takes at the aperture of this lake its issue in the sea, under a place named *Paralus*, or *Berehos*: and this issue is the *Sebennyticum Ostium*. This maritime part being extremely fenny, was called *Elearchia*; and in this fastness an Ægyptian prince maintained himself against the Persian forces, in the reign of Artaxerxes the Long-handed.—Vestiges of a city called *Tekebi* in the Coptic books, seem to be the same with *Pachnamunis*; and *Onuphis* is represented by a place named *Banub*.—*Busiris* and *Xcis* were cities of note on the river a little above *Semenud*: the first is known in the name of *Busir*; and the second, situated in an isle, could not have been far distant.—To the Sebennytic mouth succeeds

SECT. I.

ÆGYPTUS.

the *Phatniticum Ostium*, and this, which in the time of antiquity yielded in magnitude only to the Canopic and Pelusiatic mouths, is now one of the principal emissions of the river a little below Damiat.—The name of *Tamiatthis*, mentioned in an age which immediately precedes the termination of the object of ancient geography, appears a modification of Damiat.—The three eastern mouths, including the Pelusiatic, are received before their communication with the sea, into a great lagoon or pool, whose name is not mentioned by any ancient writer; but which the places Manzalé and Tennis now cause to be designated by their names.—The *Mendesium Ostium*, now called Dibé, and by the Franks *Peſchiera*, derived its name from *Mendes*; and this city, as well as that of *Thmuis*, according to the concurring testimony of the learned, owe their respective denominations to the goat which was there adored. The position of Ashmun-Tannah may represent the first, and abundant vestiges of the second appear to preserve the name of it in the form of Tmaié — *Panephrisis* must also be mentioned, in a situation adjacent to the lake; a circumstance that justifies the application also of the name *Diospolis* to it. And of cities appearing under two names, the one Ægyptian, the other Greek, there are several examples throughout Ægypt. The place now most considerable on this margin of the lake, is Manzalé.—*Tanis*, a royal city, whose name appears *Zoan* in the Scriptures, preserves, though abandoned to a few shepherds, vestiges in the name of San, not far from that aperture of the lake named *Taniticum Ostium*, but now called Eummé-farreggé.—*Tennesus*, of which there is not mention till an age posterior to the first antiquity, is an insular position in

ÆGYPTUS.

SECT. I.

the lake itself, and now called Tennis. That of Sethron on the lake, towards the Pelusiæc channel, manifests the position of *Sethrum*, otherwise called *Heracleopolis Parva*.

Pelusium, the bulwark and the key of ancient Ægypt, is now known by its ruins in the Arabic name of Tineh, which supplies in signification its ancient denomination, whereby the miry situation of this city was expressed.—Upon the coast, Mount Casius, of no great elevation, projects a promontory named Cape del Kas, or the Chisel; and the adjacent place named *Casium* is called *Catieh*.—The *Pâlus Sirbonis*, which is in the vicinity, and where Typhon the murderer of Osiris is said to have perished, has taken the name of Schaket Bardoil, from the first king of Jerusalem of that name, who died on his return from an expedition in Ægypt, at a place called el-Arish, the ancient *Rhinocorura*, whither this frontier extended, having encroached on the former limits of the Philistine country.—*Ostracine*, which had a position less remote, is indicated by a fragment of its name in a point called Straki.—The entrance of a ravine into the Sirbonian Pool, receiving the pluvial waters of many torrents, which come from the desert comprised in the extent of Arabia Petrea, is the *Torrents Ægypti* of the Scriptures; which, according to Saint Jerome, passes between Rhinocorura and Pelusium. This canton, covered with deep and moving sands, and called by the Arabs for this reason al-Giofar, has in all ages rendered the approach to Ægypt in this quarter, extremely difficult to an enemy.

Re-approaching the Nile, we recognise, in the interval of the Pelusiæc and Tanitic channel, the position of



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



jection, was the site of Heroöpolis.—*Thaubastum*, which, by the means afforded us of ascertaining both one and the other position, is found to be very near, retains its name in the form of Habáseh, towards the head of the lake Sheib before mentioned.

To finish the survey of Lower Ægypt, we must turn towards the Nile. It is remarkable to find the *Vicus Judæorum* in the modern denomination of Tel-el-Iudieh, or the Hill of the Jewry; and to recognise there the site of a temple in which the Jews, offending against the law which denied their nation any other sanctuary than that of Jerusalem, practised their worship during two hundred and forty-three years, to the reign of Vespasian.—Among the places of the first rank was *Helioptolis*, so called from its primitive and Coptic denomination of *On*, which signifies the Sun. It was afterwards called by the Arabs *Ain-Shems*, or the Fountain of the Sun, and it still preserves vestiges in a place named *Ma-tarea*, or *Cool Water*.—*Babylon* was an habitation formed by the Persians, which may with probability be referred to the time of the conquest of Egypt by Cambyses. A quarter retaining the name of *Baboul*, or *Babylon*, in the city commonly called Old Cairo, which overlooks the Nile at some distance above the Delta, shows its true position: and in the same place was also distinguished a pyre or pile, consecrated to the worship of fire, according to the religion of the Persians. It is immediately below, that the *Khaliz*, which traverses Cairo, issues from the Nile. This canal, in an Arabian author who has written professedly on Egypt, bears the name of *Adrian*: and we know that this emperor was also called *Trajan* by adoption.

HEPTANOMIS, *postea* ARCADIA. *Memphis* is the first object that attracts our notice in this division of Egypt. It owed its foundation to a king in the first ages of Egypt named Uchoreus, was a city predominant over all in Egypt, before Alexandria was elevated to this advantage; and was situated on the western shore of the Nile, fifteen miles above the Delta. These indications are the only means afforded us of ascertaining its position. And by the knowledge of the combination and reciprocal use made of the itinerary measures proper to antiquity, those which we have just cited are reconciled, as is fully shown in a work by M. D'Anville, referred to above, in which Egypt is described much more circumstantially than the concise nature of this will permit. The lapse of time had so impaired this great city when Strabo wrote, that he saw its palaces in ruins. It existed nevertheless about six hundred years after; for, on the invasion of Egypt by the Arabs, it appears under the name of the country itself or Mesr. But vestiges of it, which according to Abulfeda, were apparent in the fifteenth century, are no longer in being.—Divers canals derived from the Nile, separating Memphis from the ancient sepulchres and pyramids, furnished the Greeks with the idea of their infernal rivers *Acheron*, *Cocytus*, and *Lethe*.—On the bank of the Nile opposite to Memphis, a place which it is pretended was named *Troja* by the Trojans who followed Menelaüs into Egypt, is now indicated by the analogous name of *Tora*.

The valley in which the Nile flows is contracted in this place by the mountain that reigns on the eastern side, under the name of *Arabicus Mons*; while it opens

ommunication on the other side, through the *Libycus* mountains, with a canton which seems insulated from the rest of the country.—*Arsinoë*, otherwise *Crocodilopolis*, was the chief city in this district, which is now named Feïum. It is known to be covered on the north side by a lake which by Strabo and Ptolemy is called *Mæris*, but which is not the *Mæris* of Herodotus and Diodorus. The lake alluded to by these authors under that name, is an excavation by human labour, and not a work of nature, as that of Feïum. A discussion wherein all the circumstances concerning this object are examined, is adapted to a particular treatise, such as that already mentioned. But it may here be observed, that an artificial reservoir of three thousand six hundred stadia in circumference, has appeared incredible to many who have considered the subject; especially as a measure under its denomination, much inferior in length to the common or Olympic stadium, was not known. The true *Mæris* mentioned by Herodotus and Diodorus, is found in a channel whose length from north to south, conformable to the report of Herodotus, takes about nine hundred stadia of the ancient Ægyptian measure: so that if this sum of length of the lake *Mæris* be multiplied by four, the result is three thousand six hundred stadia for the square contents of its face; but not for the measure of its perimeter or circuit according to the improper term used by Herodotus. This channel is now called Bathen, or the Deep.—A *Labyrinth* contiguous to the *Mæris*, and constructed by twelve kings, who governed Ægypt conjointly, still preserves conspicuous vestiges: and that which Strabo mentions appropriated to the convention of the chiefs of nomes,

and as situ

The valle

place as in

distinguish

tween the

as Strabo an

singing that th

worship re

sioned the

siderable c

cannot be b

which draw

conducts to

called by th

arch Joseph

in Ægypt wa

limited to a

another city

Magna, or

to be that r

of the coun

mun, son of

tion. Within

an interval of

tana Phylace

cognise in th

upon the can

where the T

and *Parva* w



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

situation of the latter is not known; and we shall defer speaking of the greater till we treat of the Thebais, as being about the same height — On the right of the Nile, where the valley is closely contracted by a mountain, *Aphrōditopolis* appears to correspond with a place now called Atfieh; and the name of Ibrit, which is given to its district, is only an alteration of that of its principal burg. — Remarkable grottos, hollowed in the mountain for temples, near a place called Béni hassan may have appertained to that of *Speos-Artemidos* — There remains on this side to be mentioned *Antinoë*, which being primitively but an obscure place named *Besa*, became a city whose vestiges manifest the magnificence of the Emperor Adrian, in perpetuating the memory of an infamous favourite. The denomination of this city is now altered to Ensené; and a revered sepulchre has also caused it to be called Shek-Abadé.

ÆGYPTUS SUPERIOR, *vel* THEBAIS. After having passed *Cusa*, now Cussié, in the Thebais, we find *Lycopolis*, or *Lycón*, the City of Wolves; which, a little distant from the Nile on the left, is still a place of consideration, under the name of Siut, or Osiot. A little beyond, vestiges of *Hypsēlis* are recognized in a place named Sciotb: *Abotis* subsists in Aboutig; and the ruins of *Apollinis Minor Civitas* are in a place named Sedafé. On the other side, *Selinon* is found in the name of Silin; and *Antæopolis*, so called from Antæus, who governed Libya and Æthiopia under Osiris, retains vestiges in a place named Kauil-Kubbara. — Ascending the river, we find the Egyptian denomination of *Chemmis* remaining in Ekmim, that of *Panopolis* or City of Pan, given to it by the Greeks, not having been adopted in the usage of

the country.—Repassing the Nile, we observe *Aphroditopolis*, consecrated to Venus, and *Crocodilopolis*, to the Crocodile, in the ruins of two places named Itfu and Adribé.—*Ptolemais*, constructed under the dynasty of the Ptolemies, after the manner of the Greek cities, became one of the most powerful in Upper Ægypt, with the surname of *Hermiti*; the signification whereof is not known. It preserves vestiges in an inconsiderable place named Menshié —Girgé, which, a little above it, is now the principal city of Saïd, does not appear to have existed more than three hundred years; and the place which a city named *This* occupied in the earliest age, and in whose district *Ptolemais* was founded, is unknown.—*Abydus*, the residence of Memnon, which was only inferior to the great Thebes, is buried in its ruins, as its modern name of Madfuné expresses; and its situation in being distant from the Nile is conformable to the testimony of antiquity concerning it.—Precisely on this parallel is the *Oasis Magna*. We know that those insulated spots of fertility in the midst of a sandy main were called *Oases*. This was a place of exile during the Lower Empire: and it is characteristic of the imagination of the Greeks to have called it the Isle of the Blessed. The *Oasis Magna* is laid down in Mr. Bruce's map on the 26th degree of north latitude, under the name of el-Wah and Shek Haled; and the *Parva Oasis* about half a degree north of the greater, on the same meridian by the name of Gawah Garbieh.—At the summit of a sudden flexure in the course of the Nile, *Diospolis Parva* was situated, in a place now called How.—*Chenoboscion* on the other side corresponds with the position named

ÆGYPTUS.

SECT. I.

Cast. Essaid, or the Castle of the Fisherman.—Towards the bottom of the other replication of the river, on the left bank, *Tentyra*, heretofore among the most considerable cities, retains abundant remains in the name of Dendera; and nearly opposite, *Cenopolis*, or the New City, is represented by a place now named Kené.—*Coptos*, or according to its present form *Kypt*, situated on a canal communicating with the Nile, became a great mart of commerce, by means of a road two hundred and fifty-seven miles in length, made by Ptolemy Philadelphus, across the desert, to the port of *Berenice*, in the Arabian Gulf, where the commodities of India were debarked*. This advantage, transported some centuries after, under the khalifs, to a place named Kous, on the same side of the river, caused this place, but inconsiderable heretofore under the name of *Apolinopolis Parva*, to become the most powerful city of Saïd.—It is presumed that

* The intermediate positions, and which have long since been overwhelmed by the sands, are thus expressed in the Antonine Itinerary:

ITÉR A COPTO. BERONICEM	MP. CCLVIII SIC.
POENICONICON	XXVII
DIDIMIE	XXIV
APHRODITO	XX
COMPASI	XXII
JOVIS	XXXIII
ARISTONIS	XXV
FALACRO	XXV
APOLLONOS	XXIII
CABALSI	XXVII
CENON'DIDREUMA	XXVII
BERONICEM	XVIII



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



name of *Asphynis*.—*Latopolis*, so called from the fish that was there adored, bears now the name of *Asna*, which signifies illustrious.—Ruins of *Apollinopolis Magna* are recognised in a place named *Edfu*.—*Hieracónpolis*, a city consecrated to the hawk, was placed in its vicinity; and, on the other side, *Elethya*, or the City of *Lucina*, had an altar on which human victims were immolated.—The place of *Silsilis* is remarkable for the circumstance that, corresponding with what is named *Gebel Silsili*, or the Mount of the Chain, the shores of the river are so contracted between two mountains as to have induced the popular belief that there was a chain extended from one to the other.—The position of *Ombos* is found in the name of *Koum-Ombo*, or the hill of *Ombõ*. At length we reach *Syene*, whose name in its modern form, having the article prefixed, is *Assan*.—The isle of *Elephantine* is but half a Stadium distant from it; and the cataract is seven stadia above the isle. Of two cataracts this is the least; the greater being in *Nubia*. It is occasioned by the intervention of a rock, composed of two members, the first of easy declivity, and the second, though more sudden, does not precipitate the water with such vehemence as to render the descent impracticable to small boats.—*Philoe* is another isle, but above the cataract; and which, small as it is, afforded quarters, together with *Syene* and *Elephantine*, to the cohorts that guarded this frontier of the Roman Empire.—It should here be mentioned, that the *Basanites Mons*, distant from the Nile on the right, is remarkable for quarries of hard and black stone, called *Bâram*, which furnished the *Ægyptians* with ornamental vases, and household utensils.

We now return to survey the shore of the ARABIC GULF. At the extremity of its western horn, the position of *Arsinoe*, which is also mentioned under the name of *Cleopatra*, corresponds with that of Suez.—Southward of that, on the same shore, is *Clysmā*, whose modern name of Kolzum the Arabs have extended to the whole gulf.—A promontory turned in the figure of a scythe, was called for this reason *Drepanum*.—The *Myos-Hormos*, or Port of the Mouse otherwise called *Aphrodites*, or of Venus, is covered with little isles, bearing also the name of *Aphrodites*: and their modern Arabic name of Sufangeuel-bahri, or the Sponge of the sea, has an evident analogy in its signification to the etymon of the Greek name. And the name of *Suph*, applied to the Arabic Gulf in the Scriptures is an appellative denoting aquatic plants.—The port which at present maintains the greatest correspondence with the country of Upper Ægypt, and called Coseir, represents that named *Philoteras* in antiquity.—The *Smaragdus Mons* appears to be but little distant from the sea; being that called by the Arabs Maaden Uzzumurud, or the Mine of Emeralds.—A point, under the name of *Lepta Extrema*, is judged to correspond with that called by the Arabs Ras-al-enf, or the Top of the Nose.—At the entrance of a gulf which immediately succeeds this point, was *Berenice*, the port whereof the position of Coptos has given us occasion to speak: and the circumstance of its being laid down by the ancient geographers in the same latitude with Syene, serves to ascertain its position. All this coast is inhabited by *ichthyophagus* Arabs, who had become savage by contracting alliances with *troglydites*, or dwellers in caverns.

ÆTHIOPIA.

SECT. II.

SECTION SECOND.

ÆTHIOPIA,

NUBIA, ABYSSINIA, &C.

By ascending the Nile from the frontier of Ægypt, we shall penetrate into the heart of *Æthiopia*. If recurrence be had to the several versions of the Scriptures, and to the testimonies of Josephus and St. Jerom, it will be found that the name of *Chuz*, from the son of Chám, appertains to this country. That of *India* is also applied to it in several passages of the ancient writers. Ptolemy contracts it on the side of the west, because he indicates, under the name of *Libya Interior*, that which, from a concatenation of local circumstances, is judged more proper to be included in the present article. The same distinction in the face of the country, between the lands adjacent to the Nile and those which are distant from it, as has been remarked of Ægypt, prevails in the country immediately succeeding, under the modern name of *Nubian*; and this toponical character has continued as far as *Abyssinia*.—Among many places on the banks of the Nile we recognise *Premis* in the name of *Ibrim*, as the Turks pronounce it, who extended their dominion thus far. In Ptolemy, this place is distinguished by the adjunct of *parva* from another of the same name much more remote, which is now unknown.—The great cataract, through a mountain called *Genadel*, is a little above *Ibrim*. These borders of the Nile were occupied by the *Blemmyes*, whose figures must have been extraordinary; as we read in some ancient authors, that men brought from



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

from Ialac to ascend by the Nile to this city; whose name in the Arabian geography of Edrisi, is Nuabia, and common also to the country, as *Meroë* was in antiquity. Ægyptians banished by Psammitichus, and called *Sebrida*, or Strangers, obeyed a queen in possession of the kingdom of Meroë.—Farther on, at some distance east of the course of the Tacazzé, was *Auxume*, a royal city; which has preserved, with the name of Axum, some remains of those edifices that decorated the Ægyptian cities. It was in a place not far from this capital that Frumentius, sent from Alexandria by St. Athanasius to teach the Abyssinians the Christian faith, established his residence which from him is called Fremona.—The route to Auxume from Adulis, near the Arabic Gulf, conducted by a city named *Coloë* which may be Dobarua, the residence of an Abyssinian prince called Bahr-Nagash, or the King of the Maritime Country.

The Nile receives above the *Astaboras*, as we have said, on the same side, a river named *Astapus*. The testimonies of the best informed authors of antiquity are definitive on this subject. This river then can be no other than the Abawi of the Abyssinians; the sources of which, since their discovery in the beginning of the last century, have been mistaken for those of the Nile, the great desideratum of all antiquity, and concerning which opinions were strangely divided. Ptolemy makes the *Astapus* issue from a morass or lake named *Coloë*, which we recognise by this circumstance to be the Bahr Dambea, into which the Abawi pours its rivulet.* It is well known

* The readers of Mr. Bruce's Travels will doubtless recognise the fountains of the Abawi to be those which that gentle-

SECT. II.

ÆTHIOPIA.

that, this river, which forms the limits of Abyssinia on entering those of Nubia, meets another river coming from the interior parts of Africa; which, under the name of Bahr-el-abiad, or the White River, represents indubitably what the ancients called *Nilus*, distinctively from that known to them by the name of *Astapus*. This topic it became necessary to discuss, for the refutation of the erroneous opinions hitherto received thereon. Besides, although the Nile of Ptolemy, issuing from two lakes at the foot of the Mountains of the Moon, may yet appear in geography, it is not deemed expedient at present to place these objects in the southern hemisphere. *Coloë*, which he places under the line, is actually more northward by twelve degrees. And it may be observed that, if the Nile came from beyond the equator, the periodical rains which, in the torrid zone, follow the course of the sun on each side of the equinoctial line, would cause an inundation of that river in more than one season. Consulting the Arabian geographers, we find that they add a third lake to the two lakes of Ptolemy; from which, besides the Nile of Ægypt, as they express it, issues another river called the Nile of Negroes: But it is not necessary to account for the inundation of another river, by supposing a division of the waters of the Nile; seeing that a cause equal and simultaneous produces the peri-

man visited with so much triumph. They will probably remark also, that the name of D'Anville is not once mentioned throughout the whole of his work. Did Mr. B. deem the opinion of this famous géographer unworthy of refutation, or was he unacquainted with his writings?

odical intumescence of all rivers rising in the same climate. We learn however, that at the time of the increase, a canal named Bahr-él-azurek, or the Blue River, affords a communication between the Nile and a river of a country known by the name of Bournou. Ptolemy, informed of more circumstances of the interior parts of Africa than any other ancient geographer, has given us this river under the name of *Gir*; deriving its origin from what is called *Vallis Garamantica*; and it is thought that this name is perceived in the Gorham of modern geography.—A lake placed between this river and the Nile, and called *Nuba Palus*, is found in that whereon a town is seated, named Kaugha.—If the name of the *Nubæ* be found often repeated, it is in the environs of the Nubian pool that they should be more particularly placed.—We see in Ptolemy a derivation from the *Gir* towards the moor or pool named *Chelonides* or of Tortoises: and the Arabian geography makes mention of a river, which, after passing the city of Koukou, the residence of a prince, flows for a journey of many days to the south, and at length loses itself in fens.—*Gira Metropolis* should be the capital of the kingdom traversed by this river, which terminates its course in a lake, like many other rivers in this country which have not power to reach the sea.

Having thus surveyed the interior country, we return to examine what remains of the coast; the contour of which will conduct us to the most remote boundary of the ancient geography towards the south. The land adjacent to the Arabic Gulf was called *Troglodytice*, because the inhabitants of it dwelt in caverns when Ptolemy Philadelphus subjected them. This coast was named Habesh, or as we call it, Abyssinia.—The position of



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Ras-Ahehaz. The learned have mistaken Matzua, of which we shall presently speak, for this Ptolemais. A remarkable circumstance concerning its gulf, is, the mention that is made of a derivation from the river *As-taboras* into it.—*Adulis* is described in antiquity as a place, the most frequented on this coast; and from a proximity of parallel to that of the royal city of Auxumites, we see that the latitude given to it by Ptolemy is much too low. The place of this name was at some distance from the bottom of a spacious inlet, the shore of which is named Arkiko, having on the right the little isle of Matzua. *Adulis* was distinguished by a magnificent Greek inscription which the third of the Ptolemies, or Euergetes, placed on a throne of marble, to perpetuate the memory of a successful expedition in these countries.—Among many provinces, the conquest whereof is thus recorded, we find that of *Semen*, encompassed by the high mountains which cover the coast; and this name of *Semen* still remains.—Opposite the above inlet, is the greatest island in the Arabic Gulf; and which, named heretofore *Orine*, or the mountainous, is now called *Dahlak*.—A port more remote, as well as a city called *Sabæ*, is recognised in the name of *Assab*, which may have taken this form by prefixing the Arabic article, as in the name of *Assabinus*, which the *Troglodytes* give to their Jupiter.—The last place on the gulf was a *Berenice*, distinguished from others by the surname *Epidires*, as adjacent to a passage straightened like a throat, whereby this gulf communicates with the Erythrean sea.—About this height is the country called *Cinnamonfera*. The cinnamon, whose name is now applied to an aromatic laurel of India, without a certainty of its being the

same plant, is a shrub, the branches of which bear a bark that among the ancients was highly esteemed, and of great value. The *Troglodytes*, crossing the gulf on rafts, carried to *Ocelis* in Arabia, the harvest which they made of cinnamon. They also traded with it to another port named *Mosylon*, beyond the strait.

What remains to be reviewed is on the authorities of Ptolemy, and of the author of a description of the shores of the Erythrean Sea, without the contribution of any other document of antiquity.—A gulf named *Avalites* succeeds to the Arabic gulf; and its port which we now call *Ze la*, corresponds with the *Emporium* of the *Avalites*, with whom a Nubian nation was associated.—After many other ports, among which the entrance of a river named *Soûl* appears to indicate *Masylon*, comes the great promontory called *Aromata* by Ptolemy, or *Aromatum* in the genitive plural, the most eastern land of the continent of Africa, and of which modern name is *Guardafui*.—A promontory to the south of that, and forming a chersonese or peninsula, as we recognise in *Cape Orfui*, is remarkable by the name of *Zingis* in Ptolemy. For we there recognise the name of *Zendge*, that the Arabs have extended as far as *Sesareh*, which is *Sofala* withal: a circumstance which carries the denomination of *Zendge* farther back than the use of this name that in modern geography is expressed *Zanguebar*.—The land which stretches along this part of the sea was called *Barbaria*, or otherwise *Azania*, which name it still preserves in the form of *Ajan*.—A point changing the direction of the coast, and which the Portuguese name *das Baxas*, or *Shoals*, represents the pro-

montory called *Noti Cornu*, or the Southern Horn.—The *Magnum Litus*; or the Great Shore, may be represented by Magadaxo; and some other ancient place on this coast, by Brava.—The sea causing the retrocession of the coast of Africa in this part, forms what was called *Barbaricus Sinus*.—The last city to be reported on this coast is *Rapta*, with the qualification of *metropolis*. It owed its name to the circumstance of small vessels navigating the coast whose planks were connected with sutures: this term having the same signification in the Arabic language as in the Greek. Ptolemy, who in his *Prolegomena* on a particular occasion examines the distance between the promontory of Aromata and Rapta, fixes the difference of latitude at thirteen degrees; and from the height that we give to Cape Guardifui, Rapta must take its position, at farthest, in the second degree of southern latitude. It was on a river which was also called *Raptus*. Now, at this height precisely, we know a river which, divided into several streams in its approach to the sea, incloses many adjacent towns, as Paté, Siô, Ampaza, Lamo, &c. We owe, to the author of the *Periplus of the Erythrean Sea*, a circumstance worthy of remark, which is, that all this country by a very ancient tenure, is a dependence on Arabia, and on one of its princes in particular; and that of *Muza*, a maritime city of Arabia already mentioned in its place, employed in this country collectors of the revenue. Hence we find that the establishment of the Arabs on this coast was long previous to Islamiſm; the propagation of which, it might be imagined, brought them thither. From this circumstance is drawn an inference leading to the discovery of *Ophir*, whither the fleets of Solomon resorted for gold, and



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

LIBYA.

SECT. III.

ion that some authors of antiquity seem to have of the *Antichthones*, so called as having their feet opposite to ours in the temperate zone of the northern hemisphere, might have given Ptolemy an idea of such a population in a corresponding zone. But the author of the *Periplus of the Erythrean Sea* appears inclined to believe that, beyond what he described of the African coast, this ocean penetrates into the west to join the Atlantic; acknowledging it, however to be only an hypothesis. And it may be inferred from Ptolemy that the relation of voyages round Africa by the south, had little credit in antiquity.

SECTION THIRD.

LIBYA,

BARCA.

THE name of *Libya* among the Greeks extended to all Africa: but, strictly speaking, it was comprised in what succeeded to *Ægypt* towards the west, as far as a gulf of the Mediterranean, called the *Great Syrtis*. The Ptolemies or some prince of their house, possessed this country; and under the Eastern Empire, Libya was annexed to the *Ægyptian* government. We distinguish two provinces in it, *Marmurica* and *Cyrenica*; the first confining on *Ægypt*, the second extending towards the *Syrtis*. The nation of *Marmaridæ* had given their name to the *Marmaric* province: and there is moreover mention of the *Adyrmachidæ*, as being contiguous to *Ægypt*.

Following the coast, we see only places too obscure to

merit notice, till we arrive at *Paratonium*. This was a place regarded by the Ptolemies as a head advanced to cover their frontier: and at-Baretoun, as the same name is now pronounced, is held by the sultan of the Turks as a dependency of his dominion in Ægypt.—*Apis*, which immediately succeeds, was an Ægyptian Burgh, as appears by the worship that was there established: and all this part composed, according to Ptolem̄y, a nome or district called *Libycus*.—The inland position called *Mareotis* can be no other than that indicated in the modern geography by the name of Si-wah — *Ammon* or *Hammon*, the Jupiter of Ægypt, and represented with the head of a ram, as at Thebes, had his temple in a canton more remote, environed by the sands of Libya. This place is described by the writers of antiquity as comprising different quarters in a triple inclosure; and the Ammonians having been governed by kings, according to Herodotus had their dwelling in one of these quarters. What we find in modern geography under the name of Santrieh, must represent it, as the nature of the country admits no other object to embarrass the choice.

We must now return to the shore of the Mediterranean. The place named *Catabathmus Magnus*, or the Great Descent, now in the language of the Arabs Akabet-ossolom, is remarkable in some ancient authors for making the separation between Asia and Africa. This place is also taken for a boundary of Marmarica, ascribing to Cyrenica what immediately succeeds, according to the extent which the princes who reigned at Cyrene might have given to their dominion. Five principal cities distinguished the Cyrenaic province by the name of *Pentapolis*.—Conformable to the method of Ptolem̄y,

LIBYA.

SECT. III.

Darnis is the first city to be cited in Cyrenaica; and *Derne* is still its name.—Lacedæmonians coming from Thera, an island in the Ægean, founded *Cyrene*, which retains little else than ruins with the name of *Curin*. The last of the Ptolemies who reigned there; surnamed *Apion*, bequeathed his kingdom to the Romans, who formed a single province of this acquisition, and the island of *Crete*. The city was situated within sight of the sea, having *Apollonia* for its port; and as this port is now named *Marza-Suea*, or *Sosush*, it is probable that this is the city mentioned by the name of *Sozusa*, during the Lower Empire.—The most advanced point of Libya, *Phycus Promontorium*, is now called *Ras-al-Sem*, and among mariners *Cape Rasat*.—*Ptolemais*, which is sometimes confounded with *Barce*, retains nevertheless its particular position, at a distance from the sea, in the altered name of *Tolometa*; and the name of *Barca* is also well known.—*Teuchira*, which under the Ægyptian princes had the name of *Arsinoë*, is found in its primitive denomination on the same shore.—*Adriane*, which follows, corresponds with the position of *Ben-gazi*. *Berenice* is known by the name of *Bernic*: but it appears by a particular testimony that *Ben-gazi* and *Bernic* are only different names for the same place. The same city was denominated *Hesperis*, and ancient fables place there the garden of the Hesperides.—The shore of the Great Syrtis terminates this country. In the bosom of the desert continent, some portions of land, such as the Ammon and Oases of Ægypt, having wells of water, and groves of palms and date-trees, are not without habitations. *Augila*, which is one of these, retains the same name.—From among many obscure nations in Libya



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



out fixed dwellings, the circumstance might have given occasion to an ambiguity in this name, and that of *Nomades*, both terms being of Greek origin. A land abundantly fertile by nature, was left without culture; for in the words of Strabo, the inhabitants abandoned their fields to savage beasts, to exhaust themselves by predatory warfare. The dominion which the Carthagenians established in this country, must have operated a change in the national character of the natives; and the author above cited reports of Massinissa, whose attachment to the Romans in the second Punic War had rendered him powerful, that he contributed much to the civilization of the Numidian nation. But *Numidia* being distinguished from *Africa Propria*, we now proceed to the detail of the latter.

According to Ptolemy, at the bottom of the *Great Syrtis*, the *Philanorum Aræ*, or Philenian Altars (which were monuments consecrated to the memory of two Carthagenian brothers of the name of Philænus; who were there exposed to death, to extend thither the dependencies of their country) were regarded as the point of separation between *Cyrene* and *Africa Propria* on the west. But M. D'Anville restrains the eastern limits of *Africa Propria* to the bottom of the *Smaller Syrtis*, from which it presents a coast, first to the east, and then to the north, till it confines upon *Numidia* on the west. With this discrimination, the scrupulous reader will be in no danger of making an unqualified extension of this canton upon the confines of *Libya*, if our notices commence from the borders of *Cyrene* on the *Great Syrtis*. — Under the Ptolemies, the limits of the Cyrenaic province were protracted to a tower named *Euphrantes*; and

in this interval *Macomades Syrtis* is a place in ruins called Sort.—Strabo speaks of a great Lake disemboguing into the Syrtis; and this lake which is salt, is at its entrance named Succa.—A promontory named heretofore *Cephalæ*, or the Heads, and now Canan, or Cape Mez-zata, terminates the Syrtis.—Farther on, the *Cinyphs* has its source under a hill distant from the sea but 200 stadia, and named by Herodotus *Charitum*, or the Graces; and this little river, we are informed, is called in the country, Wadi-guaham.—We must recede to some distance from the coast, to speak of a city which has made some noise in the world, by the rumour of its being petrified. This error has arisen from some shepherds of the country, who having seen statues and bas-reliefs in marble, reported them to be men, animals; and fruits, of stone. This place being called Gherzé, is made known by the name of *Gerisa* in Ptolemy.—We distinguish in this district, a province of the Western Empire, under the name of *Tripolis*, which the circumstance of three principal cities had given to the country. *Leptis*, the first and most considerable of these, with the surname of *Magna*, by distinction from another beyond the limits of the Tripolitane, owed its foundation to the Phœnicians; and its ruins are known by the name of Lehida. *Oea*, the second of these cities, has taken the name of Tripoli, on absorbing the population of the other two: *Sabrata*, the third, is mentioned by an Arabian geographer who describes this coast, as a tower called Sabart. This is the Tripoli Vecchio of the Mediterranean navigators.—It may be said that *Pisida*, and its port, which are not far distant, have formed by alteration the modern name

of Fissato.—Immediately on this side of the Little Syrtis, *Meninx*, otherwise called *Lotophagitis*, and afterwards *Girba*, is a little isle, well known under the name of *Zerhi*, which is only separated from the continent by a channel sufficiently narrow to be covered by a bridge. Another city, bearing the same name of *Meninx*, is probably that now called *Zadaica*. The tree called *Lotus*, famous for the meat and drink afforded by a species of mast which it produced, occasioned not only the inhabitants of this isle, but likewise several other people, spread between the two Syrtes, to be called *Lotophagi*.

It is expedient now to quit the coast, and take notice of what is worthy of remark in a country lying between this maritime region and one more interior.—*Phazania* is this country; and it preserves its name in Fezzan, through which is a route conducting from Tripoli into *Nigritia*.—*Cydamus* is *Ghedemés*, where are still remains of antiquity; and the remaining traces of ancient ways indicate the communication that this city had with the places on the coast. The Roman arms, under Augustus, penetrated through this country to that of the *Garamantes*.—Among many names of cities which appeared in the triumph of the younger Balbus, that of *Tabidum*, called by Ptolemy *Thabudis*, is found in *Tibedou*, on the route just mentioned.—There is, in this canton, the dry bed of a torrent, called *Wad-el Mezzeran*, or *Mezjerad*, by equivocal pronunciation; and this torrent, which sinks in the sand after a short course, is reported by the name of *Bagradas*, in Ptolemy, but confounded with a river of the same name, that has its issue in *Africa Proper*, under the modern denomination of *Mejerda*.—The great nation of *Garamantes* owed its



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

zine of provisions, which was resorted to by sea. There was a city of the same name with that of the country; and the Arabian geography makes known its position under the name of Beghni.—Among the maritime cities, the first that presents itself in the order we have adopted, is *Macomedes*, distinguished by the surname of *Minores* from another of the same name, which we have already seen at the bottom of the great Syrtis; this being what is now called el-Mährés.—The town of *Thenæ* preserves the name *Taineh*; and *Skafes*, which is now the most frequented port on this coast, appears to have replaced *Taphrura*. This name, which seems derived from the Greek term *Taphros*, signifying a trench, may relate to that which the second Scipio caused to be drawn to *Thenæ*, according to Pliny, to fix the limits of the country conceded to the kings of Numidia.—At no great distance from the shore, the little isle of *Cercina*, separated from a smaller isle by a narrow canal, retains its name in the form of *Kerkeni*.—Though there be no mention of *Caputuada* till the reign of Justinian, we may say that the point called *Capoudia* indicates it.—At some distance from the sea, a place named el-Jem, in which, among many remains of antiquity there is seen an amphitheatre, answers to the position of *Tysdrus*.—A peninsula, on which a prince, who is said to have descended from Mohammed by Fatima, constructed in the tenth century a fortress under the name of *Mahdia*, and which the Franks name *Africa*, appears to have been the site of the *Turris Hannibalis*, whence that famous Carthaginian departed when he retired to Asia.—In this part of Africa, conquered by the Arabs in the first age of Islamism, the position of *Kairwan* distant from the sea,

and which Ocba, who made this conquest, chose for the residence of the governors of the country, under the authority of the Khalifs, is taken by conjecture for the *Vicus Augusti*.—Continuing to follow the coast, we discern the name of *Tapsus*, which a victory obtained by Cæsar has rendered memorable, in that of a place called *Demasas*.—By a similar indication, the position of Lemta shows that of *Leptis*, which, notwithstanding the qualification of *Minor*, in contradistinction to that in the *Tripolitane*, was far from being inconsiderable.—*Hadrumentum*, whose name is also written without the aspiration, appears in the first rank among the cities of *Byzacium*. Its present condition is unknown; but a neighbouring place, mentioned in a subsequent age under the name of *Cabar Susis*, is existent in Susa: and *Horrea Cælia* is well known in the vulgar denomination of *Erklia*.—From this position the maritime country takes the name of *Zeugitana*, without our knowing whether under this name it extended as far inland as to correspond with the limits of the department that was afterwards named *Proconsularis*.—In this passage to another province, where the strand of the continent appears driven in by the sea, there is remarked at some distance from the shore a place which, under the name of *Grasse*, now *Jerads*, was a palace furnished with delicious gardens in the time of the Vandalic kings. We know that, compelled to cede entire Spain to the Visigoths, the Vandals invaded Africa, which they possessed for near a century immediately preceding the reign of Justinian, who reconquered it.—On the coast, *Hammamet* indicates in this name the *Aquæ Calidæ* of this canton.—There is

known a *Neapolis* in Nabel; also a *Curubis* in Gurbés, and *Clypea* in Akalibia; the position of which is followed immediately by the *Hermæum Promontorium*, which we had occasion to cite before.—At the bottom of the gulf which this promontory bounds on one side, a creek, of which the narrow entrance is called the *Goulette*, penetrates as far as *Tunetum*, *Tunis* which, since the entire ruin of Carthage, has become the capital city.—A point which bends in the figure of a crescent moon, called Cape Carthage, is that of a peninsula which made the site of the famous city of this name. But it is not now, as heretofore, a land almost insulated: for the sea, retired from its ancient shore has left uncovered an extensive beach between the point just mentioned and that named Porto Ferino, near a promontory which terminates the opposite side of the gulf. An isthmus of twenty-five stadia, or three miles in breadth, which joined the peninsula to the main, is no longer to be distinguished from it; and what is still called el Marza, or the Port, is at a considerable distance from the sea. The circuit of three hundred and sixty stadia given to this peninsula, must be of the shortest measure, to be commensurate with the twenty-four miles assigned by another authority to the vast inclosure comprehending the city with its ports. It had a citadel, named *Byrsa*, on an eminence; and an interior port, excavated by human labour, as its name of *Côthôn* denoted. Founded by the Tyrians, the name *Carthada*, which they gave it, signifies in the Phœnician language the new city. And this name in the Greek writers is not, as in the Latins, *Carthago*, but *Carchedon*. Destroyed by the younger Scipio one hundred and forty-six years before the Christian



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



lagoon that was adjacent. ; The alteration of its name into that of Ben-zert, as we find in the Arabian geography, preserves some affinity with its ancient denomination ; which the practice of seamen in calling it Biserte, has totally extinguished.—The last place to be mentioned on this coast is *Tabraca*, of which the little isle of *Tabarca* preserves the name.—We know of no other river that may be the *Rubricatus* of Ptolemy, than that which falls into the sea opposite this isle. It is also the *Tusca*, which according to Pliny bounds Africa on the side of Numidia, and is now the *Wad-el-Berber*. Ascending it to some distance, we recognise in the name of *Vegja*, a considerable city which by Sallust is named *Vacca*, and by others *Vaga*.

The interior country remains now to be inspected.—Ascending by the *Bagradas*, we find *Tuburbo* under the same name ; and *Tucaborum*, in *Tucaber*.—Another *Tuburbo*, distinguished by the surname of *Majus*, whose position is south of Tunis, and widely distant from the preceding, it appears also in the form of *Tubernok*.—In the name of *Wad-el-Bul*, which a river received by the *Bagradas* bears, that of *Bulla*, surnamed *Regia*, is evident.—It is only by being near *Tagaste*, a Numidian city, and the native place of St. Augustine, that the position of *Madaurus*, the city of Apuleius, is judged.—That which is now called *Urbs*, and otherwise *Kef*, where are remains of antiquity, is *Sicca Venera*; although an English traveller, Dr. Shaw, to whose information we owe much topographical intelligence of this country, makes a distinction between these names, as appropriate to two several positions.—We find the name of *Tucca*, with ancient vestiges, in a place named *Tugga*; but which

cannot be the same with *Tuccá Terebinthina* of the Roman Itinerary.—It must here be said, that the positions given by Ptolemy, appear in such disorder, that we have no other means of assigning suitable places to them than by following the traces of Roman ways, which abound more in this part of Africa than in any other country of the ancient Itineraries. These means are, nevertheless, not without difficulty.—*Záma*, memorable for the victory of Scipio over Hannibal, is given as immediate to another place on one of these ways; though there is reason, from other circumstances, to form a doubt of its true position.—One is astonished to find that of *Musti*, which by a similar problem, has a place assigned to it in the centre of Africa, appear in the Ecclesiastical Notices as an Episcopal see of Numidia, rather than of the proconsular province.—*Sufetula*, a considerable city, to judge of it by the concourse of many ways, is found in Sbeitla.—*Septimunicia* is mentioned as being at the foot of a great mountain named *Burgaon*, which appears to be a continuation of *Usaletus*, retaining the name of Uselet.—What remains of the province of Africa is that part of *Byzacium*, which stretches towards the south. To arrive at it we must traverse arid and desert places, as history testifies in speaking of the forced march effected by Marius to surprise *Capsa*; a great city, which, from its difficulty of access, was judged by Jugurtha a proper deposit for reserved treasure. The position of this city is known, and its name is pronounced *Cafsá*.—*Thale* is likewise spoken of with circumstances which, in relation to the preceding, appear to suit the position of *Telefite*, in the Roman Itinerary.—We are indebted to the English traveller for the recognisance of a long and narrow

lake, divided in two by a ford, and which represents, under the African names of Faroun and el-Loudeah; the *Paludes* called *Tritonis* and *Libya* in antiquity. The first of these communicated the epithet of Tritonia, to Minerva; who, it is pretended, first revealed herself in these places. What are found on this mere, under the names of Toser and Nefta, indicate the positions of *Tisurus* and *Nepte*.—A military post on this frontier, called *Turris Tamalleni*, is discovered in the name of Tamelem; and the country is that now called Beledul-Gérid, or the Region of Grasshoppers.

NŪMIDIA. This name extended primitively to all the country comprised between Africa Proper, and the more ancient boundary of Mauretania, which was a river named *Molochath*, or *Malva*, now Mulvia; whose mouth is opposite Cape Gata, on the southern shore of Spain; and this space is now occupied by the kingdom of Algier.—Two people participated this extensive country: the *Massyli*, on the side of Africa; and the *Masasyli*, towards Mauretania: in a promontory far advanced in the sea, heretofore named *Tretum*, now Sebdaruz, or the Seven Capes, by the people of the country, and by mariners Bergaronie, made the term of separation between them. They obeyed two princes celebrated in history; the first being subjects of Masinissa, the second of Syphax. The attachment of Masinissa to the Romans, required on their part not only a ré-établissement in the kingdom of which he had been despoiled by Syphax, but also that he should be guaranteed in possession of that of his enemy, by an event that united all Numidia under one prince. This kingdom, in the same state under Jugurtha, and the same also under Juba, was van-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

which Tibilis had in its vicinity.—The places *Tagaste* and *Tebeste*, on the frontier of Africa, are found in *Tajelt* and *Tebess*.—Two other places distant from *Constantina* towards the south, called *Lambese* and *Lamasbe*, give evidently the positions of *Lambesa* and *Lamasda*: and *Bagai*, on the flank of *Gebel Auras*, retains the same name.—The *Aurasius Mons*, though at first appearing difficult of access, occupies a great space of even and cultivated lands. This frontier affords entrance to a vast country distinguished by the name of *Gætulia*, which confines also on *Mauretania*.—A river named *Zab*, which communicates its name to the country that it traverses, is mentioned by the name of *Zaba*, in the times of the Lower Empire. The *Savus*, or *Sabus*, which *Ptolemy* places in the *Mauretania Cæsariensis*, where such a river does not exist, should be referred to this, as the modern denomination sufficiently evinces. If *Ptolemy* conducts a river of this name to the sea, it should be remembered that he also continues the courses of a *Bagradas* and a *Cynips* thither; which totally perish in the interior country, as does the *Zab* under discussion.—We shall conclude our report of *Numidia* with the notice of a principal city in this canton *Zab*, named *Pescara*; which evidently indicates that of *Vescerita*, or *Vescether*.

MAURETANIA. It is thus, and not *Mauritania*, that this name appears in most monuments of antiquity, whether medals or lapidary inscriptions; and it may be added, that the national name is *Maurasii*, according to the Greek writers. The country over which *Bocchus*, who delivered *Jugurtha* to the Romans, reigned, was limited, as we have said in speaking of the primitive

SECT. IV.

AFRICA PROPRIA, &c.

state of Numidia, by the river *Molochath*, whose name, being otherwise *Malva*, has given occasion to some modern authors, misled by Ptolemy, to distinguish two rivers for one. We are not precisely informed what occasioned the amplification of ancient Mauretania: it is known, however, that it was Juba (by the favour of Augustus put in possession of the states of the two Maurish princes, Bogud and Bocchus) who constructed the city of *Cæsarea*, which gave the name of *Cæsariensis* to that part of Mauretania which was taken from Numidia. Now if it be supposed that Mauretania was a concession to the kingdom of Juba, prior to the aggrandisement made of his paternal domain, we shall find in these circumstances what gave occasion to the extension of the name.—This kingdom was reduced into a province under Claudius, and divided into two: *Cæsariensis*, or that territory which had belonged to Numidia; and *Tingitana*, or the original Mauretania, which extended to the ocean.

To enter into a detail of maritime positions, in regular order, we must take our departure from the mouth of the river *Amfisagas*. *Igilgilis* preserves the name of Jigel, or Jijeli, which, in the pronunciation of seamen, is Gigeri, and which is commonly so pronounced in speaking of the capture of this place by the French, in 1664.—The river *Audus* is that which the sea receives near Bujeiah—The transposition of some letters does not conceal from observation in the name of Tedlés, the ancient one of *Saldæ*.—Let us add, by the way, that *Tubusuptus*, apart from the shore, corresponds with a place called Burg, in the canton of Kuko, which is covered by

a great and precipitous mountain, named *Ferrarius Mons*, now *Jurjura*.—Farther on, a river, whose name is *Ser*, or *Isser* with the article, refers to the *Serbetes*.—The initial syllable common to the names *Rusazus*, *Rusisirsir*, *Rusucurru*, and many others, seems to denote, in the Punic language, a cape, or point of land, as *Ras*, in the Arabic. In this series of places there is no mention of *Algier*; this city being of later date than the time which makes the term of antiquity. Its name, purely Arabic, is formed of *al-Gazair*, the denomination of a little isle which covers its port, and which is joined to the continent by a mole. In the name of *Rusucurru*, the part which is peculiar and distinctive from many other names, is preserved in that of *Hur*, as indicated by an Arabian geographer.—Ruins at *Sersel* would appear to be those of *Cæsarea*; but, in the Roman Itinerary, this city is more remote towards *Cartenna*, well known in the modern form of *Ténez*. *Icosium* consequently had the place which *Sersel* now occupies; and a port, mentioned by an Arabian geographer under the name of *Vacur*, should be that of *Cæsarea*; which, before it was embellished and elevated to the rank of capital under king *Juba*, was named *Iol*. This city was extremely injured by the barbarian revolters, when the count *Theodosius*, father to the emperor of that name, was charged with the command in Africa.—It may be said, in general terms, that all this coast was filled with Roman colonies; the detail of which would contribute to dilate this work beyond the limits of an epitome. After *Cartenna*, which succeeds *Cæsarea*, is the mouth of the river *Chinaph*, the most considerable of this country; and of which, the modern name of *Shellif* is not without some



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



the name of Sitef.—Traversing the mountains towards the south, a plain country contiguous to the Zab, is observed to contain a salt fen, called el-Shot, which is the *Salinæ Nubonenses*. *Tubuna* is recognised in Tubnah; and *Desena* in Deusen, distant from the Zab. A castle, named *Auzea* in Tacitus and in the Roman Itinerary, may be assigned to the position of a fortress called Burg; a term which seems to be used as appellative for such places in Barbary, and other countries of the Levant.—The name of *Castrum Audiense*, in the Notice of the Empire, appears to conduct towards the beginning of the course of the *Audus*.—*Malliana* keeps the name of *Meliana*.—*Succubar* was seated on the acclivity of a mountain, whose modern name is *Zuchar*.—*Fundus Mazucanus* is found in Mazuna: and it appears from the account of an historian, that the Count Theodosius, departing from *Tigavas* in this canton, crossed the *Anchorarius Mons* to attack the *Mazices*. Thus this mountain answers to that named *Waneseris*; and the position given under the name of *Midroe*, appears to be the same with that of *Medianum Castellum*, which was the ultimate point of a Roman expedition in this country.—The nation we have just named was a powerful one; and we find the *Mazices* in Libya, and in the environs of the Oases.—*Mina* preserves its name purely; and the *Gadium Castra* is recognised in Tagadeont.—The position of *Regiæ*, denoting a royal dwelling, is found by the direction of a Roman way to be Tlemisen, where the Arab princes of the house of Beni-Merin also established their residence.—Through the weakness of the Numidian nation of Masæsylians, this country was conquered by the Getulians, who peopled all the border as far as the

Syrtes. One must read Procopius's War of the Vandals, to have an idea of the rude and savage life of the Getulians. These are the people properly called Bereheres, who have given the name to Barbary; preserving themselves distinct from the Arabs, whom the progress of Islamism, and the dominion of the khalifs, have spread over these western countries of Africa.

We pass now to *Tingitana*. What had been Mauretania Proper was thus called from the name of its principal city, in the same manner that we have seen the other Maurætania distinguished. It occupied the space between the river *Molochath* and the Western Ocean. At the time of the division of the Roman empire into east and west, *Tingitana* is seen arranged among the provinces of Spain; and, exclusively of the other provinces of Africa, comprised in the *Diæcesis* of Italy, under the designation of *Hispania Transfretana*, or Spain beyond the Strait; an union that seems to have been induced by proximity. The expulsion of the Vandals from Spain, put the Goths also in possession of the province of *Tingitana*; the commandant of which, under the last king of the Visigoths, in vengeance of a private injury, introduced the Maures into that kingdom about the beginning of the eighth century. The western situation of this extremity of Africa, procured it from the Arabs the name of Garb, from an appellative in their language. The province of *Tingitana* corresponds nearly with the kingdom of Fez.—Upon entering into particulars, we perceive scarcely any other than maritime positions to recount. *Rusadir* is the first that presents itself, followed by a promontory of the same name; as the cape

called Tres-forcas immediately succeeds Melilla.—*Parietina* may be represented by Velez de Gomeira.—*Tania Longa*, which by this name denotes a narrow tongue of land, is Targa.—The position of *Iagath*, in Ptolemy, is the same with Tetewen, or, as it is more commonly pronounced, Tetuan.—It is agreed that the mount *Abyla*, the column of Hercules that is opposite to *Calpe* in Europe, answers to an elevated point, forming a peninsula, of which a place named Ceuta closes the isthmus. There is mention of this place under the name of *Septum*, or *Septa*; but not before the sixth century, and the reign of Justinian.—Mounts called *Septem Fratres*, spoken of much earlier by several authors, ought to be distinguished from those, since they precede Abyla both in Ptolemy and in the Antonine Itinerary, which follow a contrary order to that observed here. Thus, what the Arabs have called Gebel Mousa, must be the Seven Brothers.—The name of *Tingis* subsists in that of *Tinja*; which, altered by usage, is Tangier. But the position of the ancient city was on the right, or opposite side of the creek to the modern, and also more inland.—Beyond this is the point which separates the strait from the shore of the Western Ocean; and the name of *Spartel*, which mariners give it, with the Italian pronunciation, seems owing to the partition which it makes of the two seas. The name of *Ampelusis*, which it bore among the Greeks as being abundant in vines, has the same signification with that of *Cotes*, in the Punic or Phœnician language; and this canton of Africa is still noted for the beauty and flavour of the grapes that it produces.—On the shore of the ocean, *Zilis*, having assumed the Arabic article to its name, is now Azzilia.—*Lixus*, or



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

rable city. The Roman arms penetrated beyond this position, in the war undertaken in Mauretania, under the reign of Claudius; for Suetonius Paulinus passed mount *Atlas*, and found a river named *Ger*; a circumstance that determines this passage to have been through that principal branch of *Atlas*, called *Ziz*. Two places which are immediately beyond, one named *Ger-silbin*, the other *Helel*, preserve manifestly the ancient names *Cilaba* and *Alele*. Though far distant from *Phazania*, *Pliny* transports them thither; and by their true situation, the conquest of them should be ascribed to the commander above-mentioned rather than to *Balbus*.

SECTION FIFTH.

LIBYA, VEL AFRICA INTERIOR.

WHAT remains to be delineated of the interior parts of Africa, may be announced under this title, as we find it in *Ptolemy*. To the *Getulia* immediately contiguous to *Numidia* and the *Mauretania*s, succeeds a vast space divested of all local circumstance, and exhibited in the chart under the title of *Deserta Libyæ Interioris*. *Melano-Getuli*, Black *Getulians*, occupied it in antiquity; and confined on a country called *Nigritia*, which owes its name less to the Negro race in general, than to the river which traverses this part of Africa. The ancients knew this river under the name of *Niger*, which, contrary to the opinion they commonly had of it, directs its course from west to east, as *Herodotus* indeed seems to inti-

SECT. V. LIBYA; VEL AFRICA INTERIOR.

mate. For he relates that the 'Nasamones,' sent by an Ammonian king to discover the sources of the Nile, had found on their route, between the west and south, a great river flowing towards the east. But it is with this river, as with that before mentioned under the name of *Ger*; enfeebled by frequent derivations, it perishes in the earth. The Arabian geographer points out lakes called Fresh Seas; where it is presumed the Niger diffuses what remains of its waters at its eastern extremity. A principal city named *Nigira* by Ptolemy (that which became the residence of the Fatanites, who, in the first ages of Islamism, erected a kingdom called Ghana in this part of Africa) ought to be preferred to Tombut or Tombouctou, whose foundation by a Barbary prince remounts but to the commencement of the thirteenth century.

In the less remote and maritime part, the *Autololes* are mentioned as a great nation; from whom the Roman frontier of Mauretania suffered molestation. Getulians, distinguished by the designation of *Daræ*, have left their name to Darah, separated from Morocco by a branch of Mount Atlas. As to the *Pharusii* or *Perorsi*, we can only cite their names, there being a diversity of opinions concerning their situation.—On the shore of the ocean Ptolemy offers in succession to Sala, a detail of numerous positions, which it would be difficult and but little interesting to seek for in those actually existing. What he indicates successively under the names of *Atlas Minor* and *Atlas Major*, appear applicable to two promontories; the first of which may be Capé Cantin, as he fixes that under the same parallel, or within a few minutes of it; and he is observed to be precisely accurate in his la-

titude of the *Fretum*, or Strait. - This cape must be the *Solœ* of the author, whoever he may be, of the memoir entitled the *Periplus of Hanno*. For with a fleet of sixty vessels, after two-days' sail from the strait (a reckoning which finds them about the latitude of Salee), standing westward, they made the promontory in question conformable to the topical disposition of the coast. If the conclusion that may be formed of the circumstances of this relation be not absolutely the same with what is here given, this report of circumstances is at least a proof that we have not neglected to consult it. The *Atlas Major* of Ptolemy having $26\frac{1}{2}$ degrees of latitude, becomes of consequence Cape Bojadore; and in the Portuguese charts prepared from the reports of navigators who opened the passage to India, after exploring this coast, the shore that follows Bojadore is called *Terra Alta*, whether from the circumstance of its rising immediately from the margin of the sea, or from the mountainous aspect of the interior country.—In the interval of these two promontories a port named *Rusupis* may be represented by Azafi; and *Mysocoras* which succeeds, by Mogador.—Another remarkable place on this coast, and which the Portuguese have named Santa Cruz, commanded by a castle called Tamara, should *Tamusiga*.—Cape Ger, which terminates a considerable gulf, at the bottom whereof is Santa Cruz, may correspond with the promontory distinguished by the name of *Hercules*, to whom is attributed an expedition in this country.—The *Fortunate Insulae* are ranged under the same meridian, but in too low a latitude in Ptolemy: and as they are actually more northern than the greater promontory of Atlas, should have preceded it in the order



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



must be to this river; seeing that two days of a southern course from the strait, and one of an eastern, are given to arrive at the isle named *Cerne*. In this circuit may be recognised Cape Blanca: and the isle of Arguin, which the Maures call Ghir, is probably *Cerne*.—But a rigorous application of distances cannot be admitted in this case; since the distance between this isle and the strait is not estimated in the *Periplus* as more considerable than that which is evidently shorter, between Carthage and the strait.—We must go farther, to find the *Daradus*, a great river which Ptolemy brings from a mountain named *Caphas*; of which it may be said, that we have some intimation of the name Caffaba, towards the beginning of the Senegal river; which is not the Niger, as was formerly believed.—The great promontory which succeeds, under the name of *Arsenarium*, is evidently Cape-Verd; and the circumstance of the *Rysadium* being placed adjacent by Ptolemy, and a little retired withal, indicates this to be the point of Almadia on the south side of the cape.—Ptolemy furnishes in these regions objects for which we are indebted to him alone. He knew the river Gambia under the name of *Stachir*, succeeding these promontories. . . *The Hesperu-Ceras*, or the Western-Horn, is a Cape beyond this river; whence the coast, which hitherto tends southward looking to the east, turns suddenly eastward to make a full face to the south; as is known by actual observation.

We are now very near the ultimate point to which ancient geography can be extended on the western coast of Africa. The want of agreement and precision in the little that the authors of antiquity furnish in the notice

SECT. V. LIBYA, VEL AFRICA INTERIOR.

of objects so remote with respect to them, would render the discussion of them superfluous, without making the subject of it more interesting. It may however be briefly observed, that there is mention of a *Sinus Hespericus*, or Western Gulf; of the *Insulae Hesperidum*; of an isle *Gorganis*, or *Gorgades Insulae*; of a mountain named *Theon-ochema*, or the Car of the Gods; and lastly of *Noti-cornu*, or Southern Horn, a promontory which is said to have been the term of the voyage of the Carthaginian fleet of Hanno. But elsewhere, in the *Periplus* that bears his name, it appears that this commander did not return to Carthage till he had circumnavigated the continent of Africa. This incongruity confessedly renders the navigation of Hanno suspicious: and female mariners called *Gorilles*, and rivers of fire falling into the sea, according to this *Periplus*, prove that the relation is not to be credited in all that it reports. But if we give attention to the disposition of this coast, now too well known to admit conjecture, we shall find, after the Western Horn, a curve in the shore, which incloses a great number of islands: and, in proceeding, we discover no other mountain than that of Sierra Leone, to which succeeds a point of land named Cape St. Anne, separated indeed from the continent by a narrow channel, but in such a manner as escaped the observation of the first navigators among the moderns.—Concerning the situation of the *Hesperii Æthiopes*, or Western Æthiopians, it may be remarked, that the Maures being in possession of all that the desert comprehends, and as far as the Senegal, it is from this river the population of the

Negro races may be said to commence, which are sufficiently distinct from all other African people.

After having thus terminated the third and last part of the ancient world, by tracing the shore of the Atlantic Ocean, there might appear something yet wanting, were we to observe a total silence concerning the famous island of the same name with this ocean. But who will believe it can be referred to the new-world, or continent of America, and believe at the same time that the people who inhabited it, came, in an age much anterior to the time of history, to make conquests in Europe and Asia, which on this occasion had no other means of repelling the invaders than what were found in the resistance and valour of the Athenians? Who does not rather see, in the narrative of Plato on this event,* an Athenian willing to flatter his countrymen; and, in what he publishes of the policy of the Atlantides, a philosopher occupied with speculations more magnificent than practicable? As this island appears no more,† it has been said that a continent, to which was attributed greater extent than to Africa and Asia united, was submerged in twenty-four hours; a catastrophe that is said to have rendered dangerous the navigation of the Atlantic Ocean, though it is no longer so. That there existed an unknown continent, might well have made an hypothesis in the speculations of some of the learned

* In Timæus and Critias.

† M. Bailly, the astronomer, endeavoured to prove that this island really existed; and he refers its situation to Nova Zembla: but less fanciful and more judicious authors have attacked his conclusions with success.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

PART II.

SACRED GEOGRAPHY.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



INTRODUCTION.

promise can be made of such a difference, than that which may be seen in the table and map of this country. There is less dispute as to the location of the *Land and Garden of Eden*, and the identity of the *Euphrates*.

In passing from our view of the *Land of Egypt* to that of the *Promised Land*, we have not availed ourselves of the usual privilege of mental ærostation, but, on the path of Moses and the Israelites, have made our *exody*: thinking it best to assemble the objects that are spoken of in the renowned Exodus of the Jews, with a summary account of its incidents, in one table.

We have judged it impracticable to reduce the geography of *Canaan*, after the conquest of Joshua, to the comparative table of corresponding ancient and modern names, for a reason too evident to repeat, that this country abounded, beyond almost any other in times of antiquity; with geographical and historical notices; whereas, at the present day, it has become almost desolate, and some of the most fruitful tracts formerly are now barren wastes.

The same motive that actuated me to give a preliminary sketch of the origin and migrations of Parent Nations to PART I., prompts me in like manner to insert here, a tabular view of the three first Patriarchal ages, with annotations to each, to give light and interest to the Sacred geography. The context between these tables must be looked for in *Japhet*, *Shem*, and *Ham*, in passing from the first to the second; in *Haran*, *Abraham*, and *Nahor*, in passing from the second to the third, and through *Jacob* to the twelve tribes.

We have adopted a chronological order in the suc-

INTRODUCTION.

cession, both of the Patriarchal and Geographical tables, as nearly as the successive evolution of their objects would admit of. According to this method, we have been under the necessity of giving more than one table of the same tract of country when its revolutions have so changed its civil divisions as to render them quite as foreign from each other, at different periods, as though the identity of territory itself had been changed. Of this, *Canaan* furnishes a striking instance.

THE FIRST AGE OF THE WORLD,

The Antediluvian Patriarchs.

ADAM and EVE.

1. CAIN, born Anno Mundi the second.*
 - a. Enoch, son of Cain.
 - b. Irad, son of Enoch.
 - c. Mehujael, son of Irad.
 - d. Methusael, son of Mehujael.
 - e. Lamech, son of Methusael. He had by Adan,
 - Jabal, the inventor of tents and keeping of cattle; and
 - Jubal, the inventor of music. Also, by Zillah,
 - Tubal-Cain, the inventor of working in metals; and
 - Naamah, supposed to be Venus.
2. ABEL, had no-offspring.
3. SETH, born A. M. 130, died 1042, aged 912.
 - a. Enos, son of Seth, born 235, died 1140, aged 905.
 - b. Cainan, son of Enos, born 325, died 1235, aged 910.
 - c. Mahalaleel, son of Cainan, born 395, died 1290, aged 895.
 - d. Jared, son of Mahalaleel, born 460, died 1422, aged 962.
 - e. Enoch, son of Jared, born 622, was translated to heaven.
 - f. Methuselah, son of Enoch, born 687, died 1656, aged 969.
 - g. Lamech, son of Methuselah, b. 864, died 1651, aged 777.
 - h. Noah, son of Lamech, born 1056, aged 600 at the Flood.
 - Japhet, his first son, born 1556, aged 100 at the Flood.
 - Shem, his second son, born 1558, aged 98 at the Flood.
 - Ham, his third son, born 1560, aged 96 at the Flood.

* The better opinion seems to be, that Cain was born the first, and Abel the second year of the world. See Sacred Mirror, by the Rev. Thomas Smith, page 5.

 INTRODUCTION.

Annotations.

ADAM the first man, and EVE the first woman, formed by the immediate power of God, on the sixth day of the creation,* in a state of purity and happiness: they fell into guilt and misery by transgressing the divine command; were banished from their blissful residence in the garden of Eden; sentenced to suffering and death; yet favoured with the promise of a Saviour. (*Gen. chap. 3.*) Adam died, *Anno Mundi* 930; having seen eight generations. Eve died *Anno Mundi* 940.

CAIN, the first man born of a woman, followed husbandry, murdered his brother Abel, and went to live in the land of Nod, where he built the first city, and named it after his son, *Enoch*. His posterity were called *the*

* The following note from Mr. Pinkerton we presume will not be considered as any burthen to truth, on whichever side it stands, but rather, as tending to its further development. He says—"Ancient chronology has been ruined by attempting to force it to Scripture, which is surely no canon of chronology; for the Septuagint, translated from MSS., far more ancient than any we have, differs from the present Hebrew no less than 576 years before the time of Noah; and 880 years from Noah to the time of Abraham. The Greek church, certainly as well instructed as that of the Roman, dates the creation 5508 years before Christ. Epiphanius, Augustin, and other fathers, follow the Hebrew of their time, which agrees with the Septuagint. But ancient chronology ought only to be estimated from ancient authors, and kept quite apart from *scriptural* chronology. The date of the creation, &c., can never be decided, either by Scripture or otherwise; and such speculations are *futile*. In other points, the authority of the learned Usher, now universally allowed the best chronologer, is followed," &c.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

INTRODUCTION.

number of every species of animals, who were preserved in the ark.



THE SECOND AGE OF THE WORLD.

The Postdiluvian Patriarchs till the call of Abraham; including the Plantation of Nations, and the Origin of Languages.

- JAPHET.
Europe and the north of Asia.
1. GOMER,* and sons, peopled the N. W. parts of Europe, viz.
 - a. Ashkenaz, son of Gomer, settled France.
 - b. Riphath, son of Gomer, settled the British Isles, &c.
 - c. Togarmah, son of Gomer, settled Germany, Sweden, &c.
 2. MAGOG, and posterity, peopled Russia, Siberia, &c.
 3. MADAI, uncertain.
 4. JAVAN, and sons, peopled the N. E. coast of the Mediterranean, viz.
 - a. Elisha, son of Javan, settled Greece.
 - b. Tarshish, son of Javan, settled the S. of Asia Minor.
 - c. Kittim, son of Javan, settled Macedon.
 - d. Dodanim, son of Javan, settled W. coast of Asia Minor.
 5. TUBAL, and posterity peopled Spain.
 6. MESHECH, and posterity, peopled Italy.
 7. TIRAS, and posterity, peopled Thrace.

* These tables of the patriarchal ages are taken from a compilation in Wilkinson's *Classical Atlas*. They are subject to slight deviation from accuracy, which we shall correct in its proper place. Dr. Wells makes it appear very clearly that Gomer and his three sons settled in Asia Minor on the southern coast of the Euxine; and that it was the migrations of their descendants that afterwards settled Norway, Sweden, Germany, France, and the British Isles, as we shall see in the sequel.

INTRODUCTION.

SHEM.
The south part of Asia.

1. ELAM, and posterity, peopled Persia.
2. ASHUR, and posterity, peopled Assyria, and built Nineveh.
3. ARPHAXAD, born 1658, and died 2096, peopled Caramania.
 - a. Salah, son of Arphaxad, born 1693, died, 2126, aged 433.
 - b. Eber, or Heber, son of Salah, born, 1723, died 2187; father of the Hebrews.
 - (a). Joktan, son of Eber, peopled S. E. of Asia, viz.—Sheba, offspring of Joktan, settled Hindoostan or India.
 - Orphir, offspring of Joktan, settled Molucca Isles, &c.
 - Havilah, offspring of Joktan, settled Thibet, &c.
 - (b). Peleg, son of Eber, born 1757, when the earth was divided; died 1996.
 - (c). Reu, son of Peleg, born 1787, died 2026, aged 239.
 - (d). Serug, son of Reu, born 1819, died 2049, aged 230.
 - (e). Nahor, son of Serug, born 1849, d. 1997, at Ur.
 - (f). Terah, son of Nahor, born 1878, died 2083, at Haran.
 - Haran, son of Terah, born, 1948, at Ur, died 2073.
 - Abraham, son of Terah, born 2008, at Ur; called thence 2083, died 2183.
 - Nahor, son of Terah, born at Ur, and died at Haran.
 - Sarah, half sister, and wife of Abraham, born 2018, died 2145.
4. LUD, and posterity, peopled Lydia in Asia Minor.
5. ARAM and sons, peopled Syria and Mesopotamia, viz.
 - a. Uz, son of Aram, settled the S. W. part of Syria.
 - b. Hul, son of Aram, settled the N. W. part of Syria.
 - c. Gether, son of Aram, settled the S. E. part of Syria.
 - d. Mash, son of Aram, settled Mesopotamia.
1. CUSH, and sons peopled the S. of Africa and Arabia, viz.
 - a. Seba, son of Cush, settled Arabia.
 - b. Sabtah, son of Cush, settled Ethiopia.
 - c. Raamah, daughter of Cush.
 - (a). Sheba, offspring of Raamah, settled Sofala.
 - d. Nimrod (Belus), son of Cush, founded Babylon.

INTRODUCTION.

HAM.
Africa, Arabia, Canaan.

2. MIZRAIM, and sons, peopled Egypt, &c. viz.
 - a. Lehabim, son of Mizraim, settled Lybia.
 - b. Capthorim, son of Mizraim, ancestor of the Copts.
 - c. Casluhim, son of Mizraim, settled between Egypt and Canaan.
 - (a). Philistim, son of Casluhim, ancestor of the Philistians
3. PHUT, ancestor of the Moors.
4. CANAAN, ancestor of the Canaanites, viz.
 - a. Sidon, ancestor of the Phœnicians, dwelt at Sidon.
 - b. Heth, ancestor of the Hittites, dwelt at Hebron.
 - c. Jebusite, ancestor of the Jebusites, founded Jerusalem.
 - d. Amorite, ancestor of the Amorites, dwelt at Heshbon.
 - e. Girgasite, ancestor of the Girgasites, dwelt at Girgesa.
 - f. Hivite, ancestor of the Hivites, dwelt at Gibeon.
 - g. Arkite, ancestor of the Arkites, dwelt at Archa.
 - h. Sinite, ancestor of the Sinites, dwelt near the desert of Sin.
 - i. Arvadite, ancestor of the Arvadites, dwelt at Arad; and
 - j. Hamathite, ancestor of the Hamathites, dwelt at Hamath.

*Annotations.*

NOAH, was 754 years old at the Confusion, and 950 at his death; which happened two years before the birth of Abraham. His posterity began to build Babel, in the land of Shinar, 1757; which continued 53 years, till the Confusion of Tongues, 1810 from the Creation of the World, or about 2190* before Christ. The original

* See the dispersion of the Scythians by Ninus, in the epochs of the first Gothic progress, page 46, with which this period nearly corresponds.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



INTRODUCTION.

THE THIRD AGE OF THE WORLD.

From the Call of Abraham to the Exodus; in two Sections.

SECTION I.

HARAN.

1. LOT, nephew of Abraham.
 - a. Moab, ancestor of the Moabites.
 - b. Ammon, ancestor of the Ammonites.
2. ISCAH.
3. MILCAH, wife of Nahor.

ABRAHAM.

1. ISHMAEL, ancestor of the Ishmaelites, born B. C. 1910, died 1773.
 - a. Kedar, son of Ishmael.
 - (a) Hamal, son of Kedar. — Nobet, Salaman, &c. } Ancestors of Mahomet.
 - b. Adbeel, Mibsam, Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadar, Tema, &c. sons of Ishmael. } Princes of the Ishmaelites.
 - c. Bashemath, daughter of Ishmael, and third wife of Esau.
2. ISAAC, was born 1896, died in Canaan 1716, aged 180.
 - a. Esau, son of Isaac, born 1837, ancestor of the Edomites.
 - (a) Eliphaz, son of Esau by his first wife Adah. — Amelek, son of Eliphaz, by Timnah. — Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatan, Kenaz, &c. } Other children of Eliphaz.
 - (b) Jeush, Jaalam, Korah, children of Esau by his second wife Aholibamah.
 - (c) Reuel, son of Esau by his third wife Bashemath. — Nahath, Zerah, Missah, and Shammah, } Other children of Reuel.
 - b. Jacob, or Israel, born 1837 in Canaan, died 1689 in Egypt.
3. ZIMRAN, &c. to No. 8. were Abraham's children by Keturah.
4. JOKSBAN.
 - a. Sheba, } Children of Joksban.
 - b. Dedan, }
 - (a) Ashurim and Letushim, descendants of Dedan.
5. MEDAN.
6. MIDIAN, ancestor of the Midianites.
 - a. Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abidan, and Eldaah, } Children of Midian.
7. ISHBAK.
8. SHUAH.

INTRODUCTION.

- NAHOR.**
- 1. **TEBAH.**
 - 2. **GAHAM.**
 - 3. **THAHASH.**
 - 4. **MACAH.**
- } Children of Nahor by Reumah.
- 5. **Uz, ancestor of Job,**
 - 6. **Buz, ancestor of Elihu,**
 - 7. **BETHUEL, lived at Haran,**
- } Children by Milcah
- a. **Laban, son of Bethuel, lived at Haran.**
 - (a). **Leah, daughter of Laban, and first wife of Jacob.**
 - (e). **Rachel, daughter of Laban, and second wife of Jacob.**
 - b. **Rebecca, daughter of Bethuel, and wife of Isaac.**

SECTION II.

- JACOB'S DESCENDANTS.**
- 1. **REUBEN, born before Christ 1758, had four sons.**
 - 2. **SIMEON, born before Christ 1757, had six sons.**
 - 3. **LEVI, born before Christ 1756, died 1619, aged 137.**
 - a. **Gershon, son of Levi.**
 - b. **Kohath, son of Levi, aged 133 at his death.**
 - (a). **Amram, son of Kohath, died in Egypt, aged 137.**
 - **Aaron, son of Amram, born 1574, died 1451, aged 126.**
 - **Moses, son of Amram, born 1571, died 1451, aged 120.**
 - c. **Merari, son of Levi.**
 - d. **Jochebed, daughter of Levi, and wife of Amram.**
 - 4. **JUDAH, born before Christ 1755; had three sons.**
 - 5. **ISSACHAR, had four sons.**
 - 6. **ZEBULUN, had three sons.**
 - (7). **Dinah, Jacob's only daughter.**
 - 7. **JOSEPH, born before Christ 1745, died 1635.**
 - a. **Manasseh, son of Joseph by Asenath.**
 - b. **Ephraim, son of Joseph by Asenath.**
 - 8. **BENJAMIN, born before Christ 1734, had ten sons.**
 - 9. **DAN.**
 - 10. **NAPHTALI, had four sons.**
 - 11. **GAD, had seven sons.**
 - 12. **ASHUR, had four sons, and one daughter.**
- } by Leah.
- } Zilpah† Bilhah.* Rachel.

* Handmaid to Rachel.

† Handmaid to Leah.

INTRODUCTION.

Annotations.

SECTION I.

LOT lived at Sodom till its destruction, of which he was preadmonished by angels, who brought him, his wife, and two daughters out of the city, and ordered them to flee with all possible precipitation to the mountains; warning them not to look back, lest they should be involved in the general destruction. His wife, disobeying this injunction, was immediately changed into a pillar of salt. Several of his children died at Sodom.

MOAB and AMMON were children of Lot by his two daughters. Their posterity were giants who dwelt in the country they conquered from the gigantic Emims and Zamzummims.

ISHMAEL was the son of Abraham by Hagar, the handmaid of Sarah. His posterity, the Ishmaelites or Hagarines, settled in Arabia; and their descendants have been called Arabs or Saracens.

ISAAC was the son of Abraham by his first wife Sarah. Isaac had, by his only wife Rebecca, twin sons Esau and Jacob.

ESAU, also called EDOM, in consequence of swearing away his birthright or right of primogeniture in favour of Jacob, was ancestor of the Edomites by his wives Adah, Aholibamah, and Bashemath or Mahalah; the two former were Canaanitish women, and the latter Ishmaelitish. The Edomites dwelt in the land of the Horims, or Horites, whose daughters they married, and by descent or conquest, possessed the country. They



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

 INTRODUCTION.

spirit that illuminated his aged father, that God would assuredly perform his gracious promise, by bringing their posterity out of Egypt, and giving them the land of Canaan for an inheritance. He therefore earnestly requested they would not bury him in Goshen, but lay his body in a coffin, and deposit it in some secure place, whence they might take it on the accomplishment of his predictions, to the Land of Promise. For the fulfilment of this request, his brethren bound themselves by an oath.

MOSES. Subsequently to this melancholy occurrence, the descendants of Israel increased prodigiously both in strength and numbers, so much that the natives, who began to fear that they would eventually cover the whole face of the kingdom, resolved to weaken them by taxes, labour, and every species of tyrannical oppression. But the first measures failing of the desired effect, thereupon a diabolical edict was promulgated, commanding *that every male child of the Hebrews that was born thereafter should be cast into the Nile, and that none but the females should be permitted to live.* Under this edict Moses was born, to humble the pride of Egypt, and to lead his groaning countrymen in triumph from the house of bondage.

EXODUS. The time having arrived for the fulfilment of the divine promise of bringing the Israelites out of Egypt; and Moses having prevailed with Pharaoh, by means of many miraculous feats, to permit the Jews to depart for the Land of Promise—they set out from *Ramesis*. When they arrived at Mount Sinai, in the Wilderness, God appointed them a day for the promulga-

INTRODUCTION.

tion of his Decalogue. On the appointed day, Moses committed the care of his people to Aaron and Hur, and went up with Joshua into the the mountain, where he continued forty days, while God gave him the *ten commandments*, on two tables of stone, called **TABLES OF COVENANT**, together with the whole plan of the Jewish tabernacle, and mode of worship. After Moses descended from the mount, he desired his congregation to bring an offering of different materials for the holy tabernacle; and he was immediately supplied with a profusion of jewels, metals, ointments, perfumes, and every other requisite article; which he distributed to proper artificers and workmen, whom God had endowed with the peculiar skill to contrive, and ability to execute, the various designs that had been shown to Moses on the mountain. The work was performed with such alacrity and diligence, that in less than six months the tabernacle, with all its magnificent furniture and apparatus, was set up at the foot of Mount Sinai, and the pompous worship of the Israelites was begun.—We will subjoin the results of the mustering and numbering of the tribes of Israel, the patriarchal chiefs of each, and the order of their encampment about the tabernacle, with a scheme of the same.

REUBEN. The tribe of Reuben was 46,500 in number; south of the tabernacle, and east of Simeon. **ELIZUR** patriarchal chief.

SIMEON. The tribe of Simeon was 59,300 in number; south of the tabernacle, and west of Reuben. **SHELUMIEL**, patriarchal chief.

GERSHON. The Gershonites were 7500 in number;

 INTRODUCTION.

west of the tabernacle; carried the curtains, veils, &c. **ELIASAPH**, patriarchal chief.

KOHATH. The Kohathites were 8600 in number; south of the tabernacle; carried the Sanctuary, Ark, &c. **ELISAPHAN**, patriarchal chief.

MERARI. The Merarites were 6200 in number; south of the tabernacle; carried the boards, bands, &c. **ZURIEL**, patriarchal chief.

JUDAH. The tribe of Judah were 74,600 in number; east of the tabernacle, and south of Issachar. **NAASON**, patriarchal chief.

ISSACHAR. The tribe of Issachar was 54,400 in number; east of the tabernacle, and south of Judah. **NETHANEEL**, patriarchal chief.

ZEBULUN. The tribe of Zebulun was 57,400 in number; east of the tabernacle, and south of Issachar. **ELIAH**, patriarchal chief.

MANASSEH. The tribe of Manasseh was 32,200 in number; west of the tabernacle, and north of Ephraim. **GAMALIEL**, patriarchal chief.

EPHRAIM. The tribe of Ephraim was 40,500 in number; west of the tabernacle, and south of Manasseh. **ELISHAMAH**, patriarchal chief.

BENJAMIN. The tribe of Benjamin was 35,400 in number; west of the tabernacle and north of Manasseh. **ABIDAN**, patriarchal chief.

DAN. The tribe of Dan was 62,700 in number; north of the tabernacle, and west of Asher. **AHIEZER** patriarchal chief.

NAPHTALI. The tribe of Naphtali was 53,400 in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



PART II.

SACRED GEOGRAPHY.

TABLE I.

ANTEDILUVIAN COUNTRIES.

<i>Ancient.</i>	<i>Modern.</i>
1. LAND OF EDEN, <i>a.</i> Paradise, or garden of Eden,	1. Shinar, Babylonia, and Irāk successively. <i>a.</i> (On the common channel of the Euphrates, Tigris, &c. About sixty miles from the Persian gulf).
2. LAND OF NOD, <i>a.</i> Enoch—city,	2. Elam, Susiana, and Persia; successively. <i>a.</i> Built by Cain, in the land of Nod.

RIVERS.

1. Pison, or Phison,	1. Tigris.
2. Gihon,	2. (Uncertain).
3. Hiddekel,	3. Zeindek (Gyndes).
4. Euphrates, or Perath,	4. Euphrates, or Great River.

Remarks.

As the sacred history is very short in other particulars relating to the antediluvian world (that is, the state of the world before the flood) so is it in reference to its geography; all the places thereof mentioned by Moses being either the *Garden of Eden*, with such places as

 ANTEDILUVIAN COUNTRIES.

belong to the description of its situation in the *land of Eden*, or the *land of Nod*, and the city of *Enoch* built therein.

From the words of Moses it is evident that the *country of Eden* extended beyond the valley through which passed the channel of the united waters of the *Tigris* and the *Euphrates*, &c. for the text says that *a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from thence it was parted and became into four heads*. But the ambiguity of the text in this part is such, that we cannot determine how far the *land of Eden* extended northwardly on the banks of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, or southwardly in the course of the bifurcation of their common channel, before their waters disembogued into the Persian gulf. The probability, however, is, that its limits were undefined, and that its extent may be applied to the greater part of the country watered by these two rivers, at least as far as the mountains of *Armenia*, corresponding with what, after the deluge, was called the *land of Shinar*.—There is no doubt as to the *Garden of Eden* or *Paradise*, which Moses evidently confines to the common channel of these rivers.—The term *Eden*, denoting pleasure, or delight, by its primary acceptation in the Hebrew language, has been imposed as a proper name on several places: as the *Eden* or *Beth-Eden*, mentioned by the prophet *Amos*, near *Damascus*; and a village on *Mount Lebanon* of the same name, besides others; and therefore mistaken for the site of the original terrestrial *Paradise*. Hence, too, it is rationally conceived that the *Garden of Eden* was



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

FROM THE DELUGE

have the *front of Eden* to respect Egypt, where Moses wrote, which would give it a location in Arabia: but as the orientals, particularly the Egyptians, always held the east in the greatest veneration, on account of its being the direction of the rising sun, I would prefer to understand the *front of Eden* as respecting that quarter; and this would place *Nod* in *Susiana* or *Persia*. Accordingly the learned bishop of Soissons observes that Ptolemy, in his description of *Susiana*, places there a city called *Anuchtha*; and, that the final syllable in this name being only distinctive of the feminine in the *Chaldee* tongue, leaves *Anuch*, which is without difficulty the same as *Enoch*.



TABLE II.

FROM THE DELUGE TO THE CONFUSION.

<i>Ancient.</i>	<i>Modern.</i>
1. COUNTRY OF ARARAT, a. Mount Ararat,	1. Present Armenia. a. Mountains of Armenia.
2. LAND OF SINGAR, SHINAR, a. Singar—city, b. Singaras mountain, c. Sem, or Shem—city, d. Babel—city and tower, e. Erech,	2. Mesopotamia and Babylonia, now Irak. a. Between the Euphrates and Tigris. b. Supposed to have given name to the land of Shinar. c. Zama of Ptolemy. d. Babylon, or Babil. e. Aracca, of Ptolemy.

Remarks.

The short account of the antediluvian world, given in the six first chapters of Genesis, is followed by the 7th and 8th chapters of the same book with an account of

TO THE CONFUSION.

the deluge, or flood; upon the abating whereof, the sacred historian tells us that the *Ark* rested upon the mountain of *Ararat*. From this period to the confusion of tongues by which God put a stop to the building of the tower of Babel, the geographical notices are as few as those anterior to it, as just seen; and nearly in the same region of country, only contracting the eastern, and extending the northern limit. These narrow limits of geography render it easy to comprehend the expression, as applying to that period, that "the whole earth was of one language."

It is unanimously agreed by the learned, that *Ararat* denotes, in sacred writ, the country called by the Greeks and other western nations *Armenia*: whence it follows that the mountains of *Ararat* are the same as the mountains of *Armenia*; though they might have extended much beyond the limits of *Armenia* or the country of *Ararat*, as does the immense chain of Mount *Taurus* of which it was a part. According to the opinion of some, the ark rested upon that part of Mount *Ararat* which was called the *Gordæan* mountain, near the head of the *Tigris*.

As to the land of *Shinar*, it is not to be doubted that it was the valley along which the *Tigris* runs, probably till it falls into the Persian gulf. In the northern part of this valley, in the mountains of *Armenia*, we find in old writers both a city called *Singara*, and a mountain called *Singaras*; from which it is highly probable that the adjoining valley took the name of *Shinar*.—It is plain from scripture that *Babel* was the original of the famous city of *Babylon*; nor is it to be doubted that *Erech* was

 FROM THE DELUGE

the same with the city of *Aracca*, mentioned by Ptolemy and other ancients: and Moses expressly says that *Babel* and *Erech* lay in the *land of Shinar*.

Noah and his family having descended, in the course of the Tigris from the mount and land of Ararat, entered and settled in the southern part of the land of *Shinar*, where they built the city of *Shem*. There, (according to the conjecture of Dr. Wells,) Noah,* Shem, and Japhet, if not Ham, continued, opposing the construction of the tower of *Babel*, while the undertakers of it removed to some distance from the patriarchs, and pitched upon a place more suitable for their purpose, on the banks of the *Euphrates*, afterwards the site of the city of Babylon, as we have said. However this be, they suffered equally with their presumptuous offspring, who would thus assail the kingdom of Heaven, and were included as principals in the dispersion that ensued; which has been recited in the Introduction, and is again repeated in the following table, with corrections from Wells.

* The author of the Sacred Mirror says, that Noah, after the Deluge, having received inestimable marks of affection from the Great Object of his adoration, descended from the mountains of Ararat, and applied himself to husbandry. After the scene of his inebriation, at the time of his vintage, the same author tells us that no further particulars are recorded of Noah, but that he died in the 950th year of his age: so that it is uncertain where he passed the remaining two hundred years of his life after the confusion. The Orientals, however, affirm, that he was buried in Mesopotamia, where his sepulchre is still shown, in the vicinity of an edifice which is called Dair Abunah, or *the monastery of our father*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

their work and punished their foolish vanity by their dispersion and a confusion of their language.



TABLE III.

OF THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

I. JAPHET,* OF ISLES OF THE GENTILES.	I. ASIA MINOR, and THE NEIGHBOURING ISLES, &c.
1. Gomer(1) and his three sons, viz. <i>a.</i> Ashkenaz. <i>b.</i> Riphath. <i>c.</i> Togarmah.	1. Northern parts of Asia Minor, viz. <i>a.</i> Phrygia. <i>b.</i> Paphlagonia. <i>c.</i> Cappadocia and Pontus, partly.
2. Javan and his four sons, viz. <i>a.</i> Tarshish.(2) <i>b.</i> Kittim or Cittim.(3) <i>c.</i> Elishah.(4) <i>d.</i> Dodanim.(5)	2. Southern part of Asia Minor, viz. <i>a.</i> Cilicia. <i>b.</i> Pamphylia and Pisidia. <i>c.</i> Æolia. <i>d.</i> Doris.
3. Mesech or Mosoch.(6)	3. Cappadocia and Armenia.
4. Tubal.(7)	4. Iberia, &c.
5. Magog.(8)	5. Russia, partly.
6. Madai.(9)	6. Media.
7. Tiras.(10.)	7. Thrace.

* The colonies of JAPHET'S posterity spread over part of Asia and Europe, as follows, viz.

(1) The colonies of the nation of *Gomer*, called *Cimmerii* or *Celts*, passing by the north of the *Euxine*, where they first made settlements, and penetrated into Sweden, Germany, France, and the British Isles.

(2) The colonies of *TARSHISH* settled *Tartessus* in Spain.

(3) The colonies of *CITTIM* settled *Cyprus* and part of *Macedonia* and *Italy*.

(4) The colonies of *ELISHAH* settled the neighbouring islands of the *Euxine* sea and part of *Greece*.

(5) The colonies of *DODANIM* settled in *Messenia*, *Doris*, and *Dodona* in *Greece*, and the island of *Rhodes*.

(6) The colonies of *MOSCH* settled in *Moscovy* in *Russia*.

THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

II. LAND OF SHEM.

1. Aram.
 - a. Uz.
 - b. Hul.
 - c. Mash.
 - d. Geter.

2. Asshur.

3. Elam.

4. Arphaxad.*

5. Lud.

III. LAND OF HAM.

1. Cush.†

2. Mizraim.
 - a. Ludim.
 - b. Anamim.
 - c. Lehabim.
 - d. Naphtuhim.
 - e. Pathrusim.
 - f. Casluhim.‡
 - g. Caphtorim.

3. Phut.

4. Canaan.

II. THE SOUTH OF ASIA.

1. Syria, Armenia, &c. viz.
 - a. Western part of Syria.
 - b. Armenia Major, partly.
 - c. Mesopotamia, partly.
 - d. Eastern part of Syria.

2. Assyria.

3. Susiana or Persia, partly.

4. Babylonia and Chaldea.

5. (Uncertain.)

III. AFRICA, and ARABIA, &c.

1. Arabia.

2. Egypt, Ethiopia, &c. viz.
 - a. Ethiopia.
 - b. Lybia, partly.
 - c. Lybia, partly.
 - d. Marmarica.
 - e. Thebais.
 - f. } Near the Isthmus of
 - g. } Suez.

3. Mauritania.

3. Palestine.

Remarks.

The sacred historian, having informed us how the world was depopulated by the flood, proceeds to inform us next, how it was repeopled by the posterity of Noah;

(7) The colonies of TUBAL, called *Iberians*, or *Celt-iberians*, settled on the river *Iberus* or *Ebro* in Spain.

(8) The colonies of MAGOG settled about the river *Tanais* and the *Palus Maëotis*

(9) The colonies of MADAI were the *Sarmatians* in Russia.

(10) The colonies of TIRAS settled about the river *Tiras* or *Neister*, on the north of the *Euxine* sea.

* Several colonies of the descendants of ARPHAXAD settled *India*; and at a subsequent period others came to the *land of Canaan*.

† *Nimrod*, the last son of CUSH, seized upon the *land of Arphaxad*. The descendants of the other sons of CUSH sent colonies from *Arabia* to *Ethiopia*.

‡ The *Philistines*, the descendants of CASLUHIM, seized on a part of the *land of Canaan*.

THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

which he does by acquainting us, after what method the three branches of Noah's family settled themselves at first, in three distinct tracts of the earth. From the text of the sacred historian it may be well inferred, as the learned Mr. Mede has observed, that this great division and plantation of the earth was performed in an orderly manner, and was not a confused and irregular dispersion, wherein every one went whither he listed, and seated himself as he liked best. An orderly sorting is plainly denoted by the expressions used in the sacred text, viz. "after their families, after their tongues, in their lands, in their nations." The reader is referred to the article NOAH, under the second table of the Introduction, for the most probable conjecture as to the respective numbers of *nations and languages* at the time of their dispersion and division.

Moses tells us that it was in the days of Peleg, son of Heber, that the earth was divided among the sons of Noah; which, supposing it were at the time of his birth, as his name signifies *division* in the Hebrew language, would make it one hundred years after the flood. Why he begins his account of the descendants of Noah with the sons of Japhet is uncertain. Had he shown any regard therein to seniority of birth, those of Shem and Ham had both claimed the precedence.—He says that among the descendants of Japhet were divided *the Isles of the Gentiles*. But we are not to understand the term *isles* in its literal sense. In the acceptation of the old Testament, *isles* or *islanders* applied to any country or people *beyond sea* in relation to Egypt, where it was chiefly written. Accordingly we shall see forth-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

quently known to be *Cappadocia* and *Pontus*. This location of the family of *Togarmah* is agreeable both to sacred and profane writers. And the name of *Togarmah* is discernible in that of the *Trocmi*, a people who, according to Strabo, dwelt in the confines of *Pontus* and *Cappadocia*, and who were also called by Cicero, *Trogmi*; and in the council of Calcedon, *Trogmades*.—Having thus given a brief view of the plantation of the nation of *Gomer*, we might here dismiss that part of our subject: but for the satisfaction of the inquisitive student, we will press it a little further, and shew how the colonies of their descendants, in process of time, settled Norway, Sweden, Germany, France, and the British Isles, by way of correcting a small inaccuracy in the compilers of the *first ages of the world* in Wilkinson's *Atlas Classica*, who attribute the plantation of those countries to *Gomer* and his three sons direct. Explicitly to our purpose is the authority of Herodotus, who tells us that a people called *Cimmerii*, formerly dwelt in this very tract of the Lesser Asia, which we have assigned to *Gomer*: and that these people sent a colony to the shores of the *Palus Meotis* on the north of the Euxine Sea, where they gave the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius* to the strait which connects that lake with the Euxine. This colony of the *Cimmerii* becoming very numerous, in process of time, spread themselves to the north and west, over the countries above mentioned. And, to notice it by the way, this migration of the *Cimmerii* corresponds in many respects with the course pursued by their successors, the *Scythians*, who, during the lapse of many ages, overran and repeopled these very coun-

THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

tries; having almost exterminated the aboriginal *Celts* or *Cimmerii* in their progress, as we have shown, in treating of the origin and migration of ancient nations, in the Introduction to Part I. As for the testimony of the ancients, Diodorus Siculus affirms that the ancient *Germans*, or *Celts*, had their original from the *Cimmerians*; and the Jews to this day, as Mr. Mede observes, call them *Ashkenazim*, as being derived from *Ashkenaz*. Indeed, they retain evident marks of their descent, both in the name of *Cimbri*, and that of *Germans*; the former of which they communicated to the peninsula of Jutland, in that of *Cimbrica Chersonesus*. Moreover that they spread into Gaul or France, is proved by Camden, who quotes the testimony of Josephus, where he says that those called by the Greeks *Galatæ*, were originally called *Gomerites*. They also sent colonies into the British Isles, if etymology of names afford any confirmation to the testimony of ancient writers; for the Welch to this day call themselves *Kumeri*, and we have seen in the Introduction to Part I, that a few of the aboriginal *Celts*, *Cimbri*, or *Kumeri*, maintained their possessions in Wales in defiance of their enemies the *Scythians*, who had followed their footsteps from Asia, and almost exterminated them from every part of Europe.

As the nation of Gomer first settled in the northern parts of Asia Minor, so did that of *Javan* first seat itself in the southern parts of the same. This appears evident not only from the name of a country in this tract called *Jenia* or *Ionia*, which is derived from *Javan*, but also from the situation of the families of his four sons within this tract, as we shall now see.—His

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

son *Tarshish* seated his family in the eastern part of the southern tract of Lesser Asia, nearly corresponding with *Cilicia*: for *Tarsus* the chief town of *Cilicia*, bears evident marks of the name of *Tarshish*, to whose honour it was so called. Josephus expressly affirms that not only this city was so called from *Tarshish*, but also that *Cilicia*, or the country around it, was originally known by the name of *Tarshish*. Nor is it to be doubted that this was the *Tarshish* to which the prophet Jonas thought to flee from the face of the Lord; as also was it the *Tarshish* mentioned so often by the prophets on account of its trading with *Tyre*.—The portion west of the family of *Tarshish*, appertained to the family of *Kittim* or *Cittim*; which word, having a plural termination, implies the descendants of *Keth* or *Ceth*. Ptolemy tells us of a country here called *Cetis*, and Homer mentions a people called *Cetri*. It is also remarkable that the *seventy interpreters* render *Kittim* by *Ketii* or *Cetii* exactly agreeable to the name mentioned by Homer. Josephus will have the isle of *Cyprus* to have been the seat of the *Cittim*: but it is not to be doubted that the continent was peopled first, though it is quite probable they sent colonies thither in the course of time.—*Elishah* settled his family in that part of this southern tract, which corresponds with *Æolia*, on the western coast of Asia Minor. And as the *Æolians* carry some marks of their origin in their name, Josephus expressly affirms that they derived both their name and descent from *Elishah*.—The family of *Dodanim* occupied the remainder of the western part of Asia Minor, south of *Elishah*, partly corresponding with a country that here occurs in



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

which name, though it wore away in other parts, has continued even to the present day, to distinguish the Hellespont, as if one would say *Elizæ Pontus*, i. e. the sea of *Elishah*. In passing over to the continent of Europe, their name suffered a slight alteration in that of *Hellenes*: and the country they seized upon was called *Hellas*, a name which, in process of time, became common to all Greece. We might cite many other vestiges of this name, of which suffice it to mention the city and province of *Elis* in the *Peloponnesus*, the city of *Eleusis* in *Attica*, and the river *Elissus* in the same province. Some authors even think that the *Campi Elizii*, or *Elysian fields*, so celebrated among the Greek fables, derived their name from *Elishah*.—As to the colonies of the *Dodanim*, or *Dorians*, it is well known that the *Spartans* or *Lacedemonians* considered themselves to be of *Doric* extraction. There was also a town in the province of *Messene*, not far from *Sparta*, called *Dorion*: and beyond the *isthmus* of the *Peloponnesus*, there was a considerable tract called *Doria*, *Dorica*, or *Doris*; to say nothing about *Dodona*, which we have already mentioned, still more remote on the north-western coast of Greece. In a word, all the Greek nation is sometimes denoted by ancient authors under the name of *Dores*.—We have already remarked that the family of *Kittim* or *Cittim*, lying between that of *Tarshish* on the east, and *Dodanim* on the west, being exposed to the sea on the south, probably sent their first colonies to the neighbouring island of *Cyprus*. But afterwards, extending their views further, and finding the lower part of Greece already inhabited by the descen-

THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

dants of *Elishah* and *Dodanim*, they proceeded on, coast-wise, along the western shores of Greece, till they came to the upper, or northern parts of it, where some of them planted themselves, while others passed over the *Adriatic* sea, and settled the opposite coasts of *Italy*. Hence, probably, it comes to pass that both *Macedonia* in Greece, and *Italy*, are denominated by the name of *Cittim* in scripture. In the book of *Maccabees*, it is said that *Alexander*, the son of *Philip the Macedonian*, came out of *Chetteim*; and there are authors who expressly say that the *Romans* or *Latins* had their extraction from the *Citii* or *Cetii*, as Eusebius, Suidas, and others, whose testimonies are produced by the learned Bochart.— Whithersoever else the descendants of *Tarshish* may have migrated, it is highly probable that *Tartessus*, a city and adjoining country, upon a river of the same name in Spain, much celebrated by the ancients for a great profusion of precious metals and other riches, was a colony of that family. For, besides the easy transition of the name, Polybius, in reciting the words of a league made between the Romans and Carthaginians, mentions a place named *Tarseium*, which Stephanus expressly says was a city in Spain near the *pillars of Hercules*. As *Tartessus* was celebrated among the ancients for the multitude of its riches, abounding in mines of silver, tin, lead, &c. with which the inhabitants traded in the fairs of *Tyre*, according to the prophet Ezekiel, the Greek poets derived from it the celebrated fable of the *pits of Tartarus*, where the wicked were condemned to labour, and to various modes of torture. We may add, that in consequence of the immense trade carried on

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

between the merchants of *Tartessus* and the *Phenicians*, &c. the whole Mediterranean sea, through which it passed, was called the sea of *Tarshish*: and hence, ships of the same character constructed by Solomon in the red sea, to carry on his trade with *Ophir* in the East Indies, for gold and silver; and other precious commodities, were called a navy of *Tarshish*. Finally, the *seventy interpreters* must have been possessed of an opinion that this country was settled by the family of *Tarshish*, as they have rendered *Tarshish* sometimes by *Carthage* and sometimes by *Carthaginians*, by which they could only have meant those of Spain, where they had a *Carthago Nova* in their time; for they could not have meant the *Carthage* or *Carthaginians* in Africa, who, as is known to all, both ancient and modern, were a colony of *Tyrè*.

We will return now to Asia Minor, where we left the original settlement of the nations of Gomer and Javan; and passing a little to the east of this tract, we shall here find those of *Meshech* and *Tubal*, which we speak of in connexion, because they are so mentioned by Moses and elsewhere in scripture. The nation of *Meshech*, then, joined that of Gomer on the east, partly in *Cappadocia* and *Armenia*; where the seventy interpreters rendered them by the name of *Mosoch*, and hence it is very probable that they were the descendants of those whom the Greeks called *Moschi*, in a province of these parts which they called *Moschia*.—To the north of *Meshech*, in *Iberia*, adjoined the first plantation of *Tubal*; who is affirmed by Josephus to have been the father of the *Asiatic Iberians*; adding that those whom



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

were a colony originally of *Meshech* or *Mosoch*, called by the Greeks *Moschi*, is very probable, not only on account of the similarity of names, but of the respective situation of the *European* and *Asiatic Moschi* to one another.

MAGOG is, by the testimony of Josephus, Eustathius, St. Jerom, and Theodoret, and as Mr. Mede expresses it, by the consent of all men, placed north of *Tubal*, and esteemed the father of the *Scythians* that dwelt on the east and north-east of the *Euxine* sea. This situation is confirmed by the scripture itself, *Ezek.* 38. 2. *Set thy face against Gog, in the land of Magog, the prince of Rosh Meshech and Tubal:* hence we learn that the *land of Magog* must be near to that of *Meshech* and *Tubal*, for there was no other vacancy than on the north. And the name of *Gog* was preserved entire in that of *Gogarene*, whereby was formerly denoted a country in those parts; as we learn from Strabo and Stephanus, a name that may have easily been changed to *Georgia*, by which a considerable tract is known at this day in the same quarter. Indeed Pliny expressly reckons the *Georgi* among the nations about the *Caspian* sea, which name may have been a corruption of *Gorgareni*. Of the colonies of *Magog*, we have only to say, that in the panegyric of Tibullus to Messala, mention is made by the poet of a people about the river *Tanais* called *Magini*; which carries a great affinity to *Magog*. Thus the *Magini*, in all probability were descendants of *Magog*, and came at length, in search of fertile settlements, to the river *Tanais*. Indeed the *palus Maotis* into which

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

the *Tanais* runs, is supposed to have taken its name from *Magog*.

The *Medes*, so often mentioned in scripture with the *Persians*, to whom they were neighbours, have been almost universally looked upon as descendants of *Madai*, to whom the same opinions have assigned the country called *Media*, south of the *Caspian* sea, for the settlement of his family. And this is put beyond dispute by the scripture itself, which uniformly denotes the *Medes* by the name of *Madai*, in the Hebrew text. That *Media* should be somewhat out of the reasonable bounds of *the isles of the Gentiles*, allotted to the descendants of *Japhet*, can be no objection to so plain a matter of fact.—As for the colonies of *Madai*, M. Bochart is of opinion that the *Sarmatians* are to be looked upon in that relation. He conjectures that the name of *Sarmatians* was originally *Sar-Madai*, which, in the oriental languages, denotes *posterity of the Medes*.

Tiras, or *Thiras*, the last son of *Japhet*, is by universal agreement, esteemed to be the father of the *Thracians*, so called from him by a little change in the primitive word. And the same is confirmed by the many traces of this name that were afterwards to be found attached to cities, bays, and rivers, in this country according to ancient writers. They also inform us that one of the names of *Mars*, the god of the *Thracians*, was *Thuras* which the *seventy interpreters* rendered *Thiras*.—There is no doubt that some of the colonies of *Tiras* planted themselves in the country over against *Thrace* on the north of the *Euxine* sea; where there is a considerable river which entirely preserves the memory of

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

the father of the *Thracians*, in the name of *Tiras*, now called *Niester*. There was also a city of the same name upon this river.

Before we take leave of the subject of *Japhet's* descendants, it will be proper to notice Dr. Wells's objection to the above account of the first settlements of the families of *Tiras* and *Maidai*. He thinks that *Media* and *Thrace* were too remote from the original settlements of the rest of *Japhet's* sons; ever to have been in the immediate possession of *Madai* and *Tiras*. Therefore he thinks it most probable that they settled originally in *Asia Minor*; and, on account of some similarity between the names of *Tiras* and *Troas*, *Madai* and *Mæsi*, that they were the ancestors of the ancient *Trojans* and *Mæsians*; adding that the colonies of *Tiras* and *Madai* might nevertheless have passed the *Hellespont*, and settled in *Thrace* and *Macedonia*: for he supposes with Mr. Mede, that that *Madai*, who is spoken of in scripture as the progenitor of the *Medes*, was some descendant of *Shem*. What weight these conjectures ought to have, against opinions acknowledged to be so long established and universal, we need not determine.

—

The plantations of the sons of *Shem* are next in geographical order to those of *Japhet*, being in *Asia*, on the east and south of the nation of *Gomer*. Moses mentions five immediate sons of *Shem*, namely *Elam*, *Ashur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*: and of these he acquaints us with only the sons of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*.

The portion that fell to the nation of *Aram*, lay in *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria*. It is probable that *Ar*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

The nation of *Ashur* lay east of the nation of *Aram*, and is universally esteemed to be *Assyria*, so called from the father of that nation. But *Assyria*, as it is here understood, of which *Nineveh* was the capital, lay entirely east of the *Tigris*.

The nation of *Elam* was also seated beyond the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, and south of *Asshur*, in *Susiana* and part of *Persia*; for the inhabitants of this tract are plainly and frequently denoted by the name of *Elam*, both in scripture and in heathen writers. Pliny and Ptolemy mention a country called *Elymais* on the Persian gulf; and Daniel the prophet speaks of *Shushan*, the chief city of *Susiana*, as lying in the province of *Elam*.

The lot assigned to *Arphaxad*, by the learned, was on the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, comprehending the tower of *Babel* on the north, and the original site of the terrestrial *Paradise* on the south. It corresponded in part with the land of *Shinar*, *Babylonia*, and *Chaldea*. Were a citation of probabilities necessary to confirm or strengthen the best testimony, in favour of the valley of *Shinar* or the country of *Eden* being part of the first plantation of *Arphaxad*, the progenitor of the Jewish nation through his son *Heber*, we might add, 1st, that it was to this country *Noah* returned and settled after the flood, till the building of the tower therein occasioned the dispersion of mankind: 2d, that at the dispersion of mankind and confusion of languages, the primitive Hebrew tongue was preserved in the family of *Arphaxad*, which would reasonably imply that they still continued in the same parts with their grandsires *Noah* and *Shem*. The colonies of *Arphaxad*, descended from his

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

son *Heber*, in process of time, went hence to the east and the west. *Jocktan*, son of *Heber*, and his sons, settled the *East-Indies*, viz. *Sheba* settled Hindoostan or India; *Havilah* settled Thibet; and *Ophir* settled the Molucca isles and Ceylon. *Terah* (a descendant of *Peleg*, the son of *Heber*, who remained in *Chaldea*) migrated with his family westwards to *Canaan*: for thus we see it in Genesis 11. 31. *And Terah took Abram his son—and went forth with them—from Ur of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan.* Upon this colony, their various branchings, and the nation with which they have connexion, it will be the province of the Sacred Geography to dwell more particularly, in the sequel.

Of *Lud*, and his descendants, Dr. Wells says there is nothing certain, but that they did not settle in the country of Lesser Asia, called *Lydia*.

—

Ham, the youngest of the three sons of *Noah*, had four sons, viz. *Cush*, *Mizraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*. Though we find Egypt twice or thrice denominated the *Land of Ham*, in the book of *Psalms*, yet *Africa* even was not all that fell to his descendants at the partition of the earth; as all the *Land of Promise* and the contiguous parts of *Arabia* were included in their possessions, to say nothing of his grandson *Nimrod's* acquisition of *Assyria* by conquest from the descendants of *Asshur*. There is no doubt that the personage denoted by the Greeks under the name of *Jupiter Ammon*, to whose honour a temple celebrated for its oracles was erected in the part of *Lybia* adjoining Egypt, was no other than

THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

Ham, who had settled in Egypt with his son *Mizraim*, as we shall see.—It is well known that the nation of *Canaan* settled in that part of *Asia* at the eastern extremity of the Mediterranean called Palestine, so often mentioned in scripture under the name of *Land of Canaan*, which God afterwards gave to the *Israelites*, the seed of *Abraham*. We shall speak more fully of the *Land of Canaan* on a future occasion.—The nation of *Cush* is likewise frequently mentioned in scripture; and in such a manner as to show clearly that its first settlement was in the country adjoining *Canaan* on the south, that is in *Arabia*. That *Ethiopia* in Africa was not the land of *Cush*, is manifest from a passage in *Ezekiel*, 29, 13. where God makes his prophet say—*I will make the land of Egypt desolate from the tower of Syrene even unto the borders of Cush*; which would plainly mean from one extremity of that land to the other. And all geographers know that *Syrene* was the southern boundary of Egypt towards *Ethiopia*, consequently the other extremity was towards the isthmus of Suez, or *Cuch* in Arabia. It is nevertheless probable that *Cush* may have been the ancestor of the *Ethiopians*, as the *Cushites* may have passed down the red sea, and crossed into Africa, and settled colonies in *Ethiopia*.—Of the descendants of *Cush*, Moses mentions *Seba*, *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, *Sabtecha*, *Raamah*, and two sons *Sheba* and *Dedan*; and then adds, that *Cush* begat *Nimrod*, who began to be a mighty one upon the earth;—all of whom settled in *Arabia*, except *Nimrod*, who invaded *Assyria* and founded *Babylon*, where the tower of *Babel* had been begun. The kingdom of *Nimrod*, and the neighbouring countries, distin-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

 THE PLANTATION OF THE EARTH.

thros, settled in upper Egypt, or *Thebais*, where Ptolemy places *Patheras*, an inland town not far from *Thebes*. And agreeably thereto the *septuagint* renders the Hebrew *Pathros* by the Greek *Pathyris*.—The *Casluhim* are supposed to have settled *Casiotis*, the country about the borders of Egypt and Arabia, where a mountain was also called *Casius*, both which names retain somewhat that of *Casluhim*. This location is rendered still more probable, since Moses says from them sprang the *Philistines*; who, in process of time made themselves masters of the adjoining part of the *land of Canaan*.—The *Caphthorim* were situated near the *Casluhim*, and must have intermixed with them, as the *Philistines*, who are expressly said to be descendants of the *Casluhim*, are sometimes called *Caphthorim*; *Deut.* 2. 23. *Jer.* 47. 4. and *Amos* 2. 7. The name of *Caphthorim* is preserved in an old city in this part of Egypt called *Coptus*, from which it is probable the common name of Egypt is derived: of this opinion is Mr. Mede and many of the learned.

The settlement of *Phut* is supposed to have been westward of the descendant of *Mizraim*, that is west of *Cyrenaica*, and to have spread into *Mauritania*: for in *Africa proper*, below *Adrumentum* was a city called *Putea* mentioned by Pliny; and in *Mauritania* there was a river mentioned by Ptolemy called *Phut*. St. Jerom says there was a river in his own time in *Mauritania* called *Phut*, and the adjacent country *Regio Phitensis*.

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

TABLE IV.

THE EAST COUNTRIES,

*From the time of Nimrod till the calling of Abraham
thence to Canaan.*

<i>Ancient.</i>	<i>Modern.</i>
1. The KINGDOM OF NIMROD.	1. Shinar, Assyria, Babylonia, Chaldea, &c.
<i>a.</i> Babylon,	<i>a.</i> Babil.
<i>b.</i> Erech,	<i>b.</i> Wasit, formerly Aracca.
<i>c.</i> Accad,	<i>c.</i> Karkuf, formerly Sltace.
<i>d.</i> Calneh,	<i>d.</i> Al-Modain.
<i>e.</i> Nineveh, or Nineve,	<i>e.</i> Nina, formerly Ninus.
<i>f.</i> Rehoboth,	<i>f.</i> El-Bir, formerly Birtha.
<i>g.</i> Halah, Calash,	<i>g.</i> (East of Resen.)
<i>h.</i> Resen,	<i>h.</i> Larissa, of Xenophon.
3. Chaldea,	3. Part of Shinar, now Irak.
<i>a.</i> Ur.	<i>a.</i> Ur (whence Abraham was called to Haran.)
(<i>a.</i>) Haran,	(<i>a.</i>) (whence Abraham was called to Canaan.)
2. PARAS, OR PERSIA,	2. Nod, Elam, or Susiana.
<i>a.</i> Shusham, Cutham, or Cuth,	<i>a.</i> Suster, formerly Susa.

Remarks.

Moses having named the other sons and grandsons of *Cush*, to whom nearly all *Arabia* was allotted at the plantation after the flood, as above stated, subjoins, that *Cush* begat *Nimrod*, who began to be a mighty one upon the earth. Indeed he was so well skilled in hunting and warfare, that he became proverbial for valour and strength. The occasion of his applying himself to hunting is conjectured to be in order to destroy the wild beasts that began then to grow very numerous and to infest the nation of *Cush*—the deserts of *Arabia* being a convenient harbour for them. Having by degrees become a great master in hunting and destroying the beasts

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

of prey, he not only ingratiated himself with his companions, and the inhabitants of the neighbouring countries, but inured them, like himself, to undergo fatigues and hardships, and to manage dexterously offensive weapons of various kinds. Being thus trained to hostilities with beasts of prey, and at length perceiving his skill and strength sufficient to act offensively even against mankind, he invaded first, the neighbouring parts of the nation of *Shem*, which had fallen to the family of *Arphaxad*, and made himself master of the lower part of the *Land of Shinar*. The extraordinary fruitfulness and pleasantness of this tract, might have induced *Nimrod* to invade it, in preference to any other part of the nation of *Shem*.

Having conquered the southern parts of the land of *Shinar*, he pitched upon the very spot where the city and tower of *Babel* had been begun, to rear the metropolis of his kingdom, which was therefore called *Babel*, and by the Greeks and Romans *Babylon*. Though we have spoken of this city in the foregoing part of this work, it is proper, to give a fuller account of it here. It stood, as has been said, on each side of the *Euphrates*, having streets running north and south parallel with the river, and others crossing these from east to west. The circumference of the Wall of this great city was 355 furlongs, that is, about forty miles; the height of it was 50 cubits, and the breadth not much less. It is said to have been built in one year, by the hands of 200,000 workmen daily employed upon it. Over the *Euphrates* there was a sumptuous bridge; and at each end of the bridge there was a magnificent palace. This metropo-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



THE EAST COUNTRIES.

ned, Curtius, the historian, tells us, that it was diminished one fourth in his time: it was reduced to desolation in the time of Pliny; and in the days of St. Jerom, it was turned into a park, wherein the kings of Persia used to hunt. Ranwolf, a German physician, saw, and thus describes the site of this city in 1574. "By a small village, called *Eulego* or *Fulego*, on the Euphrates, is the seat of the old *Babylon*, a day and a half's journey from *Bagdat*. The lands about it are so dry and desolate, that one might justly doubt the fertility of it, and the greatness of this city, if the vast ruins still to be seen, did not banish all suspicion. There are still standing some arches of a bridge on the river; which is here half a mile broad and very deep: these arches are built of bricks, and are wonderfully compacted. A quarter of a mile below the village, in a plain, are the fallen ruins of a castle; and beyond that, are the ruins of the *tower of Babel*, half a German mile in circumference, which is now the receptacle of serpents and venomous creatures. All who travel over these plains, will find vast numbers of the ruins of very ancient, great, and lofty buildings, towers, arches, and such like structures, of wonderful architecture. There is only one tower, called *Daniel's tower*, which is still entire and inhabited; from whence may be seen all the ruins of this once vast metropolis, which sufficiently demonstrate the truth of what ancient writers have said of its greatness, by the vastness of their extent."

We proceed now to speak of the other cities of the kingdom of *Nimrod*, mentioned with *Babel* as lying in the land of *Shinar*, which are *Erech*, *Acchad*, and *Cal-*

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

neh. As to *Erech*, there is no question that it was the same which occurs in Ptolemy, under the name of *Arec-ca*; and which is placed by him at the last, or most southern turning of the common channel of the Euphrates and Tigris. The fields hereof are mentioned by Tibullus, on account of their springs of *naphtha*, which is a sort of liquid bitumen.—The city of *Acchad* in Hebrew, is written *Archad* by the seventy interpreters; whence some traces of this name are thought to be preserved in that of *Argades*, a river that runs near *Sittace*, the name by which this city was afterwards called, standing at some distance east of the *Tigris*, and giving name to *Sittacene*, a country between *Babylon* and *Susa*.—*Calne* or *Chalneh*, otherwise called *Chalnoh* or *Channe*, was a considerable place even in the days of Amos. It is said by Eusebius, St. Jerom, and others, to be the same with *Ctesiphon*, standing upon the *Tigris*, about three miles from *Seleucia*, and was for some time the capital city of the *Parthians*. That this was the situation of *Chalneh*, is confirmed from the country about *Ctesiphon* being even by the Greeks called *Chalonitis*, a name plainly derived from *Chalneh*. And as we are expressly told by Ammianus Marcellinus, that *Pacorus*, a king of the *Parthians*, changed its name, imposing on it the Greek of *Ctesiphon*, we may reasonably suppose that its old name was *Chalneh*, and that from it the neighbouring country took the name of *Chalonitis*, which it retained after the city had lost its original appellation.

Thus we have seen what Moses calls “the beginning of the kingdom of Nimrod,” which was “*Babel*, and *Erech*, and *Archad*, and *Chalneh*, in the land of *Shinar*.”

 THE EAST COUNTRIES.

But afterwards he extended his kingdom further, and “out of the land of *Shinar*, he went out into *Assyria* and built *Nineveh*, and the city of *Rehoboth*, and *Calah*, and *Resen* between *Nineveh* and *Calah*.”

Nineveh is so called from *Ninus* the son of *Nimrod*, it being a compound of the Hebrew *nin-nave*, which signifies *the dwelling of Ninus*. As to the situation of this once potent city, there is a great diversity of opinions concerning it. And perhaps the true one is, that the very place where the kings and princes of the *Assyrians* thence lived in such splendour, is no longer discernible: which verifies the prophecy of *Nahum*, 1. 8. *With an overrunning flood HE will make an utter end of the place thereof*. And this is particularly taken notice of by *Lucian* in one of his dialogues, wherein he says “*Ninus* was so utterly destroyed, that there remained no footsteps of it, nor could one tell where it stood.” However, from the observation of the learned, we may infer that there were two cities of this name; one on the *Euphrates* and the other on the *Tigris*, which last is that mentioned so often in scripture. It is even supposed that this *Nineveh*, in process of time, changed its place, inasmuch as *Nimrod* first built it upon the *Tigris* above the mouth of the *Lycus*; but, being taken and destroyed by the *Medes*, another city arose afterwards, at no great distance from the former, below the mouth of the *Lycus*, out of its ruins, as it were, and bore the same name. This conjecture is the more probable, as the like has often happened to other cities. The greatness of this city even exceeded that of *Babylon* itself. These are the dimensions of *Ninus* given by Di-



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

Nimrod, having suffered nearly the same fate with *Nineveh*, nothing can be said of them which will amount to more than conjecture. Of the name of *Rehoboth* there remain no traces; but there being in these parts a city called *Birtha* by Ptolemy, denoting *streets* in the Chaldee tongue, the same as *Rehoboth* in the Hebrew, it is conjectured that *Rehoboth* and *Birtha* are only different names for one and the same city. And it is not to be doubted that *Birtha* of Ptolemy, is the same with *Verta* of A. Marcellinus, seated on the *Tigris* not far from the *Lycus*. There is also mention made of a city *Rehoboth*, on the *Euphrates*; but this was at too great a distance from *Assyria*, to have been built by *Nimrod*.—As we find in Strabo, a country about the head of the river *Lycus*, called *Calachene*, it is very probable that this country took its name from *Calah* or *Calach*, which was once the capital city of it. To this city and country, it is very probable, that Salmanassar transplanted some of the *ten tribes* of *Israel*, as we read in II. Kings, 17. 6. though the name is there somewhat differently spelt.—The last city built by *Nimrod* was *Resen*, which Moses tells us was between *Nineveh* and *Calah* on the *Tigris*. Though there were two cities in *Mesopotamia*, whose names are somewhat similar to that of *Resen*, yet *Larissa* mentioned by Xenophon, corresponds best with it, both in point of situation and grandeur: for Moses says that *Resen* was a great city; and Xenophon tells us that *Larissa* was a strong and great city, being eight miles in circumference, and having walls 100 feet high and 20 broad. But it is probable Xenophon made some

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

alteration in the original name of this city, as *Larissa* is Greek.

The sacred historian, having finished his account of the kingdom of *Nimrod*, passes on to the history of *Abraham*, giving a genealogical account of his descent from *Shem*. After this he informs us that *Terah*, taking his son *Abraham* with him, and *Lot* his grandson by *Haran*, and *Sarah* wife of *Abraham*, left *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, to go into *Canaan*; and that having come unto *Haran*, they sojourned there. It remains then, in illustrating the subjects of the above table, to say something of *Chaldea*, *Ur*, and *Haran*.

During the interval of several ages from the time of *Nimrod*, till the calling of *Abraham* from *Ur*, the name of *Chaldea* became distinctive of the greater part of the above country included in the kingdom of *Nimrod*, lying between *Mesopotamia* on the north, *Susiana* on the east, the *Persian gulf* on the south, and *Arabia Deserta* on the west. Its capital city was *Babylon*, on which account *Isaiah* the prophet called it *the beauty of the Chaldees excellency*. But in process of time the name of this metropolis prevailed over all the country of *Chaldea* in that of *Babylonia*. Hence *Babylonia* and *Chaldea* are frequently used reciprocally; and sometimes they are reciprocally restrained, one within provincial limits to the other. The above boundaries are such as the Greek and Roman writers assign to *Chaldea*; but in the sacred writings it is sometimes taken in a larger sense, so as to include the neighbouring parts of *Mesopotamia*. This is evident from the words of St. Stephen; "The God of glory appeared to our father *Abraham* when he was in

THE EAST COUNTRIES.

Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in *Charran*, and said unto him, get thee out of this country'***. Then came he out of the land of the *Chaldees*, and dwelt in *Charran*." Here we see *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia* are used convertibly. Dr. Well conjectures that *Chaldea* was derived from *Chesed*, one of the sons of *Nahor*, and the supposed father of astronomy at *Ur*, where he continued to reside after *Terah* and his family had departed.—That the city of *Ur* was famous for astronomy is evident from its name, which signifies *light*, in honour of that science which cultivates a knowledge of the celestial luminaries. As to the situation of *Ur*, it is plain from what has been said, that it was in the eastern part of *Mesopotamia*, included in the name of *Chaldea*, which in all probability was the part about which originated the appellation of *Land of the Chaldees*. This situation of *Ur* agrees both with the words of *St. Stephen*, and with the writings of *A. Marcellinus*, who travelled this country, and mentions a city of this name lying therein, between the *Tigris* and the city of *Nisibis*.—*Haran*, or *Charran*, is conjectured to have been so called by *Terah*, in memory of his deceased son *Haran*, the father of *Lot*. It was situated in the west of *Mesopotamia*, on a river of the same name in the Greek writers, which runs first into the *Chaboras*, and with it into the *Euphrates*. This place is taken notice of under the name of *Charrae* by Roman writers, on account of a great overthrow there given by the *Parthians* to the Roman army under the command of *Crassus*; who was slain in the battle. To this day the name of *Haran* is preserved on the same spot by an inconsiderable village.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

FORGOTTEN BOOKS

FULL

MEMBERSHIP

797,885 Books!

All you can read

for only

\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



CANAAN.

Aram, an immediate son of *Shem*, to the north and east; and the nation of *Cush* one of his brothers, to the south and south-east; and the nation of *Mizraim*, another of his brothers, to the south-west; his western boundary being the Mediterranean sea.—His descendants are thus reckoned by Moses, *Gen.* 10. 15—18, “*Canaan* begat *Sidon* his first born, and *Heth*, and the *Jebusite*, and the *Amorite*, and the *Girgashite*, and the *Hivite*, and the *Arkite*, and the *Sinite*, and the *Arvadite*, and the *Zemerite*, and the *Hamathite*.”

The *Canaanitish* nations took their names from these eleven sons of *Canaan*, from whom they were descended, respectively. Dr. Wells says it is more than probable that all these families were seated originally in the true boundaries of *Canaan*; but in process of time, being dispossessed of a considerable portion of their patrimony by the *Philistines*, some of these were obliged to crowd closer together in the portion that remained to their possession, while others were compelled to seek their asylum in the neighbouring country. Being disturbed in their southern possessions, those who flee their country passed its northern limits; and those nations that we thus find beyond the limits of *Canaan*, are the *Arkites*, the *Sinites*, the *Arvadites*, the *Zemarites*, and the *Hamathites*. We are also informed that a portion of each of these nations remaining in *Canaan* were so confusedly mixed as to be no longer distinguishable, and were there denoted collectively by the general appellation of *Canaanites*. The *Kadmonites* and *Perizzites*, were also attributed to the common original of the *Canaanites*.

CANAAN.

Having premised thus much of the families of the *Canaanites* in general, it is proper now to notice the situation of each family in particular; which we shall do in the order they are mentioned by Moses. The situation then, of *Sidon* is evidently marked out by the famous city of that name. Though *Tyre* is celebrated by the poets for its antiquity, and the *Tyrians* themselves were wont to boast thereof, yet it is notorious that *Sidon* was more ancient. In *Isaiah*, 23. 12. *Tyre* is expressly styled the daughter of *Sidon*; by which is meant that the *Tyrians* were a colony of the *Sidonians*. Though the *Tyrians* at length became more considerable than the *Sidonians*, yet it is apparent from profane as well as sacred writers that the *Sidonians* were, in the earlier ages of the world, much more considerable than the *Tyrians*. Homer never mentions *Tyre*, but makes frequent mention of the *Sidonians*, to whom he gives the character of being very ingenious in several arts.—The descendants of *Heth* are styled in scripture as *children of Heth*, or *Hittites*. As *Sidon* planted his family to the north of *Canaan*, *Heth* on the other hand took the southern part about *Hebron*, for when *Sarah* died at *Hebron*, “*Abraham* spoke to the sons of *Heth* about the purchase of a burying-place, to which they readily agreed—and *Abraham* stood up and bowed himself to the people of the land.”—The family of *Jebusite* was seated about *Jerusalem*, originally called *Jebus*. *I. Chron.* 11. 4. “And *David* and all *Israel* went to *Jerusalem*, which was *Jebus*, where the *Jebusites* were the inhabitants of the land.” So that the *Jebusites* adjoined the *Hittites* towards the north.—The *Amorites* also

CANAAN.

dwelt in these hilly parts of the land of *Canaan*, as is asserted in *Num.* 13. 29, where the men that were sent to search out the land, gave this account of it to Moses: "The *Hittites* and the *Jebusites*, and the *Amorites*, dwelt in the mountains," &c. And we are told, *Gen.* 14. 7. "That *Chedorlaomer* smote the *Amorites* that were in *Hazezontamar*," which was the same place with *Engaddi*, seated in the hilly parts of *Canaan*, eastward, and towards the *Jordan*.—The *Girgashites* probably seated themselves at first along the upper part of the river *Jordan*. For, on the east side of the sea or lake of *Tiberias*, in the time of *Christ*, we are told of a city called *Gergesa*.—The *Hivites* settled in the upper or northern parts of *Canaan*, adjoining the *Sidonians*, in *Mount Lebanon*.—Thus we have recounted the settlements of those families of *Canaan*, which are mentioned in the sequel of the sacred history, as having continued within the original boundaries of the lot of *Canaan*. Though the remaining five sons of *Canaan* were probably seated in the original boundaries of this lot, as we have above hinted, and that in all likelihood about the south-west corner of it, whence they were driven by the *Philistines*, yet we have no distinct mention of their settlement till after their removal beyond the limits of the land of *Canaan*; and these we shall now speak of.—The *Arkites* are supposed to have settled about that part of *mount Libanus*, where *Ptolemy* and others place a city called *Arce*.—The *Sinites* likewise settled in these parts; and *St. Jerom* tells us of a city here called *Sin*, which, though in succeeding ages it was ruined by war, yet survives, in name and place. The *Sin* in *Egypt* has



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &c.

—Further eastward, and south-east of *Canaan*, dwelt the gigantic *Emims*. And full east of *Canaan*, dwelt the gigantic *Zanzummims* or *Zumims*.—Lastly, on the north-east dwelt the *Rephaims*, who were also of the same gigantic race.—Thus we have seen the several people that inhabited the countries adjoining *Canaan* on the south-west, south-east, east, and north-east, when *Abraham* came thither. The country directly on the north, we have just shown, was possessed by several *Canaanitish* families, who had been dispersed by the *Philistines*.

It is indeed said, that when *Chedorlaomer*, king of *Elam*, with his confederates, smote the *Rephaims*, *Zumims*, *Emims*, and *Horites*, they also smote the country of the *Amalekites*; but this must be understood proleptically of the *Amalekites*, as they were descendants of *Amalek*, grandson of *Esau*, and therefore gave name to that country long subsequent to the days of *Abraham* and *Chedorlaomer*. They consequently belong to a notice (which concludes the Sacred Geography) that will be given of the neighbouring nations of *Canaan* of a subsequent period, who had supplanted those last mentioned, previous to *Joshua's* conquest of the *Promised Land*.

~~~~~

### PRINCIPAL PLACES AND INCIDENTS,

*Mentioned during the sojourning of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, in Canaan; together with the dwellings of their immediate descendants, &c.*

1. SALEM, OR SECHEM, afterwards Jerusalem, whither *Abraham* came from *Haran*, by divine command, with his nephew *Lot*.



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;c.

2. THE PLAIN OF MOREH, where *Abraham* sojourn-  
ed awhile, near *Salem*. This *plain* is otherwise render-  
ed the *High Oak*, on account of a notable oak that stood  
in or near it, under which many transactions took place,  
that are spoken of in scripture. It was a part of this  
*plain* that *Jacob* bought and bequeathed to *Joseph* as a  
mark of his particular favour: and in it there was a  
well, whereon our Saviour sat whilst he discoursed with  
the woman of *Samaria*, called *Jacob's Well* because he  
had caused it to be made.

3. BETHËL, somewhat south of *Sechem*, near which  
*Abraham* came next to sojourn in a neighbouring Mount;  
till a famine occasioned his departure with *Lot* for  
Egypt, whence they shortly returned by several jour-  
neys, to the same Mount; which divided *Bethel* on the  
west from *Hai* or *Ai* on the east. *Bethel* is spoken of  
proleptically by *Moses*, in the history of *Abraham*, as  
this name was afterwards given to it by *Jacob*.

4. THE PLAIN OF JORDAN, through which the river  
Jordan flowed, and of which the valley of *Jericho* and  
vale of *Siddim*, were parts. After parting with his un-  
cle *Abraham* at the Mount between *Bethel* and *Hai*, in  
consequence of their substance being grown so great  
that they could no longer dwell together, *Lot* by the  
permission of his uncle, chose all the *plain of Jordan* to  
abide in, and pitched his tent near *Sodom*.

5. THE PLAIN OF MAMRE, about two miles from *He-  
bron*, where *Abraham* went to abide after parting with  
*Lot*, and where he raised an altar and entertained three  
angels under an oak. By a degeneracy of the true dé-  
votion, this oak in after ages became famous for the su-



---



---

 SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &c.
 

---



---

perstitious worship performed there; which Constantine the great, and first Christian emperor of Rome, put a stop to, by having the altar destroyed, and a church built in its place.—The city of *Hebron* is frequently mentioned in the sacred history; as it was a place of great renown in those days. The name of *Hebron* seems to have been given to it by the *Israelites*, for it was first called *Kirjath-Arba*, or the city of *Arba*. *Mamre*, from a distinguished friend of *Abraham*, was also another name for *Hebron*, as it was of the neighbouring plain. We are told in scripture that it was built seven years before *Zoar* in Egypt, which was the royal city of the *Pharaohs*, whose antiquity was the boast of the Egyptians.—*Hebron* was situated on the ridge of mountains which run southward from *Jerusalem*. As it was famous for *Abraham's* sojourning in its neighbouring plain, was it famous in after days for king *David's* keeping his court there for the first seven years of his reign, till he took *Jerusalem*. It was also one of the cities that were given to the *Levites*, and a city of refuge: and when the Christians had conquered *Palestine*, it was made a bishop's see, as we are told by the writers of those times.

6. SODOM, GOMORRAH, ADMAM, ZEBOIM, and BELA or ZOAR, the pentapolis or five cities of that part of the plain of Jordan called the vale of Siddim, afterwards destroyed for their wickedness by fire from heaven, and covered by the salt sea, with the exception of *Zoar*, which was saved by the intercession of *Lot*. The kings of these several cities, some time after *Lot* had come among them, threw off their subjection to *Chedorlao-*





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





---

 SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &c.
 

---

in the way thither, at a fountain or well, by an angel of the Lord; and that this well was therefore called *Beer-lahai-roi*, that is, the well of him that lives and sees me. This well or fountain, near which *Isaac* dwelt some time, after the death of *Abraham*, was not far from *Gerar*.

11. BEERSHEBA. *Abraham* was still abiding in these parts, when he made a covenant with *Abimelech* or the king of *Gerar*, respecting a well he had dug. This well, from the mutual oath taken by the parties, was called *Beersheba*, or the well of the oath. Here *Abraham* planted a grove, and therein called on the name of the Lord, the everlasting God. In process of time there was a considerable town built here, which is spoken of by the heathen writers by the name of *Bersaba* or *Berzimme*. The greatest length of the land of *Israel* or *Canaan*, is frequently denoted in scripture, by the distance from *Dan* in the north to *Beersheba* in the south.

12. MOUNT MORIAH. Whilst *Abraham* sojourned at *Beersheba*, it pleased God to make that signal trial of his obedience, by requiring him to go into the land or mount of *Moriah* and make HIM a burnt sacrifice of his only son *Isaac* whom he loved. This was the same mount whereon *Solomon* built his temple; and on one part of it, namely, mount *Calvary*, our saviour actually offered up himself to God for the redemption of mankind.

13. THE CAVE OF MACHPELAH. At the death of *Sarah*, while *Abraham* sojourned at *Mamre* near *Hebron*, he bought the neighbouring field and cave of *Machpelah*, as a burying place for his family; and he buried



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;C.

*Sarah* therein. Here also *Abraham*,\* his son *Isaac*, and other patriarchs were afterwards buried.

1. BEER-LAHAI-ROI. Having finished the history of *Abraham*, Moses proceeds to that of *Isaac*: who continued to dwell, after his father's death, at *Beer-lahai-roi*, where, in all probability, *Esau* and *Jacob* were born. But a famine ensuing, *Isaac* went to

2. GERAR, and dwelt there. Hence he removed to

3. THE VALLEY OF GERAR, and pitching his tent, dwelt there; and digged again the well of *Beersheba*, which had been dug by his father: for the *Philistines* had stopped it after his death. And here, *Isaac*, en-

---

\* At his death *Abraham* made *Isaac* his heir, having given his other children presents and settled them in the east country contiguous to *Canaan*. The fate of the nations descended of these branches of the patriarch's family and of those descended of his grandson *Esau*, seems to have been very seriously involved with that of the *Canaanites*, when the Almighty promised the *Land of Canaan* to the seed of *Abraham* for an inheritance, and withal further promised to give unto his seed the dominion of a much larger tract, namely, from the river of *Egypt*, unto the great river *Euphrates*: of course excluding from the title of *seed of Abraham*, all but those descended of *Jacob*, to whom his promises were repeated, and the title of *Israel* conferred, to the exclusion of the other branches, who were only included in the title of *dominion*. Dr. Wells remarks that "this distinction between what God promised to give and actually did to the *Israelites* for a possession, and what he promised to give and actually did give to them for *dominion*, is of good use for the clearer understanding of the sacred history."



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;c.

tered into a covenant with the reigning *Abimelech* or *Philistian* king of *Gerar*, such as his father had entered into with a former *Abimelech*. We just mentioned that the city built here in succeeding times, took the name of *Beersheba*. *Jacob* having deceived his father, and thereby cheated his elder brother *Esau* of his birthright, was sent to his uncle *Bethuel*, who dwelt at *Haran* in *Padan-Aram* or *Mesopotamia*; where he remained fourteen years. At the expiration of this time, he returned to his father, who then dwelt at

4. MAMRE, near *Hebron*, where *Abraham* had formerly sojourned: and here he died, and was buried in the cave of *Machpelah*, by his two sons. So that there are no places mentioned in the sojourning of *Isaac*, which have not been noticed in that of *Abraham*.

1. BETHEL, or THE HOUSE of GOD; the place where *Jacob*, on his way from *Beersheba* to *Haran*, tarried all night, and in his sleep had a vision, in which the Almighty renewed the promise he had made to *Abraham* and *Isaac*, that *in his seed should all the families of the earth be blessed*—alluding to the Messiah or Saviour of mankind: hence *Jacob* called this place *Bethel*, that is the house of God. This name was afterwards communicated by the *Israelites* to the neighbouring city of *Luz*; which at a still later period was, by the prophet *Hosea*, called *Beth-aven*, that is, the house of vanity and idolatry, in consequence of *Jeroboam's* setting up one of his *golden calves* therein. This place was not far from *Jerusalem*, though it belonged to the kingdom of *Israel* after the ten tribes revolted from the house of *David*,





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;c.

*vid.* And for the same reason, it was chosen for the retirement of *David* during the rebellion of his son *Absalom*.—Jacob having sent his wives and children forward across a brook called *Jabbok*, he tarried a while on the north side of it, at a place which he called

5. **PENIEL** or **PENUEL**, that is, *the face of God*; because there it pleased God to appear to him *face to face*. It was on this occasion that God gave him the name of *Israel*. A town in this vicinity also, was named *Penuel* by the *Israelites*.—*Jacob* next came to

6. **SUCCOTH**, not far from the *Jordan*, where he built himself a house, and booths for his cattle. Hence also an adjoining city came to be called *Succoth* in sacred history.—After some time *Jacob* proceeded to

7. **SALEM** or **SECHEM**, where he bought a “parcel of ground.” And hence, by God’s appointment, he went to

8. **BETHEL**, where he again had a vision of the Almighty. Thence he journeyed still to the southward, to

9. **EPHRATH**, or **BETHLEHEM**, near which *Rachel* died in giving birth to *Benjamin*: and *Jacob* set a pillar upon her grave, between *Salem* and *Bethlehem*. This monument was standing in the days of *Moses*; though the present monument that is shown to strangers on the road from *Jerusalem* to *Bethlehem* cannot be that which was erected by *Jacob*, as it has the appearance of a modern and Turkish structure. *Bethlehem* is also rendered famous by the birth of *David*, and still more so by that of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*.—From this place *Jacob* or *Israel* journeyed, and spread his tent beyond

10. **THE TOWER** of **EDAR**, which, according to some



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;c.

of the learned, was in a field near *Bethlehem*. Hence he went to

11. MAMRE OR HEBRON, unto his father, who dying shortly after, was buried by *Esau* and *Jacob*, as we have mentioned above. The former then returned to Mount *Scir*, the place of his residence; while the latter continued at the late abode of his father, whence, some time after, he sent his son *Joseph* to *Dathan*, twelve miles north of *Samaria*, to inquire after his brothers, who had been attending their father's flocks near *Sechem*: whereupon they sold *Joseph* to *Ishmaelite* and *Midianite* merchants, then trading from *Gilead* to *Egypt*, whither they carried him along with them, and sold him to *Potter*, captain of *Pharaoh's* guards.

Before we follow the footsteps of *Joseph* to *Egypt*, to give an account of that country so far as it relates to the sacred history, we will speak in a few words, of the dwellings of the other sons of *Abraham* by *Hagar* and *Keturah*, with those of the sons of *Lot*, and of *Esau* the eldest son of *Jacob*.

ISHMAEL dwelt in the wilderness of *Paran*, whither he had been banished with his mother *Hagar*. Here he took a wife out of *Egypt*, and became the father of twelve sons, whose posterity dwelt in various parts of *Arabia*, from *Egypt* to the *Persian gulf*. Some of these twelve sons of *Ishmael* are particularly mentioned by *Moses* as inhabiting these parts; and plain marks of their names are to be found, in the heathen writers, among the inhabitants of this tract. Thus the descendants of *Nebaioth* the first son of *Ishmael*, were the *Ne-*



## SOJOURNING OF ABRAHAM, &amp;c.

*bathai*; who are more frequently mentioned by the Greeks and Romans than the rest. But the particular situation of each is neither important nor clearly designated. We need only observe further, that these people were, from their father, denominated *Ishmaelites*; so were they called *Hagarēnes* or *Hagarites*, from their grandmother, *Hagar*.— Under this last name they are mentioned by heathen writers, some calling them *Agæi* and others *Agareni*. But though the names of *Hagarēnes* and *Ishmaelites*, may have been used promiscuously at first, yet the lapse of time seems to have raised some distinction between them, inasmuch as the psalmist denotes those that were next the *Edomites* to be *Ishmaelites*, and those next the *Moabites* to be *Hagarēnes*. In fine, the *Arabs* to this day value themselves upon their descent from *Ishmael*.

During his life time *Abraham* made presents to his sons by *Keturah*, and settled them in the parts of *Arabia* lying east of *Canaan*. The principal of these sons was *Midian*, the father of the *Midianites*, who settled to the south-east of the *salt sea*, adjoining the *Moabites*. In the course of time, the *Midianites* seem to have extended to the *red sea*, where a tract was called the *land of Midian*, in which *Jethro*, the father-in-law of *Moses*, lived.

The dwelling of the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, descendants of *Lot* by his two sons, *Moab* the elder, and *Ben-Ammi* the younger, father of *Ammon*, next demand our attention.—*Moab* settled himself eastward of the *salt sea* or *Asphaltite* lake, and of the river *Jordan*.—*Ben-Ammi* and his son *Ammon*, father of the *Ammonites*,





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





## EGYPT.

## TABLE VI.

## EGYPT OR LAND OF MIZRAIM, AND ITS CITIES.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. (Objects west of the Nile).<br/> <i>a.</i> No or Ammon-No?<br/>           (Isle of the 70 interpreters).<br/> <i>b.</i> Noph or Memphis.</p> <p>2. RAHAB.<br/> <i>a.</i> Zoan, (royal city of Pharaoh.)<br/> <i>b.</i> Sain or Sin?</p> <p>3. LAND OF GOSHEN OR RA-MESES.<br/> <i>a.</i> Rameses or Raamses.<br/><br/> <i>b.</i> Pithom.<br/> <i>c.</i> Sin.<br/> <i>d.</i> Tahpanhes or Taphnas.<br/> <i>e.</i> On, Aven, or Bethshemesh.<br/> <i>f.</i> Succoth.<br/> <i>g.</i> Etham,<br/> <i>h.</i> Piabiroth,<br/> <i>i.</i> Migdol,<br/> <i>j.</i> Baal-zephon.</p> <p>4. LAND OF PATHROS,<br/> <i>a.</i> Pathros,<br/> <i>b.</i> No, or Ammon-No, (city of Jupiter Ammon),<br/> <i>c.</i> Syene,<br/>           (<i>d.</i> Nahal, or Great River),<br/>           (<i>e.</i> Sichor, or river of Egypt).</p> | <p>1. Objects west of the Nile).<br/> <i>a.</i> Alexandria,<br/>           (Pharos, near <i>Alexandria</i>),<br/> <i>b.</i> (No remains).</p> <p>2. The DELTA.<br/> <i>a.</i> San, (Tanis of the Greeks).<br/><br/> <i>b.</i> Sa, (Sais).</p> <p>3. (East of the Delta to the Isthmus).<br/> <i>a.</i> (Whence the Israelites departed for Canaan).<br/> <i>b.</i> Heroopolis.<br/> <i>c.</i> Tineh, (Pelusium).<br/> <i>d.</i> Safnas, (Daphnæ Pelusiæ).<br/> <i>e.</i> Matarea, (Heliopolis).<br/> <i>f.</i> }<br/> <i>g.</i> } (Places confining on the<br/> <i>h.</i> } Red Sea, in the route of<br/> <i>i.</i> } the Israelites journeying<br/> <i>j.</i> } from Egypt.</p> <p>4. THEBAIS or Upper EGYPT.<br/> <i>a.</i> Pathyris?<br/> <i>b.</i> Aksor, or Luxor, (Diospolis Magna, or Thebæ).<br/> <i>c.</i> Assuan.<br/>           (<i>d.</i> The Nile).<br/>           (<i>e.</i> Between Egypt &amp; Canaan).</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Remarks.*

We have already seen that *Egypt* is generally denoted, in the Hebrew text, the *Land of Mizraim*, from its being first settled by *Mizraim*, one of the sons of *Ham*. It is there also sometimes styled the *Land of Ham*; which renders it probable that *Ham* settled with his son *Mizraim* in this country.



## EGYPT.

The Egyptians were looked upon by the heathens, as the inventors of geometry, arithmetic, astronomy, physic, magic, and sorcery. Of their skill in this last, we have remarkable instances in scripture, *Exod.* 7. 11, &c. They are said to have expressed their conceptions, in the earlier ages, by the shapes of birds, beasts, trees, and various fanciful figures, which species of language they termed *hieroglyphics*. They certainly had a very happy talent for this sort of composition, which probably was the original of all symbolical representations of thought. And what tends to confirm this conjecture, is, that they are considered as the inventors of *letters*; which are but a refinement upon *hieroglyphics*. In short, it was from the Egyptians, that Pythagoras, and Democritus, learnt their philosophy; Lycurgus, Solon, and Plato, their forms of government; and Orpheus and Homer, their poetical fictions of the Gods. Hence we may form some conception of the great learning of which Moses was endowed, when *St. Stephen*, Acts vii. 22. says “he was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians.”

The space inclosed between the bifurcation of the Nile before it enters the sea, and the coast, was called by the Greeks the *Delta*, on account of its triangular shape. For the same reason, M. Bochart thinks that this tract is denoted in the book of *Psalms*, and in the prophecy of *Isaiah*, by the name of *Rahab*: for, says he, the Hebrew word *Rahab* is the same with the Egyptian word *Rib*, whereby to this very day this tract is called, from its resemblance to the shape of a pear, which the Egyptians call *rib*; and hence in the very middle of this tract there was a *Nomé* or district named *Athribis*, that is, the heart



## EGYPT.

of the pear.—In this tract was the royal city *Zoan*, called *Tanis* by the Greeks, situated on the *tanitic* mouth of the Nile, near the sea. If this is not the *city of Egypt*, which is first mentioned in the sacred history, it was at least the most ancient of all the cities of Egypt, and the first royal seat of the *Pharaohs*, the most ancient kings of that country. Several of the miracles which were wrought before *Pharaoh*, to gain his consent that the *Israelites* should go out of Egypt, are said to have been done in *the fields of Zoan*.—The next city of Egypt mentioned in scripture, is *Noph*, by the seventy interpreters rendered *Memphis*, situated on the west of the Nile and above the Delta. It participated with *Zoan* the dignity of royal residence, and finally superceded it. *Memphis*\* is celebrated by heathen writers; for the pyramids which were built in its neighbourhood; and the sphinx which is cut out of an entire rock. These pyramids are by the Arabs and Turks called the *mountains of Pharaoh*; one of which is said to have been built by that *Pharaoh* who perished with his army in the red sea.

---

\* *Old Cairo* succeeded *Memphis* on the opposite side of the Nile. Thevenot has observed that all the fine pieces of antiquity which remain in Egypt, are attributed to *Joseph*; and all that are of an opposite character to *Pharaoh*, who opposed the departure of the *Israelites* from Egypt. Thus the inhabitants have a tradition that the Granaries of *Old Cairo*, which are called *Joseph's Granaries*, are the very Granaries which that patriarch built to lay up corn in for the approaching years of famine. Also among the ruins of New or *Grand Cairo*, is a beautiful Hall, called *Joseph's Hall*, which is supported by thirty large pillars of *Theban* marble. Near this castle or palace, is a prison divided into many dungeons cut out of the rock, called *Joseph's prison*, under the pretence that





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



oriental name *Tahpanes*, denoting *pleasant* or *beautiful*, was originally derived *Daphne*, used by the Greeks to signify the same.—*Pibeseth* is rendered by the seventy interpreters *Bubastis*, which stood near the pelusiac branch of the Nile, some distance south of *Pelusium*. There was another city in Egypt, mentioned in *Ezek.* 30. 17. by the name of *Pibeseth*.—Still more to the south, at some distance from this eastern channel of the Nile, stood the city *On*, otherwise called *Aven*, and *Bethshemesh* in different parts of scripture, and *Heliopolis* by profane writers; all of which names have reference to the idolatry for which this city was famous, signifying *the city of the Sun*. The prophet *Jeremiah* distinguishes between this city and that in the land of *Israel* of the same name, when he says, that “*Nebuchadnezzar*, king of *Babylon*, shall break the images of *Bethshemesh* that is in the land of *Egypt*.” It was the daughter of the priest of this city, whom *Pharaoh* gave in marriage to *Joseph*. And *Josephus* tells us that this city was given to the *Israelites* for a dwelling, upon their coming into *Egypt*.—*Succoth*, *Etham*, *Piahiroth*, *Migdol*, and *Baal-zephon*, which lay in the route of the *Israelites* between *Rameses* and the red sea, will be touched upon in the next article.

The country or land of *Pathros*, as it is called in *Jer.* 44. 1. corresponded with *Thebais* or upper *Egypt*. *Pathros* is also spoken of as a city by several of the prophets: and the probability is, that it stood somewhat remote from the Nile, on the west, over against *Thebes*; for *Pliny* mentions a *Nome* or district in this quarter by the name of *Pathyrites*, and *Ptolemy* a town called *Pathyris* or *Tathiris*, which are supposed to have derived



## EGYPT.

their names from Hebrew *Pathros*.—The city of *Ammon*, which in the British translation of the Bible is rendered *No*, and by the seventy interpreters *Diospolis* or *the city of Jupiter*, was the same with the famous city of *Thebes*: for, *Ammon* or *Diospolis* is reported to have been very large, and to have had no less than one hundred gates; and *Thebes* is well known to have been surnamed *Hecatompyle* on account of its hundred gates. It was also greatly beautified by its colossal statues, obelisks, temples, palaces, and other magnificent buildings. It is not unworthy of notice here, that some have supposed there was a city called *No* or *Ammon-No*, in the times of writing the Old Testament, where Alexander the great afterwards built upon its ruins, the noble cities of *Alexandria*.—*Syene* is the last city of this part of Egypt, mentioned in Scripture; and indeed, it is the most southern city of *Thebais*, on the confines of *Ethiopia*. Hence the prophet *Ezekiel*, speaking of the desolation that God would bring upon all Egypt from one extremity to the other, proceeds—“Therefore, thus says the Lord; Behold, I will make the land of Egypt utterly desolate, from the tower of *Syene* even to the border of *Cush*.” This city is said to have been exactly under the tropic of Cancer: so that when the sun entered that sign of the zodiac, its beams shone perpendicularly upon it, casting no length of shadow.

he here interpreted the dream of the king's butler. But says Thevenot, the finest and most curious structure to be seen in the castle, is, what they call *Joseph's Well*.



## EGYPT.

## PRINCIPAL PLACES AND INCIDENTS,

*Mentioned in the journeying of the Israelites from Egypt to the Promised Land.*

1. RAMESES; whence the Israelites set forth for Canaan.
2. SUCCOTH, their first day's journey, marching eastwardly.
3. ETHAM, their second day's journey, near the wilderness, whence, God having vouchsafed to guide them in future by a miraculous pillar, that had the appearance of smoke by day, and fire by night, they turn S. W. to
4. PIHAHIROTH, their third day's journey, to pass the
5. RED SEA (its western arm) or *Weedy sea*, to avoid Pharaoh's army; the water yielding to them but destroying the army.
6. WILDERNESS of ETHAM, or SHUR, into which, out of the red sea, they went three day's journeying to
7. MARAH, where the water was bitter, but sweetened by a peculiar wood. Hence they went to
8. ELIM, where they found 12 wells, and 70 palm-trees. From Elim, passing near the
9. RED SEA. they encamped in the
10. WILDERNESS of SIN, where God first sent them manna, with which they were thereafter regularly served. Out of the wilderness of Sin, the Israelites took their journey, and encamped at
11. DOPHKOH, which was next to Sin. And they departed from Dophkoh, and encamped in
12. ALUSH, which was next to Dophkoh. And they removed from Alush and encamped in





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





---

 THE EXODUS, &c.
 

---

20. **KADESH**, in **Zin**, where they abode for several days; and having compassed mount **Seir**, or the land of **Edom** for some time, left the desert, and encamped at

21. **MOUNT HOR**, in the edge of **Edom**, where **Aaron** died. Decamping hence they pitched in

22. **ZALMONATH**, then in

23. **PUNON**, and then in

24. **Oboth**, where they again despair; for which fiery serpents are sent among them: they repent and are forgiven, &c. They then proceed to

25. **IJE-BARIM**, on the border of **Moab**, whence they pass the valley or brook **Zered**; when, 38 years having elapsed, and the offenders being nearly all dead, God charges **Moses** to pass the coast of **Moab**, and not to distress the children of **Ammon**, on coming among them. Accordingly they pass the river **Arnon** to

26. **DIBON-GAD**, among the **Amorites**. After making several other encampments, they pitched in the

27. **PLAINS of MOAB**, by the **Jordan**, near **Jericho**; whence God commanded **Moses** to get into the mountain *Abarim*, unto mount *Nebo*, to the top of *Pisgash* that is over against **Jericho**, and take a view of the delightful country from which he was excluded on account of his improper conduct in the desert of **Zin**; which he did, after appointing **Joshua** his successor to conduct the **Israelites** into **Canaan**, and there died.\*

---

\* It may not be amiss here to remark, that though **Moses** professes to give an account of the journey of the *Israelites*; it is not to be inferred that he designed to give a detail of all the places where they made a halt for a short time, or which were not distinguished for any remarkable occurrence.



## THE EXODUS. &amp;c.

—But before the death of Moses, and preparatory to the conquest of *Canaan* by Joshua, the *Israelites* had subdued the country beyond or on the east of the *Jordan*; which Moses divided between the two tribes of *Reuben* and *Gad*, and one half of the tribe of *Manasseh*.

It remains now to add a few words respecting the twelve tribes, or of the descendants of *Levi* in particular, before we pass on to the *Land of Promise*. Though the twelve tribes corresponded in number, with the twelve sons of *Jacob*, they were not thus distinctly made up of their respective descendants; as those of *Joseph* formed two tribes (*Ephraim* and *Manasseh*), while those of *Levi* were not assigned as a tribe to any distinct lot of the promised *Land*, being otherwise disposed of by the Almighty. Thus the excess of a tribe in the line of *Joseph*, filled the deficiency of a tribe in that of *Levi*. For it pleased God to appoint, that the descendants of *Levi* should minister about the things, and wait on the altar; which they did in respect to the tabernacle, while the *Israelites* were coming to *Canaan*. Thus the priesthood of the Lord being the appointed inheritance of the *Levites*, in order to free them from the common concerns of life, it was at the same time decreed that “they should be maintained of the things of the Temple, and be partakers with the altar.” However, as they must have a habitation, though they had no distinct lot among the rest of the *Israelites*, there were certain cities assigned them to dwell in, which from thence were stiled *Levitical Cities*. And as the division of the *Land of Promise* was assigned to each tribe by lot, so were these cities assigned by lot, to the



## THE EXODUS, &amp;c.

branches of the *Levites*—*Gershon*, *Kohath* and *Merari*. Thus the children of *Aaron* the priest, a descendant of *Kohath*, had by *lot* out of the tribes of *Judah*, *Simeon*, and *Benjamin*, thirteen cities: and the rest of the *Kohathites* had by *lot*, out of the tribes of *Ephraim*, *Dan*, and the half tribe of *Manasseh* westward, ten cities. And the children of *Gershon* had by *lot*, out of the tribes of *Issachar*, *Ashur*, *Naphtali*, and the half tribe of *Manasseh* east of the *Jordan*, thirteen cities. And the children of *Merari* had by *lot*, out of the tribe of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and *Zebulun*, twelve cities. So that the number of *Levitical cities* were forty-eight.

The thirteen cities which were assigned to the children of *Aaron*, who were *Priests*, were therefore distinguished by the title of *Sacerdotal cities*, or the cities of the *Priests*. The *Sacerdotal cities*, being within the tribes of *Judah*, *Simeon* and *Benjamin*, adhered to the house of *David* at the revolt of the *ten tribes* under *Jeroboam*.

Of the *levitical cities*, six were also *cities of refuge*; viz. *Kedesh* in mount *Nephali*, *Shechem* in mount *Ephraim*, *Hebron* in the hilly tract of *Judah*, *Bezer* in the tribe of *Reuben*, *Ramoth-Gilead* in the tribe of *Gad*, and *Golon* in the tribe of *Manasseh*. Of these the three former lay on the west of *Jordan*, and the three latter on the east of that river. The design of these cities of refuge was, as we learn from *Josh. 20. 2. &c.* “that the slayer, who kills any person unawares, might flee thither, for refuge from the avenger of blood.” This was the origin of the *right of asylum* conferred by the Pagans upon their *Temples*, *Altars* and *Sacred Groves*.





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



## PALESTINE.

river *Jordan*, the *Samachonite* lake, and the sea of *Tiberias*; on the north by the mountains of *Antilibanus*; and on the south by *Edom* or *Idumea*. Its extent, according to the most accurate maps, appears to have been 200 miles in length, and about 80 in breadth at the widest part. It reaches from 31 deg. 3 min. to 33 deg. 20 min. of north latitude; and from 34 deg. 50 min. to 27 deg. 15 min. of east longitude.—It is necessary to observe, that this description is confined to the part which is properly called the LAND OF PROMISE; the boundaries of that part which belonged to two tribes and a half on the other side of the *Jordan*, called *Peræa*, and of the kingdoms of *Sihon*, *Og*, &c. are not so easily ascertained, any more than the conquests and acquisitions which they afterwards made under the reigns of their most prosperous monarchs.

4. The serenity of the air, the fertility of the soil, and the incomparable excellence of the fruits of Palestine, induced the Jewish lawgiver to describe it as “a land that flowed with milk and honey; a land of brooks and waters, of fountains that spring out of the hills and valleys; a land of wheat and barley, of vines, pomegranates, figs, &c.; a land where there is no lack or scarcity of any thing.” Its richness and fecundity have been extolled even by *Julian the Apostate*, and many writers have descanted upon its natural beauties. But in consequence of the just anger of God, the greater part of it is now reduced into a mere desert; and seems incapable of cultivation.

5. Of the mountains so frequently celebrated in the profetic books of Holy writ, those of *LEBANON*, or *LIBA-*



---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

nus, were the highest and most considerable. This famous chain is computed to be about 300 miles in compass, having *Mesopotamia* on the east, *Armenia* on the north, *Palestine* on the south, and the *Mediterranean* on the west. It consists of *four ridges*, which rise above each other; the *first* is extremely fertile in grain and fruit; the *second* barren and rocky; the *third* embellished with verdant plains, balsamic herbs, and odoriferous flowers; and the *fourth*, by reason of its surprising height, is generally covered with snow. Several inconsiderable rivers have their sources in these mountains, viz. the *Jordan*, *Rocham*, *Nahar-Rossian*, and *Nahar-Cadicha*; some others of less stream, rush down the heights, and form the most beautiful cascades that ever attracted the admiration of the curious. The *western ridge* is properly distinguished by the appellation of *Libanus*, as the *eastern* is called *Antilibanus*, and the hollow between, *Cælosyria*. They are at present inhabited by the Maronites and wild Arabs; and spotted with various edifices, as churches, convents, chapels, grots, &c. These mountains make a considerable figure in the Jewish history, on account of the prodigious number of cedars which they afforded for the ornament of Solomon's temple and metropolis. And St. Jerom, speaking of LIBANUS, says, "it is the highest hill in all the *Land of Promise*, as well as the most woody and thickset."— MOUNT HERMON, is, like *Libanus*, usually capped with snow; is next to it in dignity for height; and was once famed for an ancient temple much resorted to by the superstitious heathens. It is also celebrated by the Royal Psalmist for its refreshing dews; and St. Jerom asserts,



## PALESTINE

that its snow was carried to Tyre and Sidon; to be used in refreshing liquors.—MOUNT TABOR is justly admired for its beauty, regularity, fertility, and central situation in a large plain, at a distance from any other hill. It enjoys the noblest prospect that can possibly be imagined, of many places famed in Scripture; such as the hills of *Samaria* and *Engadi* on the south; those of *Hermon* and *Gilboa* on the east and north-east; and *mount Carmel* on the south-west. Some remains of the *wall* and *gates* built by Josephus are still visible on the top; and on the eastern side are those of a strong *castle*, in the cincture of which are three *altars* in remembrance of the three *tabernacles*, which St. Peter proposed to erect at the time of our Lord's transfiguration.—MOUNT CARMEL stands on the skirts of the sea, and is the most remarkable headland on the coast. It seems to have derived its name from its abundant fertility, and is highly venerated both by Jews and Christians, as having been the residence of the *prophet ELIJAH*.—MOUNT OLIVET, or the mount of OLIVES, is situated at the distance of one mile from *Jerusalem*, and commands a fine view of the city, from which it is parted by the brook *Kedron*, and the valley of *Jehoshaphat*. It is not, in reality, a single hill, but part of a long ridge, with *four* summits, extending from north to south; the middlemost of which is that whence OUR SAVIOUR ASCENDED TO HEAVEN.—MOUNT CALVARY claims our chief regard, as *the scene of our REDEEMER'S great atonement for his sinful creatures*. It stood anciently without the gates of the city, being the place appointed for public executions; But the emperor *Adrian* having ordered Jerusalem to be rebuilt a little to





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

Jezabel's untimely end; MAMRE, so called from the name of its owner, and from the oak under which Abraham entertained the three celestial visitors; REPHAIM, the vale of the Titans and giants; JEHOSHAPHAT, so called from the victory there obtained by a monarch of that name; HINNOM, anciently defiled by many barbarous rites and superstitions; ZEBOIM, which received its appellation from one of the four cities that perished with Sodom, near the *Dead sea*; ACHOR, where Achan was put to death by the Israelitish host, for his sacrilege; BOCHIM, so denominated from the universal mourning which the Israelites made there on account of the dreadful message which they received from God for their disobedience; and the VALLEY OF ELAH, famous for the defeat of Goliath and the Philistines, by David and his royal patron Saul.

7. There were likewise several noted plains in *Palestine*, viz. the GREAT PLAIN through which the river *Jordan* runs; the PLAIN OF JEZABEL, which extended from *Seythopolis* to mount *Carmel*; SHARON, where the *Gadites* are supposed to have fed their numerous flocks and herds; SEPHALAH, which extended westward and southward of *Eleutheropolis*; JERICHO, much celebrated for its *palm-trees*, *balm*, *shrub*, and *rose-trees*; with thorns too numerous to admit of memory.

8. Many DESERTS and wildernesses of this country are mentioned in the sacred history, which are not, however, to be understood of places quite barren or uninhabited; for several of them contained cities and villages. The word, therefore, commonly meant no more than a tract that bore neither corn, wine, nor oil, but was left to



## PALESTINE.

the spontaneous productions of nature. The most noted of these deserts were ARNON, in which the river of that name runs through the *land of Gilead*; ZIPH, where David sought an asylum from persecution; CADESH, near *Cadesh-Barnea*, on the south side of *Judah*, mentioned as the place where Moses and Aaron were chastised for smiting the rock; MAHON, on the south of *Jeshimon*; TEROAH, BEZER, GIBEON, and several others.

9. Among the woods or forests mentioned in Scripture, were those of HARETH, whither David withdrew from Saul; EPHRAIM, where Absalom received the just reward of his rebellion; LEBANON, where Solomon built a magnificent palace; and BETHEL, whence the bears came and devoured the children who insulted the Prophet Elisha.

10. Of the seas there are commonly reckoned *five*, viz. the *Great sea* or the Mediterranean, the *Dead sea*, the *sea of Tiberias*, the *Samochonite sea* or lake, and the *sea of Jazer*. The *first* of these has been frequently described by travellers: the *second*, called by some authors the *Asphaltite lake*, is so impregnated with salt, that those who dive beneath its surface are immediately covered with a brine; and vast quantities of bitumen are thrown by its waves, upon the shore: the *third* is highly commended by Josephus for the sweetness and coolness of its water, and variety of excellent fish: the *fourth* is famed only for the thickness of its water, from which it is supposed to have derived its name: and the *fifth* is no other than a small lake in the vicinity of the city *Jazer*.

11. The JORDAN is the most considerable of the *re-*



## PALESTINE

vers; and indeed the only stream that merits the name, as the *Arnon*, *Jabbok*, *Chireth*, *Sorek*, *Kishon*, *Bosor*, &c. are but brooks or rivulets in comparison of this. It has its source at the famous lake of *Phiala*, about ten miles north of that of *Samochon*; its course is mostly southward inclining a few degrees towards the west; its breadth has been compared to that of the Thames at Windsor; its depth is said to be nine feet at the very brink; its rapidity considerable; and the scenery of its banks varied, according to the place which it intersects. In ancient times, it overflowed about the season of the early harvest, or soon after Easter, but it is no longer subject to this inundation. The plain on both sides from the sea of *Tiberias*, to the *Asphaltite* lake, is extremely arid and unwholesome during the heat of summer; and every where steril, except that part which lies contiguous to the river.

12. Among the most remarkable curiosities of Palestine, may be justly reckoned various PETRIFICATIONS in the neighbourhood of Mount *Carmel*, which bear the most exact resemblance to citrons, mellons, olives, peaches, and other vegetable productions: Here are also found a kind of oysters, and bunches of grapes of the same consistence. Small round STONES, resembling peas, have been frequently seen on a spot of ground near Rachel's tomb, not far from *Bethlehem*. On the same road is a fountain, honoured with the name of APOSTLES' FOUNTAIN; and a little further is a barren, rugged, and dismal SOLITUDE, to which our Saviour retired, and was tempted by the Devil. In this descent appears a steep and craggy mountain, on the summit of which are two cha-





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



## PALESTINE

depth, and three in diameter, and is at present covered with a stone vault.—The Pools of SOLOMON, supposed to have been made by order of that monarch for the supply of his palaces, gardens, and even of the metropolis itself, still appear to have been a work of immense cost and labour: such also are the sealed fountains immediately opposite. These *pools* are *three* in a row, one over the other, and disposed in such manner that the water of the uppermost may fall into the second, and from the second into the third. They are all quadrangular, and of an equal breadth, viz. about ninety paces; but in length they differ, the *first* being 160 paces, the *second* 200 paces, and the *third* 220 paces: they are all of a considerable depth, walled and plastered, and contain a large quantity of water. At the distance of one hundred and twenty paces, is the spring which supplies them. The aqueduct is built on a foundation of stones, and the water runs in earthen pipes about ten inches in diameter. This work anciently extended several leagues, but at present there are only some fragments of it to be found.—The *gardens* of *Solomon* have also been long destroyed, and the ground is said to appear almost incapable of cultivation.—The famous Pools of GIHON, and the Pools of BETHESDA, may be ranked among the most stately ruins; the former is situated about a quarter of a mile from *Bethlehem-gate* westward: its length is 160 paces, and its breadth 67 paces. It is lined with a wall and plaster, and contains a considerable store of water. The other at *Jerusalem*, is 120 paces long, 40 broad, and 8 deep; but at present dry.—In the city of Bethlehem they pretend to show the *stable* and *manger* where the adora-



## PALESTINE.

ble Messiah lay at the period of his nativity; and exhibit a *grotto* hewn out of a chalky rock, in which they affirm the blessed Virgin concealed herself and holy child from the persecution of Herod.—At Nazareth is a magnificent CHURCH under ground, said to occupy the very cave where the Virgin Mary received the angel's salutation, and where two beautiful PILLARS of GRANITE are erected in commemoration of that interesting event. At a small distance are some fine remains of another CHURCH, supposed to have been erected in the time of the empress Helena. But this is much inferior to the GREAT CHURCH built over our Saviour's sepulchre by the same empress, and called the *church of the Holy Sepulchre*.—The last class of artificial curiosities worthy of notice is the SEPULCHRAL MONUMENTS, of which we select the most remarkable for the reader's gratification.

The tomb of the holy Virgin, situated near Jerusalem, in the valley of Jehoshaphat, to which there is a descent by a magnificent flight of steps, has on the right hand side, the sepulchre of St. Anna the mother, and on the left, that of Joseph the husband, of Mary. In each division are altars for the celebration of divine worship; and the whole is cut out of the solid rock.—The monument of king Jehoshaphat is divided into several apartments; one of which contains his tomb, adorned with a stately portico and entablature. That of Absalom, two furlongs distant from Jerusalem, is about twenty cubits square, adorned below with four columns of the Ionic order, with their capitals and entablatures to each front. From the height of twenty to forty feet it somewhat lessens, and is quite plain, excepting a small fillet at the upper part;



## PALESTINE.

and from forty feet to the top it becomes round, and tapers regularly to a point, the whole cut out of the solid rock.—A little further westward is the tomb of Zecharia, the son of Barachia, who is said to have been slain by the Jews between the temple and the altar. This structure is all cut out of the natural rock. It is eighteen feet high, as many square, and adorned with Ionic columns.—But the most curious and magnificent pieces of antiquity of this kind are the ROYAL SEPULCHRES, without the walls of Jerusalem: they are all hewn out of the solid marble, and contain several spacious and elaborate apartments. On the eastern side is the entrance leading to a stately court, about 120 feet square, neatly wrought and polished. On the south side of it is a sumptuous portico, embellished in front with a kind of architrave, and supported by columns, and on the left of the portico is a descent into the sepulchral apartments. The first of these apartments is a handsome room, about 24 feet square, formed with such neatness and accuracy, that it may justly be styled a beautiful chamber, hollowed out of one piece of marble. From this room are three passages leading to other chambers of a similar fabric, but of different dimensions; in each of which are stone coffins placed in niches, that were once covered with semicircular lids, embellished with flowers, garlands, &c. but now broken in pieces. The door cases, hinges, pivots, &c. are all of the same stone with the other parts of these rooms, and even the doors appear to have been cut out of the very pieces to which they hang. Why these grotts are honoured with the appellation of *sepulchres of the kings*, is not exactly known; but whoever





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





## PALESTINE.

narchy, which they called the kingdom of *Israel*, in opposition to that of *Judah*.—The kingdom of *Israel* embraced the greater part of Canaan: while that of *Judah* was confined to the lots of Judah and Benjamin on the western shore of the Asphaltite lake. Salmanazar having transported to Assyria, as captives, the inhabitants of the kingdom of *Israel*, (which was 134 years before Nebuchadnezar did the like for the kingdom of *Judah*, distinguished specifically as the Babylonish captivity) caused the country, thus evacuated, to be repeopled with colonies from his own dominions. Among these colonies we find some named *Cutheans*, but with their primitive seats we are unacquainted. These colonists adopted the religion of the country in which they were established, and they derived from *Samaria*, the capital of the kingdom of *Israel*, the name of *Samaritans*, which distinguished them from the Jews.—The people of the kingdom of *Judah*, who had been transported to Babylon by Nebuchadnezar, having obtained liberty from Cyrus to return to their native country, extended themselves as well in what had composed the kingdom of *Israel* as that of *Judah*, and thereby gave the name of *Judea* to the whole country: and this was the name of the kingdom afterwards possessed by Herod.—But these distinctions are incompetent to a thorough knowledge of a country, which divides with some others, the greatest celebrity in history. Thus, after the return of the Jews from captivity, and during the time of the *second temple*, we here find four principal divisions; as *Judea*, *Samaria*, *Galilee*, and *Perea*. Neither the motive, however, nor the time of commencing these distinctions, is clear of ob-



---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

scurity. The three former were on this side of the Jordan, while the denomination of the last, denotes the country beyond this river. *Judea* occupied the south, *Galilæa* the north, and *Samaria* filled the intermediate space: and although all the country beyond the Jordan may with the same propriety be called *Peræa*, according to the signification of the term, yet this distinction is more particularly applied to that part which made the portions of Reuben and Gad, extending from the torrent of *Arnon* northward to the mount called *Galaad*, at nearly the same height with the issue of the Jordan from the *Tiberiad Sea*. But of these limits we shall speak more particularly presently.—After various changes that took place under the northern barbarians, Saracens, &c. the Turks reduced this country to a *province* under the *berbegate* or *bashawship* of Damascus.

We shall now speak more particularly of the division of the Land of Promise among the *twelve tribes*, in connection with its subsequent division into *Judea*, *Samaria*, *Galilæa*, and *Peræa*; noticing at the same time that portion which the *Philistines* maintained possession of after the conquest of it by the Jews: and then we shall conclude this article of Sacred Geography with a brief description of the contiguous countries, the inhabitants of which either mingled with or bordered upon the Jews.

1. That portion of the Promised Land which was allotted to the tribes of *Benjamin*, *Judah*, *Dan*, and *Simeon*, together with that retained by the *Philistines*, was, after the return of the Jews from the Babylonish captivity, distinguished by the single denomination of **JUDEA**: when



## PALESTINE.

it had *Samaria* on the north, the *Mediterranean* or *Great sea* on the west, *Egypt* and *Idumea* or *Edom* on the south, with the river *Jordan* and the *Dead sea* on the east.—We shall give the detail of the cities, &c. of this country after speaking of the four tribes and the *Philistines* who formerly possessed it.—The tribe of **BENJAMIN** occupied the north-east corner of this tract; it being a small lot. It was bounded by that of *Judah* on the south, *Ephraim* on the north, *Dan* on the west, and the river *Jordan* on the east. It contained but few towns, yet this defect was amply compensated by the possession of *Jerusalem*, the metropolis of all Palestine, and of which we shall speak at large, presently.—The tribe of **JUDAH** was bounded on the north by that of *Benjamin*, on the east by the *Asphaltite lake*, on the south by *Idumea*, and west by the tribe of *Simeon*. This was reckoned the largest and most populous of all the Jewish territories, and the inhabitants were the most valiant. The land was charmingly diversified with hills, and, exclusive of that part which lay contiguous to *Idumea*, it produced an exuberant supply of corn, oil, wine, and fruits. It was chiefly in **JUDAH** that the *Canaanites* resided; and it was here likewise, that *Abraham* and his descendants sojourned previous to their removal into *Egypt*.—The lot of **DAN** was bounded on the north by that of *Ephraim*, on the west by the *Philistines* and the *Mediterranean sea*, on the south by the lot of *Simeon*, and on the east by those of *Judah* and *Benjamin*. Its greatest length, from north to south, did not exceed forty miles; and the whole tract was rather narrow; but what it wanted in room was fully compensated by the richness of the soil, and the va-





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



## PALESTINE.

Levi, on account of the cruel massacre of the Schechemites; “Cursed (said the patriarch) be their anger, for it was fierce; and their revenge, for it was inhuman: I will disperse them in Jacob, and scatter them in Israel.”

We have seen that notwithstanding the Jews established themselves in *Canaan*, the PHILISTINES maintained possession of a maritime country; which extended to the limits of *Egypt* on the south, to the tribe of *Dan* on the north; and to that of *Simeon* on the east, the Mediterranean being on the west.—These people were treated as *Allophyli*, or foreigners by the Jews in the time of the second temple, notwithstanding that their possession of the country was anterior to that of the ancestors of the Jewish nation: and it was their alienation from the worship of the true God that produced this distinction.—The *Philistines* divided their country into five *satrapies*, viz: *Gath*, *Ekron*, *Ashdod*, *Ascalon*, and *Gaza*, situated along the Mediterranean coast, and extended from the seaport of *Jamnia* to the mouth of the river *Bezor*. The extent of their inland territories cannot be satisfactorily ascertained, but they were upon the whole confined within narrow limits.—GATH, the birth-place of the gigantic warrior Goliath, was conquered by king David, fortified by Rehoboam, and retaken by Uzziah and Hezekiah. It was seated under the 35th degree of east longitude, and 31st degree, 56 min. of north latitude; six miles south of *Jamnia*, fourteen south of *Joppa*, and thirty-two west of *Jerusalem*. It recovered its liberty and pristine splendour in the days of Amos and Micah, but afterward was demolished by Hazael, king of Syria. After that period



## PALESTINE.

it was a place of small consideration, till the holy war, when Fulk, king of Jerusalem, erected a castle on its ruins.—EKRON, situated about ten miles south of *Gath*, and thirty-four west of *Jerusalem*, appears to have been a place of considerable strength and importance. Upon the first division of the promised Land, it fell to the lot of *Judah*, but was afterwards given to the tribe of *Dan*.—ASHDOD or *Azotus*, was a famous port on the Mediterranean, situated about fifteen miles south of *Ekron*, between that city and *Ascalon*. It was here the idol Dagon fell in pieces before the ark of God. The strength of this place was so considerable, that it is said to have sustained a siege of twenty nine years under Psammittichus king of Egypt.—ASCALON, another maritime town and satrapy, lying between *Ashdod* and *Gaza*, was reckoned the strongest of any of the *Philistine coast*; but was soon reduced, after the death of Joshua, by the tribe of *Judah*: This city was made an episcopal see from the earliest ages of christianity, and during the holy war it was adorned with several magnificent edifices; but these have been demolished by the Saracens and Turks, and *Ascalon* is now dwindled into an inconsiderable village.—GAZA, the last satrapy, stood on a fine eminence, about fifteen miles south of *Ascalon*, four north of the river *Bezor*, and at a small distance from the Mediterranean. It was surrounded by the most beautiful valleys, supplied with abundance of water, and encompassed, at a further distance on the inland side, with cultivated hills. The city was remarkably strong, and surrounded with walls and towers after the manner of the *Philistines*. It was taken by Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, but soon after ré-



## PALESTINE.

gained by the ancient inhabitants, who kept possession of it till the time of Sampson. It passed from the Jews to the Chaldeans, Persians, and Egyptians, till it was pillaged by Alexander the Great: it was a second time destroyed by the Maccabees, and no further mention is made of it till St. Luke speaks of it as a ruined place. It stands about three miles distant from the sea, and still exhibits some noble monuments of antiquity, such as stately marble colonnades, finely wrought sepulchres, &c. In the immediate vicinage of the city is a round castle, flanked with four square towers; and a little above it, are the remains of an old Roman castle, the materials of which are so firm, that the hammer will make no impression on them. The Greeks have here a handsome church, with a fine roof, supported by marble pillars of the Corinthian order. The castle is the residence of the sangiac. The adjacent territory is pleasant and delightful; but beyond it the ground is rather barren, quite to the river of Egypt, and inhabited by wild Arabs.

It remains now for us to complete the detail of this part of Palestine, which, as we have seen, took the name of JUDEA after the return of the Jews from captivity. And as such we have already given its boundaries.—But that our readers may not be disappointed at the paucity of the objects here cited, we will remark with M. D'Anville, that when we see, in the search made by Eusebius of Cesarea in Palestine, and St. Jerome, who inhabited the same country in the fourth century, but a very few of the multitude of places mentioned in the Scriptures could be found, one is tempted to smile at the presumption of the publishers of those maps, wherein the num-





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





## PALESTINE.

of Ilia. The chief alteration in its site consisted in this—that Zion, which was the principal quarter of the more ancient city, was not comprised within the limits of the new one. This new city was adorned with many noble edifices; but in the time of Helena, mother of Constantine the great, it was found in so ruinous and forlorn a condition as raised her pity into a noble zeal for restoring it to its ancient grandeur. With this design she caused all the rubbish to be removed from mount Calvary, and ordered a magnificent church to be built there, to comprehend as many of the scenes of our Redeemer's sufferings as could be conveniently inclosed within one edifice. The walls are of stone, and the roof of cedar; the east includes mount Calvary, and the west, contains the holy Sepulchre. The former is covered with a handsome cupola, supported by sixteen massive columns, formerly incrustated with marble. The centre is open at the top just over the sepulchre; and above the high altar, at the east end, is another stately dome. The nave of the church forms the choir, and in the interior aisles are the places where the most remarkable circumstances of our Saviour's passion were transacted, together with the tombs of Godfrey and Baldwin, the first two Christian kings of Jerusalem. An ascent of twenty-two steps leads to a chapel, where that part of Calvary is shewn on which the Messiah was crucified. The altar is adorned with three crosses, and other costly embellishments, among which are forty-six silver lamps that are kept constantly burning. Contiguous to this is another small chapel fronting the body of the church. At the west end is the chapel of the sepulchre, hewn out of the solid



## PALESTINE.

rock, and ornamented with pillars of porphyry. The cloister around the sepulchre is divided into several chapels for the use of the different Christian sects who reside there; and on the north-west are the apartments of the Latins, who had the care of the church. It may be proper to mention here an edifice erected on Mount Moriah, called Solomon's temple, though it is not easy to guess when or by whom it was built. The entrance is at the east end, under an octagon, adorned with a cupola and lantern; and towards the west is a straight aisle like that of a church, the whole surrounded with a spacious court, and walled on every side. In the midst of it is erected a Turkish mosque, remarkable neither for its structure nor magnitude, but which makes a stately figure by its advantageous situation. Dr. Pococke, who took a particular view of the edifice, has highly extolled the beauty of the prospect, as well as the materials and workmanship. The colonnades are said to be of the Corinthian order, with arches turned over them; being, in all probability, the porticos leading to the interior of the building: but the place is held in such veneration by the Turks, that a stranger cannot approach it without danger of forfeiting his life or religion. This once rich, populous, and stately metropolis, is at present reduced to a thinly inhabited town of about three miles in circumference. It is at present under the government of a sangiac, whose tyranny keeps the Christian inhabitants so poor, that their chief support and trade consists in providing strangers with accommodations, and selling them beads, relics, &c. from which they are compelled to pay considerable sums to the sangiac and his officers.—



## PALESTINE.

*Gophna* is a place of considerable dignity north of Jerusalem, on the route of Neapolis and Samaria.—*Antipatris* was so called by Herod, after his father, who was named Antipater; and this city is described as being seated at the descent of a mountainous country, on the border of a plain named *Saronas*, terminated by the sea.—On the same shore, *Apollonius* is now a ruined place named Arsuf, near the mouth of a torrent.—And on traversing this coast towards the north, we find the issue of another torrent, which has been mentioned as serving for the boundary to Ephraim's tribe, under the name of *Cana*, or *Arcindeneti*, signifying the Reedy, and translated el-Kasab by the Arabs.—On this shore a lagune, which in the country being called Moïet-el-Temsah, or the Water of the Crocodile, represents the *Crocodylorum Lacus* mentioned in antiquity.—Tending towards the south, another torrent, which appears unknown till the time of the crusades, is found to precede the position of *Joppa*, of which we have already spoken in the tribe of *Dan*.—At some height in the interior of the country, *Lydda*, which among the Greeks took the name of *Diospolis*, preserves, in some vestiges, the name of *Lod*.—South of Joppa, *Jamnia*, or, according to the oriental form, *Iabne*, not far from the sea, still preserves the name of *Iebna*, with the advantage of a port: and this is the *Iblin* which we find in the history of the holy wars. Some idea may be acquired of the population of Judea from Strabo, who reports that this place, joined with some others in its neighbourhood, could arm forty thousand men.—Passing over those cities which we have already noticed in speaking of the satrapies of the Philistines, we find ourselves in





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



## PALESTINE.

the east withal.—At the same distance, being marked at 60 stadia, but in an opposite direction, *Emmaus*, where Vespasian defeated the revolted Jews, was called *Nico-polis*. Turning towards *Jericho*, a plain adjacent to the Jordan, celebrated heretofore for its fertility, and which produced a celebrated balm, succeeds a space steril and mountainous between Jerusalem and this city, whose name in the Roman writers is *Hierichus*, and in the Arabian geographers, *Eriah*.—*Engaddi*, on the Dead Sea, but having its territory contiguous to that of Jericho, was very fertile in palm trees.—*Masuda*, a fortress elevated on a rock, was the last asylum which remained to the revolted Jews after the taking of Jerusalem.—*Zifh* is a canton between Hebron and the Dead Sea; to which succeeds a mountain called *Carmel*, the same name with another mount Carmel, more celebrated and better known, on the Great Sea in Galilæa.

2. The tract to the north of *Judæa*, having the *great sea* on the west, the *Jordan* on the east, and *Galilea* on the north, was called SAMARIA after the return of the Jews from captivity, about the time that *Judæa*, *Galilea*, and *Peræa* became distinctive of other parts of Palestine, as we have before remarked. Its limits correspond precisely with those which had formerly embraced the tribe of *Ephraim* and the half of *Manasseh*: for SAMARIA was very contracted, particularly in breadth, being bounded on the side of Galilea by the position of *Ginæa*, which is still found under the name of *Genim*, not far north of *Sebaste*.—That portion which had formerly appertained to the half tribe of MANASSEH, was bounded on the north



---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

by the tribe of *Issachar*, on the south by that of *Ephraim*, on the west by the *great sea*, and east by the *Jordan*. It was agreeably diversified with mountains, plains, and vallies, and contained a considerable number of stately cities.—The tribe of **EPHRAIM** occupied the south side of Samaria, and extended like that of Manasseh, from the *Mediterranean* to the river *Jordan*. The low lands were extremely rich and luxuriant; the hills afforded excellent pasture, and even the rocks were prettily interspersed with trees. The towns and cities were numerous, and the population considerable.

*Samaria*, the capital of this country, owed its foundation to one of the successors of the kings of Israel. But it had been destroyed by the Jews, under one of their Asmonean princes, and re-edified by a governor of Syria, when Herod, fortifying and embellished this city, gave it, in honour of Augustus, the name of *Sebaste*, which it preserves in its ruins.—*Sichem*, which was the royal city of Israel before Samaria, took afterwards the name of *Neapolis*, which is altered only into the form of *Nabolus*. Two mountains, *Garisim* and *Ebal*, form a valley which encloses this city: and it was at the foot of the first that the Samaritans had their temple.—But the city that took the pre-eminence of others was *Cæsarea*; which, becoming the residence of the Roman governors, was called *Cæsarea of Palestine*. This place, named anteriorly *Turris Stratonis*, was chosen by Herod for the site of a magnificent city and port; to which he gave a name referring personally to Augustus, and common to many other cities. In the division of Palestine into three provinces, that whereof *Cæsarea* remained metropolis,



---



---

 PALESTINE
 

---



---

was the *first*; and the see of Jerusalem was its suffragan, before it was elevated to the patriarchal dignity. Though we find *Cæsarea* subsisting at the time of the crusades, there is nothing of it now remaining but its name, and some vestiges of its walls and its ports.

3. The name of *GALILÆA*, which is distinctive of the residue of Palestine to the north, rarely occurs in the Old Testament. But, from the manner in which the country is frequently mentioned afterwards, the goodness of its soil seems to give it the pre-eminence over the other parts of Palestine, with the advantage of a population proportionate to a greater fecundity. It produced an abundance of corn, oil, wine, and fruits of various sorts; and was, in its flourishing condition, so full of towns and villages, that Josephus observes, the least of them contained fifteen thousand inhabitants. There was a distinction made between *Galilæa inferior*, adjacent to *Samaria*, and *Galilæa superior* towards the north, on the frontier of *Phœnicia*; which last, less occupied by Jews than the lower division, was called *Galilæa Gentium*, the Galilee of the Gentiles, or foreign nations.—The whole of *Galilæa* was formerly occupied by the tribes of *Asher*, *Naphtali*, *Zebulon*, and *Issachar*.—The tribe of *ASHER* was seated on the north-west corner of this tract, having the *Mediterranean* on the west, *Zebulon* on the south, and *Naphtali* on the east. Its fecundity and the excellence of its productions, fully answered the blessing which dying Jacob gave it: “that the bread of it should be fat, and that it should yield royal dainties.”—*NAPHTALI* possessed a tract of country, between that





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

Castle Pilgrim, appears to have been that which, from the sycamores that abound in its environs, was named *Sycominos*.—A place named *Hephha*, now Caipha, opposite to the position of *Aco*, now Acre, appeared under the name of *Porphyryion* in a time when the strand of the sea furnished a species of shell-fish yielding the famous purple dye, but which seems now to be unknown.—The torrent of *Kison* sprang from the south side of Tabor, and, augmented by some brooks which traverse the plain of Esdrèlon, is received on the flank of Carmel into a gulf which the sea forms between this mountain and the point of Acre.—The same gulf also receives the little *Belus*, called by the Arabs *Nahr Halou*, and famous in antiquity for affording a sand proper for the manufacture of glass.—*Aco*, or *Acon*, took the name of *Ptolemais* under the Ptolemies, many of whom possessed Cœle-Syria. But although this new name be employed by the Greek and Roman authors, they also use the primitive denomination of *Ace*. No place was more disputed by the crusaders and the Mussalman princes than this of Acre till towards the end of the thirteenth century; it being then destroyed, that it might no longer serve the Franks as a key to Palestine. Being situated on a point advanced in the sea, commerce has given occasion to some habitations among its ruins.—To conclude this notice of the coast as far as Tyre, the site of *Ecdypha*, or *Aczib*, preserves in a very small place the name of *Zib*; beyond which the passage of a steep mountain that overlooks the sea, was called *Scala Tyrionum*, or the Ladder of the Tyrians.

Advancing into the country, nearly east of Acre, we



## PALESTINE.

find that *Sephoris*, spoken of by Josephus as being the strongest place and most considerable city of Galilea, had taken the name of *Dio Casarea* in the time of St. Jerom, and was then extremely decayed. The Jews have continued to it the name of Sippori, which in vulgar use is Sefouri.—Between this place and the Tabor, in a valley north of the plain of Esdrèlon, *Nazareth* is a small place, according to St. Jerom, called *Nazara*.—The *Tabor* is an insulated mount in the middle of a plain; and its name takes the form of *Itabyrius* in the Greek writers.—But, proceeding towards Tiberias, we must incline to the right to view *Bethsan*, on the confines of Galilea and Samaria. This city, in the vicinity of the Jordan, is more celebrated under the name of *Scythopolis*, which appears to be due to the Scythians, who, according to Herodotus, had advanced as far as Palestine before they won the empire of Asia from the Medes. However, this Greek denomination of a city that was reputed the first among those of the Decapolis, and that took the rank of metropolis in the *second* Palestine, has in its turn been superseded by its primitive name, in the altered form of Baisan.—*Tiberias* received this name from Herod Antipas, in honour of Tiberius. It is supposed that the son of the great Herod, for the construction of the new city, made choice of the site of a more ancient and obscure place, called *Chenereth*, according to St. Jerom, or rather *Cinereth*: and this name of *Tiberias* was communicated to the adjacent lake, which it qualified at the same time with the appellation of *Sea*, by a figure familiar to the orientals. In the pronounciation of the Arabs the name is *Tabarieh*; and that of *Hammam*, by which they deno-



## PALESTINE.

minate the thermæ, or mineral baths, in its neighbourhood, is the *Ammaus*, which the Greek writers bestow on the same place, and which is itself an alteration of the primitive Hebraic name of *Chamath*.—The name *Genesareth*, which the lake of Tiberias originally bore, was drawn from a little country distinguished for the beauties of its situation, under the name of *Gennesar*, and which being watered by the fountain of *Caphernaum*, should be situated towards the upper part of the lake, near the entrance of the Jordan.—The siege that Josephus sustained against Vespasian in *Jotapata*, has given celebrity to this place, which this historian describes as situated on a height environed with precipices.—He speaks of *Japha* as another strong place in the same canton; and it is presumed that the fortress of Sapher, which was the residence of a Turkish commandant, and overthrown by an earthquake some years since, corresponds with this position.—A little beyond, the *Lacus Samochonites* of Josephus, traversed by the Jordan, is thought to be the waters of *Meron* in the sacred text. This lake, now called *Bahr-el-Houlej*, is reduced to an inconsiderable pool in dry seasons.—There are said to be still vestiges of *Asor*, which preserve the name of this royal city of the Canaanites.—Another place named *Kadas* may have been the *Kedes* of the tribe of *Naphthali*, and at the same time the *Cedessus* which the Tyrians possessed.—It remains, that we remount to *Pancas* between two brooks which form the Jordan, at the foot of the mount called *Panium*, on which Herod, in gratitude for having been put in possession of the Trachonitis by Augustus, erected a temple to that prince. On





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



---



---

 PALESTINE.
 

---



---

*Pisgah*, and was every where extremely fertile in corn, wine, fruits, and pasturage.—To the north of *Reuben* was fixed the tribe of *GAD*, having likewise the river *Jordan* on the west, the *Ammonites* on the east, and the half tribe of *Manasseh* on the north. This tract of country, like the former, was famed for its rich pasturage and exuberant productions.—The portion allotted to the half tribe of *MANASSEH* was bounded on the south by that of *Gad*, on the west by the *Jordan* and *Samochonite* lake, on the east by the hills of *Bashan* and *Hermön*, and on the north by a part of *Lebanon*. Its extent was almost equal to the other two.

The *Arnon* is discharged into the lake *Asphaltites*, after having passed through the neighbourhood of the principal city of the *Moabites*. Towards the beginning of its course, the Romans had established a military post, *Castra Arnonensia*, on the frontier of Arabia, in a canton which was called *Arnonas*.—The mounts *Abarim*, and the summit of *Nebo*, whence Moses had a prospect of the Promised Land, rise at some distance from the *Jordan* opposite to *Jerico*, between two plains: that on the western side being divided by the river, while the eastern plain is an extent of country which we find under the name of *Campestris Moab*.—At the foot of these mountains towards the *Jordan*, the name of *Livias* was given to an ancient city, to flatter Augustus in the person of *Livia*.—Nearer to the lake *Asphaltites*, Herod added fortifications to the advantageous situation of *Macherus*, on the summit of a steep rock.—Farther on, and southward withal, a place meriting notice for its hot springs, was called *Callirhoë*, which signifies in Greek



## PALESTINE.

the limpid fountain.—*Amathus* is described as an exceedingly strong fortress, overlooking the great plain, which is continued along the course of the Jordan, from the Tiberiad lake to that of Asphaltites, under the name of *Aulon* in antiquity, but supplanted by that of el-Gour, which signifies in the Arabic language a low, or sunken and.

A canton of country more retired toward the north is distinguished by the name of *Galaaditis*, which a mountain, whose name is *Galaad*, communicates to it. The name of this mountain appears sometimes to be extended to the branches projected towards Anti-Libanus; but it is more particularly applied to the ridge that reigns on the right of the torrent of *Jabok*, which, issuing from the country of Ammon, discharges itself into the Jordan about the height of Bethsan; and is believed to be that now called Zarea.—*Ramoth* was in remote antiquity a principal city of this country, situated near *Jabok*, and at a defined distance from the capital of the Ammonites.—But in a posterior age, another city attracts greater notice under the name of *Pella*, which the Greeks of Syria, by whom it was inhabited, had given it, from the circumstance of its being environed with water, as the Macedonian city of this name. We see in history that this city received the Christians who had abandoned Jerusalem when it was menaced with ruin by the siege.—There is mention made of another city, whose name of *Dium* was transferred likewise from Macedon but its position is judged to be more remote, as comprehended in the province of Arabia, without the limits of Palestine, which included the former.



## PALESTINE.

*Batanea* is another country which covers the north of Galaaditis, and its name is preserved in that of Batinia, as we find in the oriental geographers. This is the country conquered by the people of Israel, from Og king of *Bashan*; to whose territories was contiguous, what *Sehon* king of the Amorites possessed in Galaad. And there is reason to believe that of the primitive *Bashan* was afterwards formed the name of *Batanea*. Its district appears to be separated from the Tiberiad lake by a margin of land called *Gaulonitis*, from *Golan*, or *Gaulon*, the name of a strong fortress, distinctly indicated in the oriental geography under the name of *Agheloun*, or *Adgeloun*.—*Gamala*, not far distant, was a place almost inaccessible, being seated upon a rock bounded by precipices, which was separated by the extremity of the Tiberiad lake from a considerable city called *Tarichæe*, from the circumstance of its being the place where the fish taken in the lake were cured.—This extremity of the lake receives a stream named heretofore *Hieromax*, and now *Yermuk*, which passes under *Gadara*, a considerable city, distinguished as the capital of *Peræa* by Josephus. Its name is now *Kedar*.—At the entrance of the Jordan into the lake, *Julias* received its name from Philip, tetrarch of the *Trachonitis*: and with this position correspond the vestiges of a city under the name of *Teloui*. We may add, that there is reason to believe this *Julias* to be the *Chorozain* of a remoter age.—The *Yermuk* is celebrated in Saracen history for a great victory obtained over the Greeks, in the time of Omar; and a city of the same name is also mentioned as adjacent to the river, and which appears to have been that known





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies





## PALESTINE.

addicted to rapine, and inhabiting deep caverns called *Trachones*, occupied. These had for their chief one Zenodorus, whom Augustus deprived of his domain, called *Domus Zenodori*.—*Ituræa* is not easily distinguished from the Trachonitis, and may owe its name to an appellative in some other language than the Greek.—The *Auranitis* is better known, retaining its name in that of Belad-Aúran; and whose eastern limits are absorbed in the deserts of Arabia. This arid country which is only watered by the winter rains preserved in cisterns, does not appear to have been subjected till the reign of Trajan. *Bostra*, its principal city, was metropolis of a province formed under the name of *Arabia*. It still retains the name of Bozra; and it is said to be situated on a torrent called *Nahr-al-Gazal*, or the River of Gazelle.

5. It now remains to give a concise account of the countries belonging to those nations that were seated around Palestine.—*Idumea*, or the land of Edom, constituted a part of Arabia Petræa, having Judea on the north, Egypt and a branch of the Red sea on the west, the rest of Arabia Petræa on the south, and the desert of Arabia on the east. Its extent seems to have varied considerably at different periods; in consequence of which Josephus distinguishes it, when at the largest, by the epithet of great, in opposition to its more narrow boundaries. The same author divides it into Upper and Lower Idumea; but the country, upon the whole, is represented as dry, mountainous, hot, and in some parts steril; and the high lands exhibit many dreadful caverns and recesses, which resemble those in the southern part



## PALESTINE.

of Judea. This country is at present under the dominion of the Turks, mostly waste and uncultivated; and inhabited by wild Arabs, with whom the Europeans have but little intercourse.—The nation of *Amalek* or the *Amalekites*, was seated in that part of Arabia Petræa which lay eastward of the Edomites, and extended almost as far north as the Asphaltite lake, and as far southward as the Red sea: but as the people were mostly of a wandering disposition, and lived in booths, tents, or caverns, like the Arabs, it is impossible to ascertain their limits with any degree of precision.—The *Midianites*, or the land of *Midian*, was situated on the north of Amalek. It was hot, sandy, and in many parts desert; yet abounded with camels and other species of cattle. It appears to have contained many cities, castles, &c. as early as the time of the Exodus. The city of Midian was in all probability, rebuilt subsequent to that period, as both Eusebius and St. Jerom assert there were some remains of it to be seen in their time.—The land of *Moab* was likewise in Arabia Petræa, on the north of Midian, having the river Arnon on the west, the land of Gilead on the north, and the Ishmaelites on the east. It contained several considerable cities, which the Moabites wrested from the gigantic Emims and Zamzummims, but which were afterwards possessed by the Jews. The capital of the Moabites, situated on the torrent of Arnon, was called Areopolis; but its true name was *Rabath-Moab*, by which it is still known; although it is called Raba as well as Maab, in the oriental geography.—The *Ammonites* were seated to the north-east of their brethren the Moabites, in Arabia Deserta; having the



## PALESTINE.

Arnon on the west, the Ishmaelites on the south, the deserts of Arabia on the east, and the hills of Bashan and Gilead on the north. Their territories, according to the sacred historians, seem to have been anciently confined by the rivers Jabok and Arnon; but their frequent incursions into the neighbouring states occasioned their boundaries to be in constant fluctuation. Their principal city was called *Ammon*, and *Rabath-Ammon*, or the Great Ammon, before the name of *Philadelphia* was given to it, probably from a Philadelphus king of Egypt; but following the practice which we have seen common in Syria, it has resumed its primitive name in the form of Amman.—The descendants of Ishmael, the son of Abraham and Hagar, occupied a part of Arabia Deserta, eastward of Moab and Midian, and bounded on the north by Ammon; but how far they extended southward and eastward it is impossible to determine. It may, however, be presumed, from an assertion of Moses, that their territory reached from Havilah, which was situated near the confluence of the Tigris and Euphrates, to Shur on the isthmus of Suez. Thence they are said to have spread themselves over the greatest part of Arabia; in consequence of which Josephus styles their progenitor the founder of the Arabian nation.

## ERRATA.

The reader is recommended to correct the following errata with his pencil.

|             |             |                                         |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Page</i> | <i>line</i> | <i>before noted insert not.</i>         |
| 354,        | 2,          | note, for 46, read 37.                  |
| 359,        | 5,          | for 20, read 14.                        |
| 372,        | 5,          | note, omit and.                         |
| 404,        | 28,         | for there, read therefore.              |
| 414,        | 6,          | for birthright, read paternal blessing. |
| 414,        | 7,          | for Bethuel, read Laban.                |





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'  
Full Membership  
provides unlimited  
access to more than  
28,000 volumes of  
Christian literature for  
\$8.99/month

**HOLY  
BIBLE**

**Continue**

\*Fair use policy applies



| <i>Empires.</i>                                               | <i>Countries.</i>          | <i>Kings, &amp;c.</i>        | <i>Before Christ.</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 2nd.<br>PERSIAN<br>EMPIRE,                                    | 1. Persia, & India,        | under DARIUS HYSTAS-<br>PES, | } 509.                |
|                                                               | 2. Bactriana,              |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 3. Media,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 4. Assyria,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 5. Syria,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 6. Armenia,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 7. Iberia,                 |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 8. Ægyptus,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 9. Libya.                  |                              |                       |
| GREEK<br>EMPIRE,                                              | 1. Græcia,                 | under ALEXANDER,             | } 328.                |
|                                                               | 2. Thracia,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 3. Asia Minor,             |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 4. Armenia,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 5. Media,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 6. Bactriana,              |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 7. India, & Persia,        |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 8. Assyria,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 9. Syria,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 10. Ægyptus,               |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 11. Libya.                 |                              |                       |
| <i>The same,<br/>divided by<br/>Alexander's<br/>generals.</i> | 1. Græcia,                 | to CASSANDER,                | } 301.                |
|                                                               | 1. Thracia,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 2. Asia Minor <i>part</i>  | to LYSIMACUS,                |                       |
|                                                               | 1. Asia Minor <i>part</i>  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 2. Armenia,                | to SELEUCUS,                 |                       |
|                                                               | 3. Media,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 4. Bactriana,              |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 5. India,                  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 6. Persia,                 |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 7. Assyria,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 8. Syria, <i>part</i> ,    |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 1. Ægyptus,                | to PTOLEMY,                  |                       |
|                                                               | 2. Libya,                  |                              |                       |
| 3. Syria <i>part</i> .                                        |                            |                              |                       |
| 1st.<br>ROM. EMP.                                             | 1. Italia.                 | under <i>the consuls</i> ,   | 234.                  |
| CARTHA-<br>GENIAN<br>EMPIRE,                                  | 1. Africa <i>Propria</i> , | under HANABAL,               | } 209.                |
|                                                               | 2. Mauretania,             |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 3. Hispania.               |                              |                       |
| 2nd.<br>ROMAN<br>EMPIRE,                                      | 1. Italia,                 | under JULIUS CÆSAR,          | } 55.                 |
|                                                               | 2. Hispania,               |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 3. Gallia <i>part</i> .    |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 4. Illyricum <i>part</i> . |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 5. Græcia,                 |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 6. Thracia,                |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 7. Asia Minor <i>part</i>  |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 8. Syria <i>part</i>       |                              |                       |
|                                                               | 9. Africa <i>propria</i> , |                              |                       |



| <i>Empires.</i>          | <i>Countries.</i>          | <i>Kings, &amp;c.</i>    | <i>After Christ,</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 3rd.<br>ROMAN<br>EMPIRE, | 1. Italia,                 | } under TIBERIUS CÆSER,  | 18.                  |
|                          | 2. Hispania,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 3. Gallia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 4. Germania <i>part.</i>   |                          |                      |
|                          | 5. Illyricum,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 6. Græcia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 7. Thracia,                |                          |                      |
|                          | 8. Asia Minor,             |                          |                      |
|                          | 9. Syria,                  |                          |                      |
|                          | 10. Ægyptus,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 11. Libya,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 12. Africa <i>propria,</i> |                          |                      |
|                          | 13. Mauretania <i>pt.</i>  |                          |                      |
| PARTHIAN<br>EMPIRE,      | 1. Persia,                 | } under ARSACES VENONES, | 46.                  |
|                          | 2. Bactriana,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 3. Media,                  |                          |                      |
|                          | 4. Assyria.                |                          |                      |
| 4th.<br>ROMAN<br>EMPIRE, | 1. Italia,                 | } under TRAJAN,          | 115.                 |
|                          | 2. Hispania,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 3. Gallia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 4. Britannia,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 5. Germania <i>part,</i>   |                          |                      |
|                          | 6. Illyricum,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 7. Græcia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 8. Thracia,                |                          |                      |
|                          | 9. Dacia,                  |                          |                      |
|                          | 10. Asia Minor,            |                          |                      |
|                          | 11. Armenia,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 12. Syria,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 13. Ægyptus,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 14. Libya,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 15. Africa <i>propria,</i> |                          |                      |
|                          | 16. Mauretania.            |                          |                      |
| 5th.<br>ROMAN<br>EMPIRE, | 1. Italia,                 | } under CONSTANTINE,     | 306.                 |
|                          | 2. Hispania,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 3. Gallia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 4. Britannia,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 5. Germania <i>part,</i>   |                          |                      |
|                          | 6. Illyricum,              |                          |                      |
|                          | 7. Græcia,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 8. Thracia,                |                          |                      |
|                          | 9. Dacia,                  |                          |                      |
|                          | 10. Asia Minor,            |                          |                      |
|                          | 11. Armenia,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 12. Syria,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 13. Ægyptus,               |                          |                      |
|                          | 14. Libya,                 |                          |                      |
|                          | 15. Africa <i>propria,</i> |                          |                      |
|                          | 16. Mauretania.            |                          |                      |



| Empires.              | Countries.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Kings, &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | After Christ.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                         |                     |     |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----|
| ROMAN EMPIRE,<br>4th. | Western, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Italia,</li> <li>2. Hispania,</li> <li>3. Gallia,</li> <li>4. Britannia,</li> <li>5. Illyricum,</li> <li>6. Dacia,</li> <li>7. Africa propria,</li> </ol> | under HONORIUS,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 395                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                         |                     |     |
|                       | Eastern, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Thracia,</li> <li>2. Græcia,</li> <li>3. Asia Minor,</li> <li>4. Syria,</li> <li>5. Ægyptus,</li> <li>6. Libya,</li> </ol>                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | under ARCADIUS,                                                                                                                         |                     |     |
|                       | ROMAN EMPIRE,<br>5th.                                                                                                                                                                                        | Eastern, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Thracia,</li> <li>2. Græcia,</li> <li>3. Asia Minor,</li> <li>4. Armenia,</li> <li>5. Syria,</li> <li>6. Ægyptus,</li> <li>7. Lybia,</li> <li>8. Africa propria,</li> <li>9. Mauretania,</li> <li>10. Italia,</li> <li>11. Illyricum,</li> </ol> | under JUSTINIAN,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 553                                                                                                                                     |                     |     |
|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                              | SARACEN EMPIRE.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Bactriana,</li> <li>2. Persia,</li> <li>3. Media,</li> <li>4. Assyria,</li> <li>5. Syria,</li> <li>6. Ægyptus,</li> <li>7. Libya,</li> <li>8. Africa propria.</li> <li>9. Mauretania,</li> <li>10. Hispania,</li> </ol> | under SOLYMAN,                                                                                                                          | 715                 |     |
|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | ROMAN EMPIRE,<br>7th.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Western, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Gallia,</li> <li>2. Germania,</li> <li>3. Italia,</li> <li>4. Illyricum,</li> </ol>  | under CHARLEMAGNE,  | 802 |
|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Eastern, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Thracia,</li> <li>2. Græcia,</li> <li>3. Asia Minor,</li> <li>4. Armenia,</li> </ol> | under NICEPHONVS I. |     |